

Project Manual

Construction Documents

Liberty Public Schools Elementary Renovations

Franklin Elementary School – Project No. 23027 201 West Mill Street, Liberty, Missouri 64068

Alexander Doniphan Elementary School – Project No. 23028 1900 Clay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068

Liberty Public Schools

8 Victory Lane Liberty, Missouri 64068

HM Project No: 23027 HM Project No: 23028 Issue Date: November 22, 2023

Contents:

Volume 1: Introductory Information, Bidding and Contracting Requirements, Division 2 through Division 28. we design the future $\sp{\circ}$

SECTION 000101 - PROJECT TEAM DIRECTORY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 CONSTRUCTION MANAGER INFORMATION

- A. Newkirk Novak Construction Partners has been selected as the Construction Manager for this project, and as such, will act as the Owner's representative.
- B. All communication, both written and oral, must be directed through the Construction Manager.

1.2 PROJECT TEAM INFORMATION

- A. PROJECT:
 - 1. Project: Liberty Public Schools Aging Facilities Renovations
 - 2. Project Number and Name:
 - a. 23027 Franklin Elementary School
 - 1) Location: 201 West Mill Street, Liberty, Missouri 64068
 - b. 23028 Alexander Doniphan Elementary School
 - 1) Location: 1900 Clay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068

B. OWNER

- 1. Name: Liberty Public Schools
- 2. Address: 8 Victory Lane, Liberty, Missouri 64068
- 3. Contact: Justin Presson
- 4. Phone: 816.736.5448

C. CONSTRUCTION MANAGER:

- 1. Name: Newkirk Novak Construction Partners
- 2. Address: 11200 W. 79th Street, Lenexa, Kansas 66241
- 3. Contact: Brandon Stanley
- 4. Email: Brandon.Stanley@newkirknovak.com
- 5. Phone: 913.312.9535.

D. ARCHITECT:

- 1. Name: Hollis + Miller Architects, Inc.
- 2. Address: 1828 Walnut Street, Suite 922, Kansas City, MO 64108.
- 3. Contact: Nicole Rezai
- 4. Email: nrezai@hollisandmiller.com
- 5. Phone: 816.442.7700 / Fax: 816.599.2545
- E. STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:
 - 1. Name: Bob D. Campbell & Co.
 - 2. Address: 4338 Belleview Ave, Kansas City, Missouri 64111.
 - 3. Contact: Wayne Davis
 - 4. Email: wdavis@bdc-engrs.com
 - 5. Phone: 816.531.4114 / Fax: 816.531.8572

F. MEP ENGINEER:

- 1. Name: Smith and Boucher
- 2. Address: 25618 W 103rd Street, Olathe, Kansas 66061.
- 3. Contact: Ryan Diediker
- 4. Email: rdiediker@smithboucher.com
- 5. Phone: 913.345.2127.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

SECTION 000105 - CERTIFICATIONS PAGE

ARCHITECT

I HEREBY, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, STATE THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 1 SECTIONS:	011000, 012100, 012200, 012300, 012500, 013100, 013200, 013233, 013300, 014000,
	014200, 014529, 016000, 017310, 017419, 017700, 017823, 017839, 017900.
DIVISION 2 SECTION:	024119.
DIVISION 6 SECTIONS:	061000, 062023, 064023.
DIVISION 7 SECTIONS:	078413, 078446, 079200.
DIVISION 8 SECTIONS:	081113, 081416, 083113, 084113, 085613, 087100, 088000.
	092116, 092400, 092900, 093000, 095113, 096513, 096519, 096723, 096813,
DIVISION 9 SECTIONS.	097723,099123, 099300, 099600.
DIVISION 10 SECTIONS:	101423, 102113, 102123, 102600, 102800, 105613.
DIVISION 12 SECTIONS:	122113, 122413,123200, 123666.

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.

KEVIN NELSON	NOVEMBER 22, 2023
ARCHITECT	DATE
STE OF MISSOLA	

KEVIN E. NELSON A-2019015618

ARCHIT

NOVEMBER ZZ, ZOZ3

SECTION 000105 - CERTIFICATIONS PAGE-MEP

MEP ENGINEER

I HEREBY, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, STATE THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED

BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

DIVISION 22 SECTIONS:	220500, 220523, 220529, 220553, 220719, 221116, 221119, 221316, 221319, 224000
DIVISION 23 SECTIONS:	230500, 230513, 230529, 230553, 230593, 230713, 233113, 233300, 233713
DIVISION 26 SECTIONS:	260010, 260519, 260523, 230526, 260529, 260533, 230553, 260923, 260943, 262416, 262726, 262813, 262816, 263323, 264113, 265119, 265213
DIVISION 27 SECTIONS:	270000, 270010, 270526, 270536
DIVISION 28 SECTIONS:	280500, 280513, 283111

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.



11.22.2023

RYAN J DIEDIKER, PE, RCDD, LEED AP DATE

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER

I HEREBY, PURSUANT TO RSMO 327.411, STATE THAT THE SPECIFICATIONS INTENDED TO BE AUTHENTICATED BY MY SEAL ARE LIMITED TO SPECIFICATIONS LISTED BELOW:

 DIVISION 3 SECTIONS:
 033000

 DIVISION 4 SECTIONS:
 042200

 DIVISION 5 SECTIONS:
 051200, 054000

I HEREBY DISCLAIM ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ALL OTHER SPECIFICATIONS, DRAWINGS, ESTIMATES, REPORTS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS OR INSTRUMENTS RELATING TO OR INTENDED TO BE USED FOR ANY PART OR PARTS OF THE ARCHITECTURAL OR ENGINEERING PROJECT OR SURVEY.

WAYNE E. DAVIS

11/22/2023

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER

DATE



Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A.Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027 &23028

CERTIFICATIONS PAGE

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A.Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027 &23028

CERTIFICATIONS PAGE

DOCUMENT 000110 - TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Revisions	Date
Project Name:	Liberty Public Schools Elementary Renovation		
Project No. & Lo	ocations:		
	23027 - Franklin Elementary School		
	201 W. Mill Street, Liberty, Missouri 64068		
	23028 - Alexander Doniphan Elementary School		
	1900 Clay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068		

		Latest Revision	Original Issue
INTRODUCT	TORY INFORMATION		
000101	Project Team Directory		11.22.2023
000105	Certifications and Seals		11.22.2023
000110	Table of Contents		11.22.2023

BIDDING REQUIREMENTS

(Refer to Construction Manager's Front End Manual for additional Bidding Requirements)

CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

(Refer to Construction Manager's Front End Manual for additional Contracting Requirements)

DIVISION 1 -	– GENERAL REQUIREMENTS	
011000	Summary	11.22.2023
012100	Allowances	11.22.2023
012200	Unit Prices	11.22.2023
012300	Alternates	11.22.2023
012500.1	Substitution Procedures	11.22.2023
012500.2	Substitution Procedures Form	11.22.2023
013100	Project Management and Coordination	11.22.2023
013200	Construction Progress Documentation	11.22.2023
013233	Photographic Documentation	11.22.2023
013300	Submittal Procedures	11.22.2023
014000	Quality Requirements	11.22.2023
014200	References	11.22.2023
014529	Testing and Inspections	11.22.2023
016000	Product Requirements	11.22.2023
017310	Cutting and Patching	11.22.2023
017419	Construction Waste Management and Disposal	11.22.2023
017700	Closeout Procedures	11.22.2023
017823	Operation and Maintenance Data	11.22.2023
017839	Project Record Documents	11.22.2023
017900	Demonstration and Training	11.22.2023
DIVISION 2 -	- EXISTING CONDITIONS	
024119	Selective Demolition	11.22.2023
DIVISION 3 -	- CONCRETE	
033000	Cast-in-Place Concrete	11.22.2023
Liberty Public S	Schools	

		Latest Revision	Original Issue
DIVISION 4 - MAS	SONRY		
042200	Unit Masonry		11.22.2023
DIVISION 5 - ME	TALS		
051200	Structural Steel Framing		11.22.2023
053100	Steel Decking		11.22.2023
054000	Cold-Formed Metal Framing		11.22.2023
DIVISION 6 - WC	DOD AND PLASTICS		
061000	Rough Carpentry		11.22.2023
062023	Interior Finish Carpentry		11.22.2023
064023	Interior Architectural Woodwork		11.22.2023
DIVISION 7 - THE	ERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION		
078413	Penetration Firestopping		11.22.2023
078446	Fire Resistive Joint Systems		11.22.2023
079200	Joint Sealants		11.22.2023
DIVISION 8 - DO	ORS AND WINDOWS		
081113	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames		11.22.2023
081416	Flush Wood Doors		11.22.2023
083113	Access Doors and Frames		11.22.2023
084113	Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts		11.22.2023
085613	Transaction Windows		11.22.2023
087100	Door Hardware		11.22.2023
088000	Glazing		11.22.2023
DIVISION 9 - FIN	ISHES		
092116	Non-Structural Metal Framing		11.22.2023
092400	Portland Cement Plastering		11.22.2023
092900	Gypsum Board		11.22.2023
093000	Tiling		11.22.2023
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings		11.22.2023
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories		11.22.2023
096519	Resilient Tile Flooring		11.22.2023
096723	Resinous Flooring		11.22.2023
096813	Tile Carpeting		11.22.2023
097723	Fabric Wrapped Panels		11.22.2023
099123	Interior Painting		11.22.2023
099300	Staining and Transparent Finishing		11.22.2023
099600	High-Performance Coatings		11.22.2023
101423	ADA and Code Signage		11 22 2023
102113	Toilet Compartments		11 22 2023
102123	Cubicle Curtains and Track		11 22 2023
102120	Wall and Door Protection		11 22 2023
102000	Toilet Bath & Laundry Accessories		11 22 2023
102000	Matal Storage Shelving		11 22 2023
100010	ineral storage sheiring		11.22.2023

		Latest Revision	Original Issue
DIVISION 12 - FU	JRNISHINGS		
122113	Horizontal Louver Blinds		11.22.2023
122413	Roller Window Shades		11.22.2023
123200	Manufactured Wood Casework		11.22.2023
123666	Solid Surfacing Countertops		11.22.2023
DIVISION 22 - PI	LUMBING		
220500	Common Work Results for Plumbing		11.22.2023
220523	General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping		11.22.2023
220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment		11.22.2023
220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment		11.22.2023
220719	Plumbing Piping Insulation		11.22.2023
221116	Domestic Water Piping		11.22.2023
221119	Domestic Water Piping Specialties		11.22.2023
221316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping		11.22.2023
221319	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties		11.22.2023
224000	Plumbing Fixtures		11.22.2023
220500	Common Work Results for HVAC		11 22 2022
230500	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment		11.22.2023
230513	Hangars and Supports for HVAC Diping and Equipment		11.22.2023
230529			11.22.2023
230555	Tooting Adjusting and Polonoing for HVAC		11.22.2023
230393	Duct Inculation		11.22.2023
230713	Metal Ducts		11 22 2023
233713	Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles		11.22.2023
	FOTRICAL		
DIVISION 26 - EI			44.00.0000
260010	Supplemental Requirements for Electrical		11.22.2023
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables		11.22.2023
260523	Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables		11.22.2023
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems		11.22.2023
260529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems		11.22.2023
260533	Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems		11.22.2023
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems		11.22.2023
260923	Lighting Control Devices		11.22.2023
260943	Distributed digital Lighting Control Systems		11.22.2023
202410	Wiring Devices		11.22.2023
202720			11.22.2023
202013	Fuses		11.22.2023
202010	Control Pottory Equipment for Emergency Lighting		11.22.2023
203323	Lightning Protection for Structures		11.22.2023
204113	LED Interior Lighting		11.22.2023
265213	Emergency and Exit Lighting		11.22.2023
DIVISION 27 - C	Divitiviulual IUNS		11 22 2002
270000	Supplemental Requirements for Communications		11.22.2023
Liberty Public Schoo	lis		
Frenklin A Deninher	ES Banavationa		000440

	Latest Revision	Original Issue
270526	Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems	11.22.2023
270536	Cable Trays for Communications Systems	11.22.2023
DIVISION 28 - EL	ECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL AND INTRUSION DETECTION	
280500	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security	11.22.2023
280513	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security	11.22.2023
283111	Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System	11.22.2023

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Project information.
 - 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
 - 3. Work by Owner.
 - 4. Work under separate contracts.
 - 5. Future work.
 - 6. Access to site.
 - 7. Coordination with occupants.
 - 8. Work restrictions.
 - 9. Specification and drawing conventions.
 - 10. Miscellaneous provisions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

1.2 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Liberty Public Schools Aging Facilities Renovations
 - 1. 23027 Franklin Elementary School
 - a. Project Address: 201 West Mill Street, Liberty, Missouri 64068, Liberty, Missouri 64068
 - 2. 23028 Alexander Doniphan Elementary School
 - a. Project Address: 1900 Clay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64068
- B. Owner: Liberty Public Schools
 - 1. Refer to Document 000101 "Project Team Directory."
- C. Architect:
 - 1. Refer to Document 000101 "Project Team Directory."
- D. Architect's Consultants: The Architect has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:
 - 1. Refer to Document 000101 "Project Team Directory."
- E. Construction Manager:
 - 1. Refer to Document 000101 "Project Team Directory."

1.3 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:
 - 1. General: All demolition, sitework, architectural, structural, fire suppression, plumbing, mechanical, electrical, access control, technology and utilities as indicated in the Contract Documents and as further defined in the Scopes of Work.
 - 2. Alternates: Refer to Section 012300 "Alternates".
- B. Type of Contract:
 - 1. Project will be constructed under a multiple trade contract.

1.4 WORK BY OWNER

A. General: Cooperate fully with Owner so work may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract or work by Owner. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed by Owner.

1.5 WORK UNDER SEPARATE CONTRACTS

A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract or other contracts. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under separate contracts.

1.6 FUTURE WORK

A. The Contract Documents include requirements that will allow the Owner to carry out future work following completion of this portion of the Project.

1.7 ACCESS TO SITE

- A. General: Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.
- B. Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
 - 1. Limits: Confine construction operations to areas indicated and as directed by Construction Manager.
 - 2. Driveways, Walkways, and Entrances: Keep driveways, loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.
 - a. Restrictions: Note that no deliveries to the Project Site will be allowed between the hours of 7:00 am to 8:30 am and 2:00 pm to 3:30 pm.
 - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
 - c. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- C. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.8 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the premises during entire construction period, with the exception of areas under construction. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.

1.9 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
 - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work in the existing building to normal business working hours of 7:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated.

- 1. Weekend Hours: Coordinate and schedule all weekend hours with the Owner not less than 48 hours in advance. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 2. Early Morning Hours: Notify Owner of days when early morning hours will be required and comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect and Owner not less than three (3) days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- D. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
 - 1. Notify Architect and Owner not less than three (3) days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
 - 2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
- E. Nonsmoking Buildings and Sites: Smoking is not permitted on School District property.
- F. Controlled Substances: Use of tobacco products and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.
- G. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.
- H. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.
 - 1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.
 - 2. As a condition for the award of any service contract in excess of \$5,000.00 by the Owner, the service provider must be enrolled in and currently participating in "E-Verify" or any other equivalent electronic verification of work authorization program operated by the U.S. Department of Homeland Security.
 - As a further condition for the award of any service contract in excess of \$5,000.00 the service provider shall not knowingly employ any person who is an un-authorized alien in conjunction with the contracted services.
 a. E-Verify forms are available for duplication and contractor's use in Section 008400 Attachments.

1.10 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 - 2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.
 - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
 - 1. Certain items are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
 - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
 - 2. Unit-cost allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices.
 - 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for testing and inspecting.

1.2 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required to coordinate installation.

1.6 LUMP-SUM AND UNIT-COST ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.

- 1. Sales and Use Taxes shall be omitted for this project.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner and/or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 1. If requested by Architect, retain, and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.
- D. Refer to "Bid Packages" for further clarification of required allowances.

1.7 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
 - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
 - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
 - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
 - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

3.3 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

A. General: Refer to individual Bid Package – Scopes of Work for Allowances.

SECTION 012200 - UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
 - 2. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for general testing and inspecting requirements.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Unit price is an amount incorporated in the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes (other than sales and use tax), overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

A. Refer to Individual Bid Package – Scopes of Work.

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
 - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
 - 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated revisions to alternates.
- C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- D. Schedule: A schedule of alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alexander Doniphan Elementary Alternate No. 1: Expansion of Admin Restrooms
 - 1. Alternate (Add): Alternate includes all labor, materials, equipment, and appurtenances necessary to provide <u>Expansion of two (2) existing restrooms C107 and C110 in Admin area</u> as indicated on Drawings as Alternate No. 1.
 - Base Bid: Do not provide two (2) new restrooms in Admin area as indicated on Drawings as Alternate No.
 1.
- B. Alexander Doniphan Elementary Alternate No. 2: Expansion of SPED Restrooms
 - 1. Alternate (Add): Alternate includes all labor, materials, equipment, and appurtenances necessary to provide <u>Expansion of two (2) existing restrooms C127a and C128a in SPED area</u> as indicated on Drawings as Alternate No. 2.
 - 2. Base Bid: Do not provide two (2) new restrooms in SPED area as indicated on Drawings as Alternate No. 2.
- C. Alexander Doniphan Elementary Alternate No. 3: Expansion of SPED Restrooms
 - 1. Alternate (Add): Alternate includes all labor, materials, equipment, and appurtenances necessary to <u>Replace Acoustical Panel Ceilings with CLG1 in full school with exception of Room C100</u> as indicated on

Drawings as Alternate No. 3.

- 2. Base Bid: Provide Acoustical panel ceilings as indicated on Drawings.
- D. Franklin Elementary Alternate No. 1: Staff Lounge Renovation
 - 1. Alternate (Add): Alternate includes all labor, materials, equipment, and appurtenances necessary to <u>Renovate Staff Lounge</u> as indicated on Drawings as Alternate No. 1.
 - 2. Base Bid: No work in Staff Lounge area as indicated on Drawings as Alternate No. 1.
- E. Franklin Elementary Alternate No. 2: <u>Gym Stage Renovation to Offices</u>
 - 1. Alternate (Add): Alternate includes all labor, materials, equipment, and appurtenances necessary to <u>Renovate Gym Stage into Offices</u> as indicated on Drawings as Alternate No. 2.
 - 2. Base Bid: No work in Gym Stage area as indicated on Drawings as Alternate No. 2.

SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for "Substitutions for Convenience" and "Substitutions for Cause".
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for products selected under a unit price.
 - 3. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
 - 4. Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.
 - 5. Division 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements and limitations for substitutions.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms. Substitutions for Cause shall be submitted after award of the contract as set forth hereinafter.
 - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner. Substitutions for Convenience shall be submitted prior to bidding as set forth hereinafter.
- B. Comparable Products: Naming of specified items on the Drawings and in the specifications, means that such named items are specifically required by the Architect and/or Owner. When the words "or comparable product" follows such named item(s), a substitution request must be submitted when proposing a product other than the named product. Requests for substitutions must be received by the Architect within the time frame set hereinafter.
- C. The following are not considered substitutions:
 - 1. Revisions to Contract Documents requested by the Owner or Architect.
 - 2. Specified options of products, materials and construction methods included in the Contract Documents.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit at least one (1) paper copy or an electronic pdf copy of each request for consideration to the Architect. Clearly Identify proposed product and related options or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title, in addition to applicable Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided at the end of this Section.
 - a. Accompanying each Substitution Request shall be a fully executed copy of the Substitution Request Form.
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication, or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Specifically indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified in writing.

- d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
- e. Samples, where applicable or requested, of proposed substitution and of specified product shall be submitted for comparison and review by Architect.
- f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
- g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names, addresses and contact information of architects and owners.
- h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
- i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
- j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
- k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
- I. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
- m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
- 3. Architect's Review Process: Submittal requests for proposed substitutions will be processed using the following procedures:
 - a. Submittals will be "Received Dated" immediately upon arrival.
 - b. Submittals will be placed by receiving person in a file designated for that purpose.
 - c. Submittals will not be reviewed for completeness or compliance until after the date and time established for closing of receipt of substitution request submittals.
 - d. Submittals will be reviewed by a member of Hollis + Miller Architect's staff (or respective consultant). Reviewer(s) will not be designated until after closing period established for receipt of submittals.
 - e. Reviewer's General Attitude will be:
 - 1) Burden of Proof is on Proposer.
 - 2) Reviewer should not be required to complete the submittal, that is, select from options or between models and lines of products.
 - Reviewer should not be required to conduct an exhaustive review of the submittal. Submittals of manufacturer's catalogs which do not clearly indicate proposed product and proposed product options will be rejected.
 - 4) Reviewer should not be required to seek information from manufacturer's literature on file in the office, from an improperly submitted electronic submittal or information in other locations.
 - 5) Substitute must be "comparable to" or superior in those features and performance which the Project requires and those which the specified product will provide.
 - 6) Review is complete when, in the reviewer's opinion, significant deficiency(ies) are established. In such case, review of data covering other points of specifications is not required.
 - f. Reviewer will note action taken (No Exception taken to Submitted Manufacturer, No Exception taken to Specific Product, Exceptions Noted, Not Accepted or Received Late), the date, and his/her initials.
 - g. All submittals received after closing time will be "Received Dated", marked "Late", initialed by reviewer, and filed without review.
 - h. Submittals will be filed in Architect's office until completion of the Project.
- 4. Architect's Action:
 - a. Architect will review requests for "Substitutions for Convenience" only once, no additional information may be submitted. Architect may request additional information as necessary for review of "Substitutions for Cause."
 - b. Architect will note action taken.
 - c. Architect is not obligated nor required to review any and all substitution requests.
 - d. Architect is not obligated to inform proposers of substitutions of incomplete and non-accepted requests for substitution.
 - e. Acceptance of Substitutions:
 - 1) Acceptance of Substitutions for Convenience: Accepted substitutions will be set forth in an Addendum and in no other manner.
 - (a) Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution.
 - Acceptance of Substitutions for Cause: Architect will review proposed substitution within 15 business days of receipt of request. If necessary, Architect, through Construction Manager, will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven (7) business days of

receipt of a request for Substitution for Cause." Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later. Only acceptable substitutions will receive notification of status. Substitutions shall be considered unacceptable unless a form of acceptance is received by the Proposer.

- (a) Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
- (b) Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.4 ELECTRONIC SUBMITTAL OF SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitution Request submittals will be accepted for review when submitted electronically under the following conditions. Substitution requests which are not submitted in accordance with the criteria listed below may be rejected at the Architect's discretion.
 - 1. Accompanying each submittal shall be a fully executed copy of the Substitution Request Form.
 - 2. Submittals shall be sent to Hollis + Miller Architects, to the attention of the contact listed in Document 000101 "Project Team Directory. Submittals directed to the attention of anyone other than the contact listed will not be considered.
 - 3. Submittals of Substitutions for Cause must be received within the time limits set forth in Paragraph 2.1 A of this Section.
 - 4. Submittals of Substitutions for Convenience must be received prior to bidding and within the time limits set forth in Paragraph 2.1 B of this Section.
 - 5. Documentation requirements as set forth in 1.3 A.2a through 1.3 A.2m are applicable to electronic submittals.
 - a. Note: Electronic submittals in which the manufacturer's entire catalog is submitted will be rejected.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions at no additional cost to the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than thirty (30) days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect and Owner will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Request is directly related to a "or comparable product" clause or similar language in the Contract Documents.
 - c. Specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time.
 - d. Specified product or method of construction cannot be provided in a manner that is compatible with other materials, and where the Contractor certifies that the substitution will overcome the incompatibility.
 - e. Specified product or method of construction cannot provide a warranty required by the Contract Documents and where the Contractor certifies that the proposed substitution will provide the specified warranty.
 - f. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.

- g. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- h. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- i. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- j. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- k. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- I. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution only when submitted prior to bidding, and no later than 4:00 p.m. (local time) eight (8) calendar days prior to the date established for receipt of bids. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- C. The Contractor's submittal and A/E's acceptance of Shop Drawings, Product Data or Samples that relate to construction activities not complying with the Contract Documents does not constitute an acceptance or validate request for substitution, nor does it constitute approval.
- D. Under no circumstances does the Architect's and/or Owner's acceptance of any such substitution relieve the Contractor from timely, full and proper performance of the Work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

SECTION 012500.01 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES FORM

PROJECT: 23027 - Franklin ES Elementary Renovation, 201 W. Mill Street, Liberty, Missouri 64048 23028 - Alexander Doniphan ES Elementary Renovation, 1900 Clay Drive, Liberty, Missouri 64048
MAIL TO: HOLLIS + MILLER ARCHITECTS, 1828 WALNUT STREET, SUITE 922, KANSAS CITY, MISSOURI 64108
SPECIFIED ITEM/ KEYNOTE #:
PROPOSED SUBSTITUTE:
SUBMITTED BY:
FIRM:
ADDRESS:
SIGNATURE: DATE:
PHONE NUMBER:
ATTACH COMPLETE DESCRIPTION, DESIGNATION, CATALOG OR MODEL NUMBER, SPEC DATA SHEET AND OTHER TECHNICAL DATA AND SAMPLES, INCLUDING LABORATORY TESTS IF APPLICABLE.
FILL IN BLANKS BELOW:
1. WILL SUBSTITUTION AFFECT DIMENSION INDICATED ON DRAWINGS?
2. WILL SUBSTITUTION AFFECT WIRING, PIPING, DUCTWORK, ETC., INDICATED ON DRAWINGS?
3. WHAT EFFECT WILL SUBSTITUTION HAVE ON OTHER TRADES?
4. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN PROPOSED SUBSTITUTION AND SPECIFIED ITEM?
5. ANY AND ALL IMPACTS ON COSTS, DESIGN MODIFICATIONS, ADDITIONAL ARCHITECTURAL AND ENGINEERING SERVICES, MATERIAL AND LABOR CHANGES, SCHEDULE CHANGES, AND OTHER UNANTICIPATED

CONSEQUENCES, RESULTING FROM THIS SUBSTITUTION IN LIEU OF THE SPECIFIED ITEM, SHALL BE THE FULL RESPONSIBILITY OF THE CONTRACTOR AND HIS SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIER.

6. MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTIES OF THE SPECIFIED ITEMS AND PROPOSED ITEMS ARE: [] SAME OR

[] DIFFERENT, EXPLAIN: _____

REVIEW COMMENTS:

[] NO EXCEPTION TAKEN TO SUBMITTED MANUFACTURER

MANUFACTURER ONLY, IS ACCEPTED DUE TO TIME LIMITATIONS FOR FULL REVIEW OF PRODUCT, OR BECAUSE NO SPECIFIC PRODUCT DATA IS SUBMITTED, OR OTHER UNSPECIFIED REASONS. CONTRACTOR MUST STILL BEAR FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR COMPLIANCE WITH CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS.

[] NO EXCEPTION TAKEN TO SPECIFIC PRODUCTS

[] EXCEPTIONS NOTED

SEE ATTACHED COPY OR NOTES ON PRODUCT LITERATURE

[] NOT ACCEPTED

ſ	1 RECEIVED	TOO LATE
L	1	

BY: _____ DATE: _____ REMARKS: _____

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
 - 4. On-line Project file.
 - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. RFI: Request from Owner, Construction Manager, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Use form acceptable to Construction Manager. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within ten (10) days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project. Keep list current at all times.
 - 1. Post paper copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone.
 - 2. Post electronic copy as PDF electronic files directly to Project file on the JE Dunn Submittal Portal website (https://submittals.jedunn.com) specifically established for Project.

1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
 - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 - 5. Progress meetings.
 - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 - 7. Project closeout activities.
 - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
 - 1. Refer to Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal" for additional requirements.

1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
 - 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
 - 1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 - 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 - 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 - 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 - 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 - 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

- a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
- b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
- c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
- 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
 - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
- 8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
 - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
- 9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
- 10. Coordination Drawing Prints: As deemed necessary by Construction Manager, prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
 - 1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
 - 2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using Portable Data File (PDF) format.
 - 3. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into Building Information Model established for Project.
 - a. Refer to individual Scopes of Work for Trades required to perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Architect.
 - 4. Architect, through Construction Manager, will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
 - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
 - b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in Revit version 2023 using Windows 11 operating system.
 - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in Project Manual.
- 1.6 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIS)
 - A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - 1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
 - 2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
 - B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
 - 1. Project name.
 - 2. Project number.
 - 3. Date.
 - 4. Name of Contractor.
 - 5. Name of Architect.
 - 6. Name of Construction Manager.
 - 7. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 - 8. RFI subject.
 - 9. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 - 10. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - 11. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 - 12. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 - 13. Contractor's signature.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

- 14. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 or a software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
 - 1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.
- D. Architect's and Construction Manager's Action: Architect and Construction Manager will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven (7) working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect or Construction Manager after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
 - The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 - 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
 - Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect and Construction Manager in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly in form acceptable to Architect. Include the following:
 - 1. Project name.

1.

- 2. Name and address of Contractor.
- 3. Name and address of Architect.
- 4. Name and address of Construction Manager.
- 5. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
- 6. RFI description.
- 7. Date the RFI was submitted to the Architect.
- 8. Date Architect's and Construction Manager's response was received.
- F. On receipt of Architect's and Construction Manager's action, immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect and Construction Manager within seven (7) days if Contractor disagrees with response.
 - 1. Change in Work shall be recorded to the Project Record set per Section 017839 "Project Record Documents".

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
 - 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
 - 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect, within three (3) days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
 - 1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.

- 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, Architect, and their consultants; each Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Tentative construction schedule.
 - b. Phasing.
 - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
 - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - e. Lines of communications.
 - f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - g. Procedures for RFIs.
 - h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - k. Submittal procedures.
 - I. Preparation of record documents.
 - m. Use of the premises.
 - n. Work restrictions.
 - o. Working hours.
 - p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - t. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - u. Parking availability.
 - v. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - w. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - x. First aid.
 - y. Security.
 - z. Progress cleaning.
- 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
 - 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner's Commissioning Authority of scheduled meeting dates.
 - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Review of mockups.
 - i. Possible conflicts.
 - j. Compatibility requirements.
 - k. Time schedules.
 - I. Weather limitations.
 - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - n. Warranty requirements.
 - o. Compatibility of materials.
 - p. Acceptability of substrates.
 - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Space and access limitations.
 - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

- t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
- Installation procedures. u.
- Coordination with other work. v.
- Required performance results. w.
- Protection of adjacent work. х.
- ٧. Protection of construction and personnel.
- Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective 3. measures and actions.
- 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
- Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever 5. actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 60 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
 - Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout. 1
 - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work. 3.
 - Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - Preparation of record documents. a.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - Submittal of written warranties. c.
 - Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data. d
 - Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts. e.
 - Requirements for demonstration and training. f.
 - Preparation of Contractor's punch list. g.
 - Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment. h.
 - Submittal procedures. i.
 - Owner's partial occupancy requirements. İ.
 - Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment. k.
 - Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls. L.
 - 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- Progress Meetings: Construction Manager will conduct progress meetings at biweekly intervals. E.
 - Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests. 1.
 - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of 3. significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each a. activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - Review schedule for next period. 1)
 - Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following: b.
 - Interface requirements. 1)
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
 - 4) Status of submittals.
 - 5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
 - 6) Deliveries.
 - 7) Off-site fabrication.
 - 8) Access.
 - 9Ì Site utilization.

PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
- 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
- 11) Progress cleaning.
- 12) Quality and work standards.
- 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
- 14) Field observations.
- 15) Status of RFIs.
- 16) Status of proposal requests.
- 17) Pending changes.
- 18) Status of Change Orders.
- 19) Pending claims and disputes.
- 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.
- 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Construction Manager will conduct Project coordination meetings at <u>regular</u> intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
 - 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work. Owner's Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Architect will attend as deemed necessary.
 - 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
 - 4) Status of submittals.
 - 5) Deliveries.
 - 6) Off-site fabrication.
 - 7) Access.
 - 8) Site utilization.
 - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 10) Work hours.
 - 11) Hazards and risks.
 - 12) Progress cleaning.
 - 13) Quality and work standards.
 - 14) Change Orders.
 - 3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)

This page intentionally left blank

PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Startup construction schedule.
 - 2. Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
 - 4. Daily construction reports.
 - 5. Material location reports.
 - 6. Site condition reports.
 - 7. Special reports.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
- 2. Section 014529 "Testing and Inspections" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
- C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- E. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
 - 2. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- F. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
 - 2. PDF electronic file
- B. Startup construction schedule.
 - 1. Approval of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.

- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
 - 1. Submit a working electronic copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.
- D. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- E. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- F. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- G. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- H. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.
 - 1. Adverse Weather Days: Document conditions affecting construction activities and submit within 24 hours of the event.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's construction schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
 - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
 - 3. Discuss constraints, including phasing, work stages, area separations and interim milestones.
 - 4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
 - 5. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
 - 6. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
 - 7. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
 - 8. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures, including commissioning activities.
 - 9. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
 - 10. Review procedures for updating schedule.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of final completion.
 - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
 - 2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.

- 3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
- 4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 20 days for startup and testing.
- 5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's and Construction Manager's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
- 6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
 - 1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
 - 2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
 - 3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner, if any.
 - 4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 - 5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 011000 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 - 6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Coordination with existing construction.
 - b. Uninterruptible services.
 - c. Use of premises restrictions.
 - d. Provisions for future construction.
 - e. Seasonal variations.
 - f. Environmental control.
 - 7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.
 - c. Purchases.
 - d. Mockups.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Sample testing.
 - g. Deliveries.
 - h. Installation.
 - i. Tests and inspections.
 - j. Adjusting.
 - k. Curing.
 - I. Building flush-out.
 - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
 - 8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
 - a. Structural completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - c. Permanent space enclosure.
 - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - e. Completion of electrical installation.
 - f. Substantial Completion.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.
- E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
 - 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
 - 1. Unresolved issues.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

- 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
- 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
- 4. Notations on returned submittals.
- 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
- G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

2.2 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, bar-chart-type construction schedule within seven (7) days of date established for the Notice to Proceed or Notice of Award, whichever is earlier.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

2.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's construction schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
 - 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 30 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
 - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
 - 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
 - 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
 - 4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule in order to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
 Perfect to Section 007200 for additional requirements.
 - 1. Refer to Section 007300 for additional requirements.
- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.
- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early starttotal float." Identify critical activities.
- G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
 - 1. Identification of activities that have changed.
 - 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
 - 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
 - 4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
 - 5. Changes in the critical path.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

- 6. Changes in total float or slack time.
- Changes in the Contract Time. 7.
- 2.4 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)
 - Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's A. construction schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed or the Notice of Award, whichever is earlier. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
 - В. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
 - For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion 1 percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

REPORTS 2.5

- Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning A. events at Project site:
 - List of subcontractors at Project site. 1.
 - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 - 3 Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 - Equipment at Project site. 4
 - 5. Material deliveries.
 - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 - Accidents. 7.
 - 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
 - Unusual events (see special reports). 9.
 - Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses. 10
 - Meter readings and similar recordings. 11.
 - Emergency procedures. 12.
 - 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
 - 15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 - 16. Services connected and disconnected.
 - 17. 18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 - Partial completions and occupancies.
 - 19. Substantial Completions authorized.
- Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to В. and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
 - Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage. 1.
 - 2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
 - Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage. 3.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

2.6 SPECIAL REPORTS

- General: Submit special reports directly to Owner, Architect and Construction Manager within two day(s) of an Α. occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or В. not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
 - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Construction Manager, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
 - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

SECTION 013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
 - 2. Periodic construction photographs.
 - 3. Final completion construction photographs.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.
- 2. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.
- B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
 - 1. Submit photos by uploading to web-based project software site or via email. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction.
 - 2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Date photograph was taken.
 - f. Description of location, vantage point, and direction.
 - g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

1.3 FORMATS AND MEDIA

- A. Digital Photographs: Provide color images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 12 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels. Use flash in low light levels or backlit conditions.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
- C. Metadata: Record accurate date and time from camera.
- D. File Names: Name media files with date, Project area, and sequential numbering suffix.

1.4 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. General: Take photographs with maximum depth of field and in focus.
 - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Preconstruction Photographs: Before starting construction, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

- 2. Take a minimum of 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
- 3. Take a minimum of 20 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
- 4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- C. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take a minimum of 20 photographs biweekly. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- D. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take a minimum of 20 photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)

SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
 - 2. Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 4. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
 - 5. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's and Construction Manager's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's and Construction Manager's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."
- C. Digital File Transfer: Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. A cloud-based ShareFile exchange which allows internal and external users to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and Construction Manager and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
 - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
 - 3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule. a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
 - 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.

- f. Scheduled date for Architect's and Construction Manager's final release or approval.
- g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
- h. Scheduled dates for installation.
- i. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
- j. Activity or event number.

1.4 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect, through the Construction Manager to Contractor, at a nominal cost, for use in preparing submittals.
 - 1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings and Project record drawings.
 - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
 - b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in Revit version 2023 using Windows 11 operating system.
 - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement form furnished by the Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 - 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 - 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 - 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect and Construction Manager reserve the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Construction Manager's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
 - 1. It is expected that the number of submittals sent to the Architect and the Architect's Consultants within any one-week period will be reasonable in number as to not create "undue hardship."
 - 2. It is expected that all submittals will be submitted within the durations outlined in the bid form as provided by each trade.
 - a. A \$100.00 per calendar day penalty will be assessed for any submittal received after durations received as provided by each trade. The penalty will be deducted from the contract through deductive change order. Only if written authorization from the Construction Manager to extend this time frame can this "per day" penalty not be enforced.
 - b. The completion time of the contract will not be extended for delays caused by tardiness of submittals. Cost of such delays shall not be borne by the Owner and may be back-charged as necessary.
 - 1) Contractor shall assume full responsibility for providing materials as specified at their risk to maintain schedule if submittals are not submitted within durations provided on the bid form.
 - c. Upon receipt of unapproved submittals, Contractors will have seven (7) calendar days to revise and resubmit. After such time, the penalty outlined above in 1.4 C.1.a will be assessed.
 - Initial Review: Allow 10 <u>business</u> days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Construction Manager will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
 - 4. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 - 5. Resubmittal Review: Allow 7 *business* days for review of each resubmittal.
 - 6. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 *business* days for initial review of each submittal.
 - 7. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 15 *business* days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Construction Manager, through Architect, before being returned to Contractor.
- D. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:

- 1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
- 2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., OMLC-079200.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., OMLC-079200.01.A).
 - b. Specific material/product identifier: After listing the project identifier and section number as described above, clearly indicate the material/product submitted corresponding to specific paragraph in the specification (e.g., Silicone Joint Sealant 2.2.A).
- 3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect and Construction Manager.
- 4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use software-generated form from electronic project management software or electronic form acceptable to Owner, containing the following information:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name and address of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - g. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
 - h. Category and type of submittal.
 - i. Submittal purpose and description.
 - j. Specification Section number and title.
 - k. Specification paragraph number or drawing designation and generic name for each of multiple items.
 - I. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - m. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - n. Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - o. Indication of full or partial submittal.
 - p. Transmittal number numbered consecutively.
 - q. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
 - r. Other necessary identification.
 - s. Remarks.
- 5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic submittal file metadata:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - c. Manufacturer name.
 - d. Product name.
- E. Options: Clearly identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- F. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect and Construction Manager on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- G. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
 - 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's and Construction Manager's action stamp.
- H. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- I. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's and Construction Manager's action stamp.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 - 1. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files.
 - a. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 - b. Along with the electronic submittal, Contractor shall submit to the Architect, one (1) full sized hard copy of each shop drawing for review and approval, as deemed necessary by the Architect.
 - c. Along with the electronic submittal, contractors shall submit to the Construction Manager, one (1) color deck or color card for each submittal requiring color selection for review, approval and color selection, as deemed necessary by the Architect.
 - 2. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
 - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - 3. Submittals shall constitute an implied statement by the General Contractor and Subcontractor that the submitted items comply with the following statements:
 - a. Items have been reviewed and accepted by the General Contractor and Subcontractor.
 - b. Items have been verified and coordinated with specifications, measurements, conditions, and relevant criteria of the Contract Documents.
 - c. Items can be fabricated and delivered to the project site within the proposed project schedule.
 - 4. Review of submittals by the Architect and/or Owner shall not relieve the Contractor from full compliance with the Construction Documents.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
 - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to clearly show which products and options are applicable.
 - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts/decks.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 - 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 - 5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples and Shop Drawings, as applicable.
 - 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file according to Paragraph 2.1 A.1.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
 - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.

- c. Compliance with specified standards.
- d. Notation of coordination requirements.
- e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
- f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
- g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
- 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
- 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file according to Paragraph 2.1 A.1.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
 - 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 - 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 - e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
 - 3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
 - 4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
 - 5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Sample for "initial selection" shall be listed as a separate item in the submittal schedule.
 - b. Number of Samples: Unless specifically required otherwise in Specification Section, submit one full set of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return submittal with options selected.
 - 6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect and Construction Manager will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record sample.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
 - 7. Electronic Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal for all physical Samples. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
 - 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
 - 3. Number and name of room or space.
 - 4. Location within room or space.
 - 5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.

- F. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."
- G. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation."
- H. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
- I. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."
- J. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- K. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- L. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- M. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- N. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- O. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- P. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- S. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- T. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
 - 2. Date of evaluation.
 - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
 - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - 5. Description of product.
 - 6. Test procedures and results.
 - 7. Limitations of use.
- U. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- V. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

- W. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- X. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file in addition to three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
 - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.
- C. BIM File Incorporation: Incorporate delegated-design drawing and data files into Building Information Model established for Project.
 - 1. Prepare delegated-design drawings in the following format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Drawings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect and Construction Manager.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S AND CONSTRUCTION MANAGER'S ACTION

- A. Action Submittals: Contractor is responsible for conforming and correlating dimensions at job sites for tolerances, clearances, quantities, fabrication processes, coordination of the Work with multiple trades, and full compliance with the Contract Documents. The Architect will review submittals for general conformance with the Contract Documents. Architect and Construction Manager will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect and Construction Manager will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action as follows:
 - 1. No Exception Taken: Signifies item represented in the submittal conforms to the design intent, complies with the intent of the Contract Documents and is acceptable for incorporation into the Work. Contractor is to proceed with fabrication or procurement and related work.
 - 2. Exceptions Noted: Signifies item represented in the submittal conforms to the design concept, complies with the intent of the Contract Documents, and is recommended for incorporation into the Work in accordance with the Architect's and/or Consultant's notations. Contractor is to proceed with the work in

accordance the Architect's and/or Consultant's notations marked on the returned submittal or letter of transmittal. Resubmittal is not required.

- 3. Revised and Resubmit: Signifies item represented in the submittal appears to conform to the design concept and comply with the intent of the Contract Documents, but information is either insufficient or contains discrepancies which prevent the Architect and/or his Consultant from completing his review. Contractor is to resubmit revised information. Fabrication or procurement of the item and related work is not to proceed until the submittal is acceptable.
- 4. Not Accepted: Signifies item represented in the submittal does not conform to the design concept or comply with the intent of the Contract Documents and is not recommended for incorporation into the Work. Contractor shall submit items responsive to the Contract Documents.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect and Construction Manager will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect and Construction Manager will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect and Construction Manager.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
 - 4. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect or Construction Manager.
- C. Mockups/Field Samples: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups/field samples are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups/Field Samples are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 1. Integrated Field Samples: Field samples of select portions exterior envelope or interior construction erected as part of the Work. Field samples may consist of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
 - 2. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes; doors; windows; millwork; casework; specialties; furnishings and equipment; and lighting.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application,

and similar operations.

- 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means, unless otherwise specified in the individual specification section, having successfully completed a minimum of five (5) previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.3 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
 - 1. Whenever Contract Documents reasonably infer materials or installation as necessary to produce the intended results, but do not fully detail or specify such materials, the Contractor shall provide the more expensive method or material, or greater quantity, unless he has obtained a written decision from the Architect.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups/field samples, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
 - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.

- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- D. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
 - 1. Specification Section number and title.
 - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 - 3. Description of test and inspection.
 - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
 - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
 - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
 - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
 - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by the Commissioning Authority.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date of issue.
 - 2. Project title and number.
 - 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
 - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

- 8. Complete test or inspection data.
- 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
- 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
- 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
- 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
- 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting
 - manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following: 1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
 - Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 - 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
 - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 - 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 - 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 - 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
 - 1. Refer to individual specification sections for additional requirements.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
 - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.

- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
 - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
 - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
 - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
 - 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, through Construction Manager, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect or Construction Manager.
 - 2. Notify Architect and Construction Manager seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
 - 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 - 5. Obtain Architect's and Construction Manager's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 7. Unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents, demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup as indicated on Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials.
- M. Field Samples: Construct/apply field samples using required materials, products, finishes and assemblies, finished according to requirements for the completed work. Provide required lighting and additional lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the Work:
 - 1. Build field sample of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Notify Architect three (3) days in advance of dates and times when field samples will be constructed/applied.

- 3. Notify Architect and Construction Manager seven (7) days in advance of dates and times when field sample will be constructed/applied.
- 4. Demonstrate the proposed aesthetic effects and workmanship to be incorporated into the Work.
- 5. Obtain Architect's approval of field sample before starting remainder of work.
 - a. Allow three (3) days for initial review and each re-review of each field sample.
- 6. Field samples not acceptable to Architect shall be re-constructed/re-applied until field sample is accepted to Architect.
- 7. Maintain field sample during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
- 8. Unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents, dispose of field sample when directed by Architect and Owner.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
 - 1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
 - 2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 - 2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
 - 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 - 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 - 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 - 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- D. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
 - 1. Notify Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 - 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 - 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 - 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.

- 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
- 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
 - 1. Access to the Work.
 - 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 - 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 - 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 - 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 - 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 - 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
 - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
 - 1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency or special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
 - 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 - 2. Notifying Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 - 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect and Commissioning Authority, through Construction Manager, with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 - 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 - 6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, and Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
 - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for qualitycontrol services.

SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. AABC Associated Air Balance Council; www.aabc.comwww.aabc.com.
 - 2. AAMA American Architectural Manufacturers Association; www.aamanet.org.
 - 3. AAPFCO Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; www.aapfco.org.
 - 4. AASHTO American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; www.transportation.org.
 - 5. AATCC American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; www.aatcc.org.
 - 6. ABMA American Bearing Manufacturers Association; www.americanbearings.org.
 - 7. ABMA American Boiler Manufacturers Association; www.abma.com.
 - 8. ACI American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); www.concrete.org.

- 9. ACPA American Concrete Pipe Association; www.concrete-pipe.org.
- 10. AEIC Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); www.aeic.org.
- 11. AF&PA American Forest & Paper Association; www.afandpa.org.
- 12. AGA American Gas Association; www.aga.org.
- 13. AHAM Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; www.aham.org.
- 14. AHRI Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); www.ahrinet.org.
- 15. AI Asphalt Institute; www.asphaltinstitute.org.
- 16. AIA American Institute of Architects (The); www.aia.org.
- 17. AISC American Institute of Steel Construction; www.aisc.org.
- 18. AISI American Iron and Steel Institute; www.steel.org.
- 19. AITC American Institute of Timber Construction; www.aitc-glulam.org.
- 20. AMCA Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; www.amca.org.
- 21. ANSI American National Standards Institute; www.ansi.org.
- 22. AOSA Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; www.aosaseed.com.
- 23. APA APA The Engineered Wood Association; www.apawood.org.
- 24. APA Architectural Precast Association; www.archprecast.org.
- 25. API American Petroleum Institute; www.api.org.
- 26. ARI Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
- 27. ARI American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
- 28. ARMA Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; www.asphaltroofing.org.
- 29. ASCE American Society of Civil Engineers; www.asce.org.
- 30. ASCE/SEI American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
- 31. ASHRAE American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; www.ashrae.org.
- 32. ASME ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); www.asme.org.
- 33. ASSE American Society of Safety Engineers (The); www.asse.org.
- 34. ASSE American Society of Sanitary Engineering; www.asse-plumbing.org.
- 35. ASTM ASTM International; www.astm.org.
- 36. ATIS Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; www.atis.org.
- 37. AWEA American Wind Energy Association; www.awea.org.
- 38. AWI Architectural Woodwork Institute; www.awinet.org.
- 39. AWMAC Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; www.awmac.com.
- 40. AWPA American Wood Protection Association; www.awpa.com.
- 41. AWS American Welding Society; www.aws.org.
- 42. AWWA American Water Works Association; www.awwa.org.
- 43. BHMA Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; www.buildershardware.com.
- 44. BIA Brick Industry Association (The); www.gobrick.com.
- 45. BICSI BICSI, Inc.; www.bicsi.org.
- 46. BIFMA BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); www.bifma.org.
- 47. BISSC Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; www.bissc.org.
- 48. BWF Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); www.bwfbadminton.org.
- 49. CDA Copper Development Association; www.copper.org.
- 50. CEA Canadian Electricity Association; www.electricity.ca.
- 51. CEA Consumer Electronics Association; www.ce.org.
- 52. CFFA Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com.
- 53. CFSEI Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; www.cfsei.org.
- 54. CGA Compressed Gas Association; www.cganet.com.
- 55. CIMA Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.cellulose.org.
- 56. CISCA Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; www.cisca.org.
- 57. CISPI Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; www.cispi.org.
- 58. CLFMI Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; www.chainlinkinfo.org.
- 59. CPA Composite Panel Association; www.compositepanel.org.
- 60. CRI Carpet and Rug Institute (The); www.carpet-rug.org.
- 61. CRRC Cool Roof Rating Council; www.coolroofs.org.
- 62. CRSI Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; www.crsi.org.
- 63. CSA Canadian Standards Association; www.csa.ca.
- 64. CSA CSA International; (Formerly: IAS International Approval Services); www.csa-international.org.
- 65. CSI Construction Specifications Institute (The); www.csiresources.org.
- 66. CSSB Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; www.cedarbureau.org.
- 67. CTI Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); www.cti.org.
- 68. CWC Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).

- 69. DASMA Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; www.dasma.com.
- 70. DHI Door and Hardware Institute; www.dhi.org.
- 71. ECA Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
- 72. ECAMA Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See ECIA).
- 73. ECIA Electronic Components Industry Association; www.eciaonline.org.
- 74. EIA Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
- 75. EIMA EIFS Industry Members Association; www.eima.com.
- 76. EJMA Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.ejma.org.
- 77. ESD ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); www.esda.org.
- 78. ESTA Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
- 79. EVO Efficiency Valuation Organization; www.evo-world.org.
- 80. FCI Fluid Controls Institute; www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org.
- 81. FIBA Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); www.fiba.com.
- 82. FIVB Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); www.fivb.org.
- 83. FM Approvals FM Approvals LLC; www.fmglobal.com.
- 84. FM Global FM Global; (Formerly: FMG FM Global); www.fmglobal.com.
- 85. FRSA Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; www.floridaroof.com.
- 86. FSA Fluid Sealing Association; www.fluidsealing.com.
- 87. FSC Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; www.fscus.org.
- 88. GA Gypsum Association; www.gypsum.org.
- 89. GANA Glass Association of North America; www.glasswebsite.com.
- 90. GS Green Seal; www.greenseal.org.
- 91. HI Hydraulic Institute; www.pumps.org.
- 92. HI/GAMA Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
- 93. HMMA Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
- 94. HPVA Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; www.hpva.org.
- 95. HPW H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; www.hpwhite.com.
- 96. IAPSC International Association of Professional Security Consultants; www.iapsc.org.
- 97. IAS International Accreditation Service; www.iasonline.org.
- 98. IAS International Approval Services; (See CSA).
- 99. ICBO International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
- 100. ICC International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
- 101. ICEA Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; www.icea.net.
- 102. ICPA International Cast Polymer Alliance; www.icpa-hq.org.
- 103. ICRI International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; www.icri.org.
- 104. IEC International Electrotechnical Commission; www.iec.ch.
- 105. IEEE Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); www.ieee.org.
- 106. IES Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); www.ies.org.
- 107. IESNA Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
- 108. IEST Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; www.iest.org.
- 109. IGMA Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; www.igmaonline.org.
- 110. IGSHPA International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; www.igshpa.okstate.edu.
- 111. ILI Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; www.iliai.com.
- 112. Intertek Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); www.intertek.com.
- 113. ISA International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); www.isa.org.
- 114. ISAS Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
- 115. ISFA International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); www.isfanow.org.
- 116. ISO International Organization for Standardization; www.iso.org.
- 117. ISSFA International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
- 118. ITU International Telecommunication Union; www.itu.int/home.
- 119. KCMA Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; www.kcma.org.
- 120. LMA Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
- 121. LPI Lightning Protection Institute; www.lightning.org.
- 122. MBMA Metal Building Manufacturers Association; www.mbma.com.
- 123. MCA Metal Construction Association; www.metalconstruction.org.
- 124. MFMA Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.maplefloor.org.
- 125. MFMA Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.metalframingmfg.org.
- 126. MHIA Material Handling Industry of America; www.mhia.org.
- 127. MIA Marble Institute of America; www.marble-institute.com.

- 128. MMPA Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; www.wmmpa.com.
- 129. MPI Master Painters Institute; www.paintinfo.com.
- 130. MSS Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; www.mss-hq.org.
- 131. NAAMM National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; www.naamm.org.
- 132. NACE NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); www.nace.org.
- 133. NADCA National Air Duct Cleaners Association; www.nadca.com.
- 134. NAIMA North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.naima.org.
- 135. NBGQA National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; www.nbgqa.com.
- 136. NBI New Buildings Institute; www.newbuildings.org.
- 137. NCAA National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); www.ncaa.org.
- 138. NCMA National Concrete Masonry Association; www.ncma.org.
- 139. NEBB National Environmental Balancing Bureau; www.nebb.org.
- 140. NECA National Electrical Contractors Association; www.necanet.org.
- 141. NeLMA Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; www.nelma.org.
- 142. NEMA National Electrical Manufacturers Association; www.nema.org.
- 143. NETA InterNational Electrical Testing Association; www.netaworld.org.
- 144. NFHS National Federation of State High School Associations; www.nfhs.org.
- 145. NFPA National Federation of State High School Associations; www.nfpa.org.
- 146. NFPA NFPA International; (See NFPA).
- 147. NFRC National Fenestration Rating Council; www.nfrc.org.
- 148. NHLA National Hardwood Lumber Association; .www.nhla.com.
- 149. NLGA National Lumber Grades Authority; www.nlga.org.
- 150. NOFMA National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
- 151. NOMMA National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; www.nomma.org.
- 152. NRCA National Roofing Contractors Association; www.nrca.net.
- 153. NRMCA National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; www.nrmca.org.
- 154. NSF NSF International; www.nsf.org.
- 155. NSPE National Society of Professional Engineers; www.nspe.org.
- 156. NSSGA National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; www.nssga.org.
- 157. NTMA National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); www.ntma.com.
- 158. NWFA National Wood Flooring Association; www.nwfa.org.
- 159. PCI Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; www.pci.org.
- 160. PDI Plumbing & Drainage Institute; www.pdionline.org.
- 161. PLASA PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA Entertainment Services and Technology Association); www.plasa.org.
- 162. RCSC Research Council on Structural Connections; www.boltcouncil.org.
- 163. RFCI Resilient Floor Covering Institute; www.rfci.com.
- 164. RIS Redwood Inspection Service; www.redwoodinspection.com.
- 165. SAE SAE International; www.sae.org.
- 166. SCTE Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; www.scte.org.
- 167. SDI Steel Deck Institute; www.sdi.org.
- 168. SDI Steel Door Institute; www.steeldoor.org.
- 169. SEFA Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); www.sefalabs.com.
- 170. SEI/ASCE Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
- 171. SIA Security Industry Association; www.siaonline.org.
- 172. SJI Steel Joist Institute; www.steeljoist.org.
- 173. SMA Screen Manufacturers Association; www.smainfo.org.
- 174. SMACNA Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; www.smacna.org.
- 175. SMPTE Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; www.smpte.org.
- 176. SPFA Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; www.sprayfoam.org.
- 177. SPIB Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; www.spib.org.
- 178. SPRI Single Ply Roofing Industry; www.spri.org.
- 179. SRCC Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; www.solar-rating.org.
- 180. SSINA Specialty Steel Industry of North America; www.ssina.com.
- 181. SSPC SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; www.sspc.org.
- 182. STI Steel Tank Institute; www.steeltank.com.
- 183. SWI Steel Window Institute; www.steelwindows.com.
- 184. SWPA Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; www.swpa.org.
- 185. TCA Tilt-Up Concrete Association; www.tilt-up.org.
- 186. TCNA Tile Council of North America, Inc.; www.tileusa.com.
- 187. TEMA Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.tema.org.
- 188. TIA Telecommunications Industry Association (The); (Formerly: TIA/EIA Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); www.tiaonline.org.

- 189. TIA/EIA Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
- 190. TMS The Masonry Society; www.masonrysociety.org.
- 191. TPI Truss Plate Institute; www.tpinst.org.
- 192. TPI Turfgrass Producers International; www.turfgrasssod.org.
- 193. TRI Tile Roofing Institute; www.tileroofing.org.
- 194. UL Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; www.ul.com.
- 195. UNI Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; www.uni-bell.org.
- 196. USAV USA Volleyball; www.usavolleyball.org.
- 197. USGBC U.S. Green Building Council; www.usgbc.org.
- 198. USITT United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; www.usitt.org.
- 199. WASTEC Waste Equipment Technology Association; www.wastec.org.
- 200. WCLIB West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; www.wclib.org.
- 201. WCMA Window Covering Manufacturers Association; www.wcmanet.org.
- 202. WDMA Window & Door Manufacturers Association; www.wdma.com.
- 203. WI Woodwork Institute; www.wicnet.org.
- 204. WSRCA Western States Roofing Contractors Association; www.wsrca.com.
- 205. WWPA Western Wood Products Association; www.wwpa.org.
- B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. DIN Deutsches Institut fur Normung e.V.; www.din.de.
 - 2. IAPMO International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; www.iapmo.org.
 - 3. ICC International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
 - 4. ICC-ES ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; www.icc-es.org.
- C. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. COE Army Corps of Engineers; www.usace.army.mil.
 - 2. CPSC Consumer Product Safety Commission; www.cpsc.gov.
 - 3. DOC Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; www.nist.gov.
 - 4. DOD Department of Defense; www.quicksearch.dla.mil.
 - 5. DOE Department of Energy; www.energy.gov.
 - 6. EPA Environmental Protection Agency; www.epa.gov.
 - 7. FAA Federal Aviation Administration; www.faa.gov.
 - 8. FG Federal Government Publications; www.gpo.gov/fdsys.
 - 9. GSA General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
 - 10. HUD Department of Housing and Urban Development; www.hud.gov.
 - 11. LBL Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; www.eetd.lbl.gov.
 - 12. OSHA Occupational Safety & Health Administration; www.osha.gov.
 - 13. SD Department of State; www.state.gov.
 - 14. TRB Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; www.trb.org.
 - 15. USDA Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; www.ars.usda.gov.
 - 16. USDA Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; www.usda.gov.
 - 17. USDJ Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; www.ojp.usdoj.gov.
 - 18. USP U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; www.usp.org.
 - 19. USPS United States Postal Service; www.usps.com.
- D. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. CFR Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; www.gpo.gov/fdsys.
 - 2. DOD Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; www.quicksearch.dla.mil.
 - 3. DSCC Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
 - 4. FED-STD Federal Standard; (See FS).
 - 5. FS Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; www.quicksearch.dla.mil.
 - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; www.dsp.dla.mil.
 - b. Available from General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.

- c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; www.wbdg.org/ccb.
- 6. MILSPEC Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
- 7. USAB United States Access Board; www.access-board.gov.
- 8. USATBCB U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).
- E. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. CBHF; State of California; Department of Consumer Affairs; Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; www.bearhfti.ca.gov.
 - 2. CCR; California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; www.calregs.com.
 - 3. CDHS; California Department of Health Services; (See CDPH).
 - 4. CDPH; California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; www.cal-iaq.org.
 - 5. CPUC; California Public Utilities Commission; www.cpuc.ca.gov.
 - 6. SCAQMD; South Coast Air Quality Management District; www.aqmd.gov.
 - 7. TFS; Texas A&M Forest Service; Sustainable Forestry and Economic Development; www.txforestservice.tamu.edu.
 - 8. Colorado Department of Public Health & Environment; www.colorado.gov/pacific/cdphe
 - 9. Colorado Air Quality Control Commission; www.colorado.gov/pacific/cdphe/aqcc
 - 10. Colorado Water Quality Control Division; www.colorado.gov/pacific/cdphe/wqcd
 - 11. Colorado Geological Survey; Land Use Regulations; www.coloradogeologicalsurvey.org/land-useregulations/

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)

SECTION 014529 - TESTING AND INSPECTIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL

A. The preceding "General Conditions" are a part of these specifications, and the Contractor shall consult them in detail in connection with this part of the work.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Employment of a testing and inspection firm approved and paid for by the Owner. Approximate scope of testing and inspection shall be as indicated on the drawings and herein specified in the sections of the specifications.
 - 1. Refer to attachment for scope of testing to be provided by Owner.

1.3 TESTING AND INSPECTION CHARGES

- A. For the following conditions, costs of testing and inspection services shall be paid for by the Contractor, apart from the Testing and Inspection.
 - 1. Costs arising from errors or omissions by the Contractor.
 - 2. Costs of concrete cores, of re-testing materials that fail, and of required identification of materials (mill tests, manufacturers certifications, etc.).
 - 3. Costs of test and inspections required to expedite the Contractors operations.

1.4 CONCRETE WORK

A. Reinforcement shall be positively identified by heat numbers and mill analysis. Otherwise, Contractor shall provide test by qualified laboratory, one test for each 5 tons or fraction thereof, each size and type of reinforcing steel. Cement shall be from tested bins and properly identified at the mixing plant. Contractor shall provide to the testing laboratory aggregate samples for approval. Testing laboratory shall prepare 3 concrete cylinders for each 25 cubic yards, or fraction thereof placed – 2 cylinders to be tested at 7 days, and 1 cylinder at 28 days. Follow ASTM standards throughout.

1.5 GENERAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

A. Observe all building code test and inspection requirements. Notify proper State, County and City authorities, for their required inspections.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT APPLICABLE)

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for products selected under a unit price.
 - 3. Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
 - 4. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
 - 5. Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.
- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
 - 2. Architects Action: For comparable products submitted for "Cause", if necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within fifteen (15) days of receipt of request, or seven (7) days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later. For comparable products submitted for "Contractor's Convenience", Contractor must submit all information necessary to make a direct comparison to specified product for Architect's review, no additional information may be submitted.
 - a. Form of Approval: As specified in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures."
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.

- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
 - 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
 - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
 - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
 - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
 - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
 - 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
 - 1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
 - 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
 - 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
 - 4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
 - 5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weatherprotection requirements for storage.
 - 6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.

1.6 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
 - 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
 - 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
 - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 - Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 - 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered prior to bidding only.
 - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.
 - 2. Manufacturers:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered prior to bidding only.
 - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
 - 3. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
 - 1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - 1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.

- 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
- 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
- 4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
- 5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)

SECTION 017310 - CUTTING AND PATCHING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Selective Demolition" for demolition of selected portions of the building for alterations.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for patching fire-rated construction.
 - 3. Divisions 2 through 33 Sections for specific requirements and limitations applicable to cutting and patching individual parts of the Work.
 - a. Requirements in this Section apply to mechanical and electrical installations. Refer to Divisions 23 and 26 Sections for other requirements and limitations applicable to cutting and patching mechanical and electrical installations.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of existing construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures at least 10 days before the time cutting and patching will be performed, requesting approval to proceed. Include the following information:
 - 1. Extent: Describe cutting and patching, show how they will be performed, and indicate why they cannot be avoided.
 - 2. Changes to Existing Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building's appearance and other significant visual elements.
 - 3. Products: List products to be used and firms or entities that will perform the Work.
 - 4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
 - 5. Utilities: List utilities that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List utilities that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long service will be disrupted.
 - 6. Structural Elements: Where cutting and patching involve modifying structural elements, submit details and engineering calculations showing integration of modification with the original structure, stamped by a Professional Engineer licensed in the state of Kansas.
 - 7. Architect's Approval: Obtain approval of cutting and patching proposal before cutting and patching. Approval does not waive the right to later require removal and replacement of unsatisfactory work.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.
 - 1. Refer questions over systems believed to be structural to the Architect.
- B. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch the following operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.

- 1. Primary operational systems and equipment.
- 2. Air or smoke barriers.
- 3. Fire-protection systems.
- 4. Control systems.
- 5. Communication systems.
- 6. Conveying systems.
- 7. Electrical wiring systems.
- C. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch the following elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
 - 1. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - 2. Membranes and flashings.
 - 3. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
 - 4. Equipment supports.
 - 5. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - 6. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
- D. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
 - 1. If possible, retain original Installer or fabricator to cut and patch exposed Work listed below. If it is impossible to engage original Installer or fabricator, engage another recognized, experienced, and specialized firm.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
- B. Existing Materials: Use materials identical to existing materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of existing materials.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which cutting and patching are to be performed.
 - 1. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
 - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- B. Protection: Protect existing construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

- C. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.
- D. Existing Services: Where existing services are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services before cutting to avoid interruption of services to occupied areas.

3.3 PERFORMANCE

- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 - 1. Cut existing construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Cutting: Cut existing construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
 - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 - 2. Existing Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 - 3. Concrete or Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 32 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- C. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
 - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
 - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove existing floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
 - 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang existing ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 - 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.
- D. Patching and Reparing Existing Roof:
 - 1. Report discrepancies to Architect and Owner before disturbing existing conditions that could affect current warranty.
 - 2. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.
 - 3. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.
 - 4. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
 - 5. Existing Materials: Use materials identical to existing materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - a. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of existing materials.

6. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during patching and reparing operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties. Contractor to confirm materials used will not void existing warranties.

SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition waste.
 - 2. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 024119 "Selective Demolition" for disposition of waste resulting from partial demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- E. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- B. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
 - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

- B. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
- C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
 - 2. Comply with Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

3.2 SALVAGING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work: Salvage items for reuse and handle as follows:
 - 1. Clean salvaged items.
 - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
 - 3. Store items in a secure area until installation.
 - 4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 - 5. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
- B. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use: Salvage items for Owner's use and handle as follows:
 - 1. Clean salvaged items.
 - 2. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 - 3. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
- C. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.
- D. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
- E. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
- F. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
- G. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.

3.3 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 - 2. Final completion procedures.
 - 3. Warranties.
 - 4. Final cleaning.
 - 5. Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017300 "Execution" for progress cleaning of Project site.
 - 2. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
 - 3. Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings and record Product Data.
 - 4. Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements for instructing Owner's personnel.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of ten (10) days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.

- 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
- 5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
- 6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of ten (10) days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
 - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 - Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
 - 6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 - 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
 - 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 - 9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
 - 10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of ten (10) days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect and Construction Manager will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 - 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 - 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.6 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
 - 1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
 - Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 - 3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
 - 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect and Construction Manager will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 - 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.7 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are

outside the limits of construction. Use CSI Form 14.1A.

- 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
- 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
- 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.

4.

- c. Name of Architect
- d. Name of Construction Manager.
- e. Name of Contractor.
- f. Page number.
- Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file.

1.8 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within fifteen (15) days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
 - 1. General: Provide one (1) electronic copy and one (1) paper copy of warranties.
 - 2. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, white vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 - 3. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 - 4. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 - 5. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.9 PROJECT CLOSEOUT CHECK LIST

- A. Requirements: Contractor must provide the following prior to the Architect and Construction Manager approving the release of final payment:
 - 1. Verification that final punch list is complete.
 - 2. Final Affidavit.
 - 3. Consent of Surety.
 - 4. Final Lien Waiver.
 - 5. Affidavit of compliance with Prevailing Wage requirements.
 - 6. As-Built drawings applicable to this Contract.
 - 7. Operation and Maintenance Manuals applicable to this Contract.
 - 8. Current Insurance Certificate.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - d. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building, as applicable.
 - e. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surface finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - f. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - g. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - h. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
 - i. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - j. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - k. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - I. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - m. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - n. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
 - o. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
 - p. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.

- 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "ÚL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
- 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
- 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect and Commissioning Authority, as applicable, will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 - 1. General: Provide one (1) pdf electronic file and one (1) paper copy as follows:
 - a. PDF electronic file: Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - 1) Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - 2) Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
 - Paper copy: Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect, through Construction Manager, will transmit paper copy to Owner upon acceptance.
- C. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least thirty (30) days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will return copy with comments.
 - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's and, as applicable, Commissioning Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within ten (10) days of receipt of Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
 - 1. List of documents.
 - 2. List of systems
 - 3. List of equipment.
 - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."
- 2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS
 - A. General: Submit one (1) paper copy and one (1) copy in pdf electronic file format.
 - B. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Table of contents.
 - 3. Manual contents.
 - C. Title Page: Include the following information:
 - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 - 2. Name and address of Project.
 - 3. Name and address of Owner.
 - 4. Date of submittal.
 - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor and Installer (if applicable).
 - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 - 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 - 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority, as applicable.
 - 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 - 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
 - D. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
 - 1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
 - E. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
 - F. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

- 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
- 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- G. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
 - 1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, white vinyl-covered, post-type binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
 - 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
 - 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
 - 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
 - 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
 - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
 - 1. Type of emergency.
 - 2. Emergency instructions.
 - 3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
 - 1. Fire.
 - 2. Flood.
 - 3. Flood.
 - 4. Gas leak.
 - 5. Water leak.
 - 6. Power failure.
 - 7. Water outage.
 - 8. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - 9. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Instructions on stopping.
 - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
 - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 - 3. Operating standards.
 - 4. Operating procedures.
 - 5. Operating logs.
 - 6. Wiring diagrams.
 - 7. Control diagrams.
 - 8. Piped system diagrams.
 - 9. Precautions against improper use.
 - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
 - 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
 - 4. Equipment function.
 - 5. Operating characteristics.
 - 6. Limiting conditions.
 - 7. Performance curves.
 - 8. Engineering data and tests.
 - 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Startup procedures.
 - 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - 4. Regulation and control procedures.
 - 5. Instructions on stopping.
 - 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Product name and model number.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 - 4. Material and chemical composition.
 - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
 - 1. Inspection procedures.
 - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
 - 5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
 - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
 - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 017300 "Execution" for final property survey.
 - 2. Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
 - 3. Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Final Payment will not be made until Project Record Documents are submitted to, reviewed by and are acceptable to the Architect.
- B. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - b. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one (1) paper-copy set of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- C. Record Specifications: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Initial Submittal:
 - a. Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record specifications.
 - b. Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - 2. Final Submittal:
 - a. Submit PDF electronic files of scanned and marked-up record specifications.
- D. Record Product Data: Submit one (1) paper copy and one (1) annotated PDF electronic file and directory of each submittal.
 - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- E. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit one (1) paper copy and one (1) annotated PDF electronic file and directory of each submittal.
- F. Reports: Submit written report weekly, indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one (1) set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
 - Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
 - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - I. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
 - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files:
 - 1. Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect and Construction Manager. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
 - a. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 - b. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
 - c. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect through Construction Manager for resolution.
 - d. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
 - 1) See Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
 - 2) Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
 - 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 - 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.

- 3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file. 4.
 - Identification: As follows:
 - Project name. а
 - Date. b.
 - Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS." C.
 - Name of Construction Manager. d
 - Name of Architect. е
 - Name of Contractor. f

RECORD SPECIFICATIONS 2.2

- Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that Α. indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 - Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily 1. identified and recorded later.
 - Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished. 2. including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 - For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and 4. maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
 - 5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Refer to previous Article.

2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially Α. from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
 - Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily 1. identified and recorded later.
 - Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written 2. instructions for installation.
 - 3. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.
- Format: Submit one (1) copy of record Product Data as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy Β. of Product Data.
 - Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically 1 linked to each item of record Product Data.

MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS 2.4

- Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and A. submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as one PDF electronic file and a separate paper copy of Β. marked-up miscellaneous record submittals].
 - Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, 1 electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's and Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
 - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 - 3. Pre-Produced demonstration and training videos.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
 - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced (pre-produced) demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products.
- B. Qualifications: For Instructor.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Pre-Produced Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two (2) copies within seven days of end of training.
 - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name of Architect.
 - c. Name of Construction Manager.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Date of video recording.
 - f. Name and address of videographer.
 - 2. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
 - 3. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use. One copy shall be prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals, and the second copy shall be in PDF electronic file format on compact disc.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Videographer Qualifications: A professional videographer who is experienced photographing demonstration and training events similar to those required.
- C. Pre-instruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
 - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.

- 3. Review required content of instruction.
- 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.

4

2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
 - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
 - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
 - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 - c. Operating standards.
 - d. Regulatory requirements.
 - e. Equipment function.
 - f. Operating characteristics.
 - g. Limiting conditions.
 - h. Performance curves.
 - Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
 - a. Emergency manuals.
 - b. Operations manuals.
 - c. Maintenance manuals.
 - d. Project record documents.
 - e. Identification systems.
 - f. Warranties and bonds.
 - g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
 - 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 - b. Instructions on stopping.
 - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
 - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
 - Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Startup and shutdown procedures.
 - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - d. Regulation and control procedures.
 - e. Control sequences.
 - f. Safety procedures.
 - g. Instructions on stopping.

- h. Normal shutdown instructions.
- i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
- Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure. j.
- Seasonal and weekend operating instructions. k.
- Required sequences for electric or electronic systems. Ι.
- m Special operating instructions and procedures.
- Adjustments: Include the following:
- Alignments. a.

5.

7.

8

- Checking adjustments. b.
- Noise and vibration adjustments. C.
- Economy and efficiency adjustments. d.
- Troubleshooting: Include the following: 6.
 - Diagnostic instructions. a.
 - Test and inspection procedures. b.
 - Maintenance: Include the following:
 - Inspection procedures. a.
 - Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning. b.
 - List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product. C.
 - Procedures for routine cleaning d.
 - Procedures for preventive maintenance. e.
 - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
 - Instruction on use of special tools. g.
 - Repairs: Include the following:
 - Diagnosis instructions. a.
 - Repair instructions. b.
 - Disassembly: component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions. c.
 - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
 - Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance. e.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- Set up instructional equipment at instruction location. B.

3.2 INSTRUCTION

- Facilitator: Engage a gualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate Α. instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage gualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
 - Coordinate with Owner for number of participants, instruction times and location. 1.
 - 2. Describe system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
 - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
 - Owner will have in attendance a participant to describe Owner's operational philosophy. a.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
 - Schedule training with Owner, through Construction Manager, with at least seven (7) days' advance notice. 1 a.
 - Notify Architect in writing of training schedule.
- Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility D. using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

E. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

A. Pre-Produced Video Recordings. Video recordings may be used as a component of each training module. Upon completion of training, furnish to Owner one (1) copy of each video used for training.

SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure as indicated, and as required to accommodate new construction.
 - 2. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
- 2. Section 017310 "Cutting and Patching" for cutting and patching procedures.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

1.3 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
 - 1. Owner will retain "first right of refusal" for all demolished items.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
 - 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
 - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
 - 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
 - 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and require protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicate the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- C. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
 - 1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
 - 2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
 - 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
 - 4. Use of elevator and stairs.
 - 5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building to ensure uninterrupted progress of Owner's on-site operations and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- D. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by demolition operations.
 - 1. Comply with Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation." Submit before Work begins.
- E. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- F. Warranties: Documentation indicating that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.
 - 1. Prior to commencement of demolition, representatives of the Owner and the Contractor will inspect the project areas where work will be conducted, and designate items to be salvaged. Items to be salvaged shall be identified by tagging/labeling and listed on the inventory.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
 1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - . Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before the start of Work.
 - a. Scheduling and phasing of hazardous materials removal shall be conducted prior to start of work in consultation with Contractor and Owner's forces. It may be necessary for portions of hazardous materials removal to occur after the start of construction. In such cases, areas where hazardous materials removal occurs shall be abandoned by Contractor during removal until hazardous materials removal is complete.

- 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- 3. Contractor and Owner's forces shall each conduct work according to all applicable OSHA and EPA regulations.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
 - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties. Notify warrantor before proceeding.
 - 1. Roof Warranties: Coordinate with Owner regarding status of existing roof warranties prior to proceediing with work.
- B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- C. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate, and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
- D. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
- E. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs or video.
 1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."
 - 2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for existing services/systems interruptions specified in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
 - 2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
 - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
 - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
 - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
 - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
 - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.
- C. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
 - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
 - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
 - 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
 - 4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
 - 5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- C. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
 - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
 - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.

- 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
- 4. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- D. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
 - 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- E. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
 - 1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
 - 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering, and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
 - Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
 - 4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
 - 5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
 - 6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
 - 7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
 - 8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
 - 9. Locate temporary wall/knockout panels and remove to extent indicated, minimizing damage to existing adjacent construction to remain.
 - 10. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
 - 1. Clean salvaged items.
 - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 - 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 - 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
 - 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
 - 1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
 - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
 - 3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 - 4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, and then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, and then break up and remove.
- D. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings." Do not use methods requiring solvent-based adhesive strippers.
- E. Patching and Reparing Existing Roof:
 - 1. Report discrepancies to Architect and Owner before disturbing existing conditions that could affect current warranty.
 - 2. Beginning of demolition work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions that would be apparent upon examination prior to starting demolition.
 - 3. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.
 - 4. Conduct operations to minimize effects on and interference with adjacent structures and occupants.
 - 5. Existing Materials: Use materials identical to existing materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - a. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of existing materials.
 - 6. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during patching and reparing operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties. Contractor to confirm materials used will not void existing warranties.
- F. Wood Trim and Plaster: Carefully remove wood trim adjacent to interior plaster work to minimize damage to plaster work to remain. Remove loose plaster back to solid/sound plaster.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and dispose of them in an EPA-approved construction and demolition waste landfill acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
 - 4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
 - 1. Slabs-on-grade.
 - 2. Concrete toppings.
- B. This Section also includes the following:
 - 1. Providing the granular drainage fill course beneath building floor slabs on grade.
 - 2. Providing foundation insulation.
- C. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for those allowances affecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for unit prices relating to work of this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Design Reference Sample: Sample designated by Architect in the Contract Documents that reflects acceptable surface quality and appearance of cast-in-place architectural concrete.
- C. Reveal: Projection of coarse aggregate from matrix or mortar after completion of exposure operations.
- D. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.
- 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
 - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
 - a. Architect and Engineer.
 - b. Contractor's superintendent.
 - c. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
 - d. Owner's testing agency.
 - e. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
 - f. Concrete Subcontractor.
 - g. Flatwork technicians.
 - h. Manufacturer's representative for waterproofing admixture.
 - i. Concrete polishing subcontractor.
 - 2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for the following:
 - a. Field quality control.
 - b. Concrete finishes and finishing.
 - c. Cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures.
 - d. Curing procedures.
 - e. Construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, semirigid joint fillers.
 - f. Forms and form removal limitations.
 - g. Vapor-retarder installation.
 - h. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.
 - i. Steel reinforcement installation.

- j. Methods for achieving specified floor and slab flatness and levelness.
- k. Measurement of floor and slab flatness and levelness.
- I. Perimeter insulation installation.
- m. Waterproofing admixture.
- n. Requirements for slabs to receive polished concrete.
- o. Concrete repair procedures.
- p. Concrete protection.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
 - a. Batch delivery tickets shall indicate batch weights as well as amount of available water to add on each delivery ticket.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- D. Jointing Layout: Submit floor plans indicating proposed layout and locations for joints required to construct the structure, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Location of expansion joints.
 - 2. Location of construction and control joints. Locations are subject to approval of the Architect.
 - 3. Include locations for decorative saw cutting of joints associated with floors indicated to receive polished concrete finish.
- E. Samples: For each of the following materials:
 - 1. Chamfers and rustications.
 - 2. Waterstops.
 - 3. Vapor retarder.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Admixtures.
 - 3. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
- D. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with requirements:
 - 1. Aggregates: Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.
- E. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.
- F. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Minutes of preinstallation conference.
- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
 - 1. Installer of concrete topping slabs indicated to receive polished concrete finish and structural cast-in-place concrete slab shall be same as installer for polished concrete finishes.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
 - 1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
 - 2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M.
- F. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
 - 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- G. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
 - 1. Waterproofing (capillary break) admixture manufacturer will test new concrete slabs for permeability.
- H. Other Mockups: Cast concrete slab-on-grade and formed-surface panels to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, floor treatments, and standard of workmanship.
 - 1. For each type of grind and finish level, pour and finish a separate slab-on-grade to be used for a field sample of the polished concrete. Size of field sample area shall not be less than 10 by 10 feet.
 - 2. Build panel approximately 100 sq. ft. for formed surface in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.

- 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
- 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
 - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- C. Concrete surfaces shall be protected by means recommended in writing my polishing product manufacturer.
 - 1. Protection of Slabs to receive Polished Concrete Finishes: Refer to Section 033523 "Decorative Polished Concrete Finishes."

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL
 - A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301.
 - 2. ACI 303.1.
 - 3. ACI 117.
 - 4. ACI 360.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Form-Facing Panels for As-Cast Finishes: Exterior-grade plywood panels, nonabsorptive, that will provide continuous, true, and smooth architectural concrete surfaces, medium-density overlay, Class 1, or better, mill-applied release agent and edge sealed, complying with DOC PS 1.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
 - 1. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
 - 2. Metal, or other approved panel materials.
- C. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
 - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete

according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:

- 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
- 2. Slab -on-grade supports: Provide supports specifically designed for bearing on soil.
- 3. Where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1, gray, plastic-protected bar supports.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type III, gray.
 - 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
 - a. Fly ash may not be used for concrete slabs on grade and elevated concrete slabs indicated to receive a polished concrete finish.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M, Class 3S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size:
 - a. 1-inch nominal for slabs on grade and foundations.
 - b. 3/4-inch nominal for elevated slabs.
 - c. 3/8-inch nominal for concrete topping.
 - d. 3/4-inch nominal for all other locations.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
 - 3. Aggregate for Concrete Topping Slabs shall be sized with the following distribution per ASTM C117 and ASTM C136.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 3. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 4. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.
- F. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.
- G. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
- H. Waterproofing (Capillary Break) Admixture: Admixture shall be formulated to react with water and alkali in the concrete to fill the capillaries within the concrete with calcium silicate hydrate. Admixture shall also have plasticizing properties. Admixture shall be used in lieu of a portion of the mix water, not in addition to the mix water.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard warranty executed by an authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of other rights Owner may have under provisions of the Contract Documents.
 - a. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years commencing on the date of acceptance of the Project by Owner or date of Substantial Completion, whichever is earliest.
 - b. Warranty Terms: Terms to include moisture related failures, including all finish floor materials and labor.
 - 2. Admixture Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Concure Systems; Concure.

- b. Specialty Products Group (SPG); VaporLock 20/20.
- c. Barrier One International; Barrier One.
- 3. Accessories materials:
 - a. Topical vapor sealer as necessary when results from moisture testing by waterproofing admixture manufacturer indicate moisture vapor emission and/or relative humidity with slab exceeding acceptable levels.
- 4. Locations to receive Waterproofing Admixture:
 - a. New slabs-on-grade and elevated slabs.
 - b. Topping slabs over precast concrete.
 - c. Trenches within existing slabs-on-grade.
 - d. Use of waterproofing admixture at polished concrete shall be coordinated with concrete polisher prior to installation.
- I. Shrinkage Reducing Admixtures for Topping Slabs to Receive Polished Concrete Finish: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Eucon SRA Floor Shrinkage Reducing Admixture" or a comparable product submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding with the following product characteristics:
 - 1. Classification: ASTM C494, Type S.
 - 2. Description: A liquid admixture design to reduce drying shrinkage by reducing the surface tension fothe meniscus formed at the air-water interface in the pores.
- J. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.
- 2.6 VAPOR RETARDERS
 - A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A, except with maximum perm rating of 0.01 US perms, a minimum puncture resistance of 2260 grams and a minimum tensile strength of 57 lbf/in. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Insulation Solutions, Inc.; Viper VaporCheck II, 15 mil, Class A.
 - b. Inteplast Group; Barrier-Bac VB-350, 16 mil.
 - c. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Perminator 15 mil.
 - d. Poly-America; Husky Yellow Guard, 15 mil.
 - e. Raven Industries Inc.; Vapor Block 15.
 - f. Stego Industries, LLC.; Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier 15 mil.
- 2.7 GRANULAR DRAINAGE/ CAPILLARY BREAK MATERIAL
 - A. Granular Drainage Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.

2.8 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces, while improving slip resistance.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Curecrete Distribution Inc.; "Ashford Formula" or comparable product meeting specified performance requirements, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 2. Performance Criteria:
 - a. Abrasion Resistance: Improves abrasion resistance by not less than 30 percent over untreated concrete when tested in accordance with ASTM C 779.
 - b. Coefficient of Friction: ASTM C 1028, on steel-troweled concrete samples versus tile, reduces slippage as follows:
 - 1) Dry: 0.71 untreated and with treatment not less than 0.86.
 - 2) Wet: 0.47 untreated and with treatment not less than 0.69.
 - c. Hardening: Improves hardness by not less than 35 percent over untreated concrete when tested in accordance with ASTM C 39 after 28 days.

- d. Impact Resistance: Improves impact resistance by not less than 13 percent over untreated concrete when tested in accordance with ASTM C 805, rebound number.
- 3. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Prosoco, Inc.; "Consolideck LS" or comparable product meeting specified performance requirements, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - a. Sealer, hardener and densifier penetrating lithium silicate treatment ideal for application to existing, cured concrete of any age maybe applied to new concrete (verify).
 - b. Description: Clear premium sealer, hardener and densifier. This penetrating lithium silicate treatment reacts with the concrete to produce insoluble calcium silicate hydrate within the concrete pores. The treated surfaces resist damage from water and surface abrasion. The increased surface hardness reduces dusting and simplifies maintenance.
 - c. Performance Criteria:
 - 1) Form: Clear, colorless, odorless liquid.
 - 2) Specific Gravity: 1.10.
 - 3) pH: 11.0.
 - 4) Weight per Gallon: 9.2 pounds.
 - 5) Active Content: 14.5 percent.
 - 6) Total Solids: 14.5 percent.
 - 7) Flash Point: Not applicable.
 - 8) Freeze Point: 32 degrees Fahrenheit (0 degrees Celsius)
 - 9) Shelf Life: 2 years in unopened, factory-sealed container
 - 10) VOC Content: 0 grams per Liter. Complies with all known national, state and district AIM VOC regulations.
- 4. Products shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.9 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
 1 Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. BASF Construction Chemicals Building Systems; Confilm.
 - b. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74).
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-CON.
 - f. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE.
 - g. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film
 - h. Unitex; PRO-FILM.
- B. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
 - 1. For areas to receive decorative polished concrete, use membrane forming curing compound.
- C. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound (Exterior Slabs Only): ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. BASF Construction Chemicals Building Systems; Kure 200.
 - b. Conspec by Dayton Superior; W.B. Resin Cure.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX; TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
 - f. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100-CLEAR.
 - g. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Rez Clear.
 - Products shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 3. For use in areas with exterior concrete flatwork not indicated within Civil Drawings.

- D. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound (Polished Concrete Slabs Only): ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class A.
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

 Bomanite: Clear Cure.
 - 2. Products shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 3. For use in areas with exposed polished concrete finish. Coordinate the use of this product with the work of polished concrete.

2.10 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or W. R. Meadows; "Deck-O-Foam". Thickness for expansion joint filler strip shall be ½ inch, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For isolation joint filler strips, provide 30# asphalt saturated felt.
- B. Semi-rigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semi-rigid, 100 percent solids, aromatic polyurea with a Type A shore durometer hardness range of 85 to 95 per ASTM D 2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
 - 1. Types I and II, nonload bearing and Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- E. Temporary Floor Protection System: Subject to compliance with requirements provide "Ram Board" by Ram Board or a comparable product submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding with the following product characteristics.
 - 1. Description: Fiber-reinforced protection board designed to allow new concrete to cure while absorbing impacts
 - 2. Material Thickness: 46 mils
 - 3. Wall Guard Feature: Board shall be designed by manufacturer to fold for protection of adjacent walls up to 8 inches above finished floor.
 - 4. Floor protection systems requiring application of a liquid base coat shall be prohibited.
 - 5. Provide manufacturer's recommended seaming tape, vapor curing tape, and edge tape at locations recommended in writing by manufacturer.

2.11 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, Provide "Ultraplan 1 Plus" by MAPEI or a comparable product with the following characteristics .
 - 2. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 3. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 4. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 5. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150/C 150M, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not more than 15 percent. Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 - 1. Fly Ash: 15 percent.
 - 2. Fly ash is not allowed in slabs on grade and elevated slabs indicated to receive the polished concrete finish.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 - 2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 - 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a w/c ratio below 0.50.
 - 4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
 - 5. Use waterproofing (capillary break) admixture in concrete mixtures for slabs on grade and trenching repair for existing slabs on grade.
 - 6. Use shrinkage reducing admixture in concrete topping slabs and elevated slabs to receive a polished concrete finish.
- 2.13 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS
 - A. Slabs-on-Grade (Interior): Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
 - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: Per drawings.
 - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
 - 4. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.

2.14 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.15 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
 - When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
 - 2. Waterproofing (Capillary Break) Admixture shall be added at the jobsite before discharge in accordance with admixture manufacturer's written instructions. The admixture manufacturer's representative shall be present at time of dosing admixture and initial concrete placement. Use for all concrete slabs on grade and elevated slabs.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
 - 1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m) or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.

- 2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m), increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd. (0.76 cu. m).
- 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.
- 4. Waterproofing (Capillary Break) Admixture shall be added at the jobsite before discharge in accordance with admixture manufacturer's written instructions. The admixture manufacturer's representative shall be present at time of dosing admixture and initial concrete placement. Use for all concrete slabs on grade and elevated slabs.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117 (ACI 117M).
 - 1. Form recessed slabs as indicated.
- C. Utilize sides of trenches for forms whenever possible. Where sides of trenches cannot be used; design, erect, support and maintain formwork to support vertical, lateral, static and dynamic loads that might be applied until such loads can be supported by concrete structure.
- D. Limit deflection of form-facing panels to not exceed ACI 303.1 requirements.
- E. In addition to ACI 303.1 limits on form-facing panel deflection, limit cast-in-place concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
 - a. Fins shall be ground smooth with adjacent concrete surface.
 - 2. Class C, 1/2 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- F. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- G. Construct forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Kerf wood rustications, keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
 - 3. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- H. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- I. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- J. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- K. Ease edges of tread-to-riser transitions of concrete riser platforms of seating to dimension as indicated on the drawings.
- L. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- M. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- N. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

- O. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.
 - 1. Coat contact surfaces of wood rustications and chamfer strips with sealer before placing reinforcement, anchoring devices, and embedded items.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
 - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 75 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
 - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
 - 3. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
 - 4. Schedule form removal to maintain surface appearance that matches approved field sample panels and mockups.
 - 5. Cut off and grind glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties flush with surface of concrete.
- B. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 75 percent of 28-day design compressive strength. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- C. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are not acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- D. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 GRANULAR DRAINAGE FILL

- A. Granular Drainage/Capillary Break Fill Course: Cover vapor retarder with not less than indicated depth of granular drainage fill material, moisten, and compact with mechanical equipment to elevation tolerances of plus 0 inch or minus 1/2 inch.
 - 1. Compaction Requirements: Compact to within 95 percent maximum density in accordance with ASTM C 698, Standard Proctor compaction, at workable moisture content.
 - 2. At trenches through existing slabs on grade, provide at additional granular drainage fill/capillary break material to achieve a thickness of not less than 4 inches.
 - 3. Refer to Section 313200 "Subsoil Stabilization" for additional requirements regarding granular drainage fill.

3.5 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders for Slabs on Grade: Following leveling and tamping of granular drainage fill course for building slabs on grade, place vapor retarder sheet with longest dimension parallel with direction of pour. Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643, manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturers' recommended tape.

- 2. Lap vapor retarder over and seal to footings, foundation, strip footings, grade beam and any edge of slab that terminates at existing building conditions, as occurs.
- 3. Seal pipe penetrations with pipe boot made from vapor retarder material, seal with pressure sensitive tape and vapor retarder manufacturer's recommended mastic.
- 4. Repair punctures and tears with patches of vapor retarder material, lapping 6 inches on all sides and sealing with pressure sensitive tape.

3.6 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.
- Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
 Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.7 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 - 3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
 - 4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 - 5. Space vertical joints in walls at 100 feet maximum. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 - 6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 - 8. At Load Transfer Joints: Provide one of the following:
 - a. 2 by 4 inch continuous keyway.
 - b. One #4 by 12 inch long smooth dowel.
 - c. Diamond dowel system.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
 - Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamondrimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch-wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
 - a. Where joints are not specifically indicated, space joints at 12 feet on center (area not to exceed 144 sq ft.). For polished concrete, space joints at 10 feet on center (area not to exceed 100 sq ft.).
 - b. Begin saw cutting of joint no later than 12 hours after finishing.
 - c. For topping slabs, space joints according to accepted layout plan and no greater than 8 feet on center each way.

- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
 - Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 - Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless water was withheld at batch plant, amount withheld was documented in writing and adding withheld water is acceptable to Architect.
- C. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 - Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
 a. Refer to ACI 303.1 for areas to receive architectural concrete finishes.
 - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
 - a. Do not permit vibrators to contact forms.
- D. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 - 5. Concrete slab repairs at trenches shall be flush with adjacent concrete surface.
 - 6. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- E. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
 - 1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 - 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 - 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- F. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
 - 1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 - 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

- A. General Architectural Concrete Finish: Match Architect's design reference sample, identified and described as indicated, to satisfaction of Architect.
- B. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- C. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 - 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- D. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed-finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
 - 1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
 - a. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view on vertical surfaces of sides of ramps, at sides of stairs and at lightpole bases.
- E. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, re-straightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and re-straightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
 - 1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish and to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, and built-up or membrane roofing.
- C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 - 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system. Do not burnish concrete.
 - 2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M), for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
 - b. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 30; with minimum local values of flatness of F(F) 24; for elevated slabs.
 - c. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 45; and of levelness, F(L) 35; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 24, for slabs to receive polished concrete finish.
 - 3. Gymnasium Floor: Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-ft.- long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/8 inch.
 - 4. Finish slab repairs at trenches to be flush with adjacent concrete surfaces.
- D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
 - 1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.

- E. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to traffic surfaces of exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEM INSTALLATION

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steeltroweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:
 - 1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
 - 2. Construct concrete bases 4 inches high unless otherwise indicated, and extend base not less than 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support.
 - 3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3500 psi (24.1 MPa) at 28 days.
 - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 5. For supported equipment, install anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
 - 6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- D. Concrete Topping Slab: Concrete topping slab shall be installed in accordance with the following additional installation requirements.
 - 1. Installation of the concrete topping slab shall be coordinated with General Contractor, Polishing Contractor, and Concrete Installer to minimize the time and exposure to foot traffic of all other trades.
 - 2. General Contractor, Polishing Contractor, and Concrete Installer shall establish a date of concrete topping slab installation and coordinate this date with all trades, including concrete topping installer and polisher, prior to start of construction.

3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 (ACI 301M) for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, as follows:
 - 1. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - a. Use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete slab surfaces to receive all types of floor coverings.

- b. Use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete slab surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments, sealed concrete floor treatments and decorative polished concrete floor treatment.
- 2. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer.
- F. Temporary Floor Protection System:
 - 1. Cover polished concrete floors with temporary floor protection system prior to and after completion of polished concrete floor finish.
 - 2. Temporary floor protection system shall be maintained in good condition as recommended by manufacturer until construction activities are complete.
- 3.13 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENT APPLICATION
 - A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
 - 2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than 28 days' old.
 - 3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
 - B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.14 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least four month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.
 - 1. Where control/contraction joints extend to the exterior of the building, beyond aluminum storefront, curtain wall and similar framing, completely fill joints with semi-rigid joint filler from exterior to inside face of framing. Exposed joint shall be completely filled and made water-tight.
 - 2. Where control/contraction joints occur in floors indicated to receive penetrating sealed concrete finish.

3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch (19 mm). Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and

compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.

- 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
- 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 - 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 - 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections and Testing: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
 - 1. Waterproofing (capillary break) admixture manufacturer shall test new concrete slabs for permeability.
- C. Inspections:
 - 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement welding.
 - 3. Headed bolts and studs.
 - 4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
 - 5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
 - 6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
 - 7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
 - 8. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:

- 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
- 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
- 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete;one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
- 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below or 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
- 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
- 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
- 7. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
- 8. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
- 9. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- 10. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- 11. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
- 12. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- 13. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M) within 72 hours of initial concrete placement.

3.17 PROTECTION OF FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Protect floor treatments from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by floor treatments installer.

END OF SECTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

3.

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units
 - 2. Lintels and Bond Beams
 - a. U-Shaped Masonry Lintels
 - b. U-Shaped Masonry Bond Beams
 - Mortar and Grout.
 - 4. Reinforcement
 - a. Steel reinforcing bars.
 - b. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
 - 5. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
 - a. Compressible filler.
 - b. CMU control joint.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for unit prices relating to work of this Section
 - 2. Section 012300 "Alternates" for alternates effecting work of this Section.
 - 3. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
- 1.2 DEFINITIONS
 - A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
 - B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.
- 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
 - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - Before installation of unit masonry, review procedures and tolerances for ensuring quality of masonry materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with unit masonry to attend, including but not limited to the following:
 - a. Owner's representative
 - b. Architect and Engineer.
 - c. Contractor's superintendent.
 - d. Masonry subcontractor.
 - e. Manufacturer's representative for masonry units.
 - f. Manufacturer's representative for flashing components.
 - g. Manufacturer's representative for fluid applied air barrier system.
 - Review field quality control measures for the following items:
 - a. Field dimensions and tolerances for unit masonry installation.
 - b. Installation procedures for flashing components.
 - c. Review of shop drawing elevations indicating colors of unit masonry and locations.
- 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

2.

- A. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.

- 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Decorative concrete masonry units, in the form of small-scale units.
 - 2. Colored mortar.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
 - 1. Decorative concrete masonry units, in the form of small-scale units.
 - 2. Special shapes for the following:
 - a. Concrete masonry units.
 - b. Decorative concrete masonry units.
 - 3. Pigmented and colored-aggregate mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
 - 4. Accessories embedded in masonry.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
 - 1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.
 - B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
 - C. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
 - b. For concrete masonry units, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
 - c. For concrete masonry units included within fire resistant construction, provide certificate from manufacturer indicating compliance with ACI 216.1, latest edition for production of fire rated concrete masonry products.
 - 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
 - 3. Mortar admixtures.
 - 4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 6. Reinforcing bars.
 - 7. Joint reinforcement.
 - D. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91/C 91M for air content.
 - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
 - E. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - F. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated.

- B. Mockups for Interior Walls: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups for typical interior wall areas indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 3. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
 - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved field sample(s) may become part of the completed Work.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- C. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- Source Limitations for Decoratvie Masonry Units: Obtain exposed decorative masonry units of a uniform texture Β. and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed C. masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS 2.2

- Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days. A.
 - Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL 2.3

- Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Α. Documents.
- Β. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.
- Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated as C. determined by testing according to ASTM E119, by equivalent masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1 Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed by a gualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Documentation of listing and sourcing shall be provided by manufacturer to Owner and Architect.

CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS 24

- Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent Α. units unless otherwise indicated.
 - Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other 1 special conditions.
 - 2. Provide bullnose units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
 - At areas indicated to receive tile as the finish surface use a non-bullnose unit at outside corners. a.
 - 3. Provide double bullnose units for tops of walls as indicated.
- Β. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent for exposed units.
 - Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural 1. bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested according to ASTM E 514/E 514M as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, shall show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen. a.
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - ACM Chemistries: RainBloc. 1)
 - 2) BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheopel Plus.
 - 3) Grace Construction Products, W.R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry Block.

- C. CMU: ASTM C 90.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3750 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Lightweight.
 - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
 - 4. Fire Resistance: Concrete masonry units within fire rated wall construction shall be produced in accordance with ACI 216.1, latest edition.

2.5 MASONRY LINTELS AND BOND BEAMS

- A. U-Shaped Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated (site cast) or built-in-place masonry lintels made from U-shaped lintel bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.
- B. U-Shaped Masonry Bond Beams: Prefabricated (site cast) or built-in-place masonry bond beams made from Ushaped bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout

2.6 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 - 1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
 - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 - 2. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- E. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- F. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
- G. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ACM Chemistries; RainBloc for Mortar
 - b. BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheopel Mortar Admixture.
 - c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. Conn; Dry-Block Mortar Admixture
- H. Water: Potable.

2.7 REINFORCEMENT

1.

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.
- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.

- 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel, Class B-2.
- 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel, Class B-2.
- 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
- 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
- 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.148-inch diameter.
- 6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
- 7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- D. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS

- A. Post-installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
 - 1. Load Capacity: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 2. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F1941 (ASTM F1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F738M) and nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M).

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene or urethane.
 - 1. Basis of Design Product: W.R. Meadows; "Ceramar".
- B. Water Repellent: Breathable and non-staining/non-yellowing type as recommended by manufacturer of exterior decorative concrete masonry units, for application after installation.

2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned. Do not use acidic cleaners on manufactured stone masonry.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
 - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
 - c. ProSoCo, Inc.

2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, waterrepellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
 - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.

- 3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and nonload-bearing walls and parapet walls, use TypeS.
- 4. For interior load-bearing walls, use TypeS
- 5. For interior nonload-bearing partitions, use Type N.
- 6. For other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 3000 psi.
 - 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
 - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
 - 4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build singlewythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
 - 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
 - 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
 - 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
 - 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
 - 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
 - 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.

- 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2inch maximum.
- 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
- C. Joints:
 - 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
 - 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
 - 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
 - 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
 - 5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in bond pattern indicated on Drawings; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
 1. Refer to Exterior Elevations and Exterior Material Finish Legend for bond pattern.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4 inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Fill cores in exterior masonry veneer and hollow CMUs with grout or mortar under through-wall flashing.
 - Fill base of wall between exterior masonry veneer and CMUs (collar joint) with grout as indicated and apply mortar across top if insulation and grout to form a mortar wash directly beneath horizontal leg of throughwall flashing.
- I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
 - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078443 "Joint Firestopping."

- A. Lay hollow brick and CMUs as follows:
 - 1. Fully bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. Fully bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. Fully bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
 - 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- 3.6 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT
 - A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
 - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
 - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
 - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement].
 - B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units or provide rigid anchors.
 - D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units or provide rigid anchors.

3.7 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as follows:
 - 1. At 4-hour fire-rated walls, fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 - At 2-hour fire-rated walls, install sash block on each side of joint, install preformed gasket, rake back mortar to allow for installation of backer rod and sealant, or install square-end block on each side of joint, fill head joint between block with ceramic fiber felt, rake back mortar to allow for installation of backer rod and sealant.
 - 3. At non-fire-rated walls, install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch.
 - 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.8 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.

C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections according to TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5 as follows:
 - 1. Level "B" for all areas except High Wind Areas and Storm Shelters.
 - 2. Level "C" for High Wind Areas and Storm Shelters.
 - 3. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 - 4. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 - 5. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
- F. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For site-mixed mortar, test each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780.
- G. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- H. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.

3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on mockup sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Initially, clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20. Where initial cleaning results are not satisfactory as judged by Architect from testing on mockup, proceed to cleaning with proprietary cleaners.
 - 6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
 - 7. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

3.13 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. General: This project will have fluid-applied Air Barrier material applied to the cavity side of the CMU. Special attention and care must be taken to provide a smooth, filled surface to receive the membrane. The care is necessary to insure the design performance of the selected materials. Concrete masonry unit (CMU) wall shall be prepared as follows to accept the air & vapor barrier:
 - 1. Surfaces shall be free of contaminants such as grease, oil and wax on surfaces to receive membrane.
 - 2. CMU surfaces shall be free from projections.
 - 3. Strike all mortar joints flush to the face of the concrete block.
 - 4. Fill all voids and holes greater than ¼ inch across at any point with mortar, sealant or other approved fill material.
 - 5. Surface irregularities exceeding ¼ inch in height or sharp to touch shall be ground flush or made smooth.
 - 6. Fill around all penetrations with mortar, sealant or other approved fill material and strike flush.
 - 7. Remove mortar droppings on brick ties, shelf angles, brick shelves or other horizontal obstructions.

END OF SECTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Structural steel, including, but not limited to the following:
 - a. W-Shapes
 - b. Angles
 - c. Plate and Bar
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for those allowances affecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for unit prices relating to work of this Section
 - 3. Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
 - 4. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels not attached to structural-steel frame miscellaneous steel fabrications and other steel items not defined as structural steel.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site at biweekly intervals.
 - 1. Before installation of structural steel framing, review procedures and tolerances for ensuring quality of structural steel framing materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with structural steel framing to attend, including but not limited to the following:
 - a. Owner's representative
 - b. Architect and/or Structural Engineer.
 - c. Contractor's superintendent.
 - d. Structural Steel Framing subcontractor.
 - e. Manufacturer's representative for structural steel framing.
 - Review field quality control measures for the following items:
 - a. Field dimensions and tolerances for structural steel framing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

2.

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
 - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 - 2. Include embedment Drawings.

- 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
- 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
- 5. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural design data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Submit for each of the following.
 - 1. Installer.
 - 2. Fabricator.
 - 3. Professional engineer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
 - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 - 2. Direct-tension indicators.
 - 3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 4. Shear stud connectors.
 - 5. Shop primers.
 - 6. Shrinkage-resistant grout.
- F. Survey of existing conditions.
- G. Source quality-control reports.
- H. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (Acceptance Criteria 172).
 - 1. Non-certified fabricators shall submit their qualifications with their bid. Qualifications shall be submitted on AIA Document A305 "Qualifications Statement", include the following for each project listed: references for at least 3 projects, identify engineer-of-record, tonnage of steel fabricated and type of steel fabricated (structural, miscellaneous, etc.).
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE, and as follows:
 - 1. A firm with not less than ten (10) years of experience under the current name.
 - 2. Must have completed five (5) projects within the past 5 years of comparable size and scope.
 - 3. Non-certified erectors shall submit their qualifications with their bid. Qualifications shall be submitted on AIA Document A305 "Qualifications Statement", include the following for each project listed: references for at least 3 projects, identify engineer-of-record, tonnage of steel erected and type of steel erected (structural, miscellaneous,etc.).
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
- D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC 303.
 - 2. AISC 360.

3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with structural steel framing by field measurements before fabrication.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
 - 1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
 - 2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.
 - 2. Use Allowable Stress Design; data are given at service-load level.

2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M.
- B. Channels, Angles, M, S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade C, structural tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or Type S, Grade B.
 - 1. Weight Class: Extra strong.
 - 2. Finish: Black except where indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.
- 2.3 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS
 - A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.

- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type with plain finish.
- C. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.

2.4 RODS

- A. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable.
 - 1. Configuration: Straight.
 - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
 - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 4. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
 - 5. Finish: Plain.

2.5 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, non-asphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer compatible with topcoat.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780/A 780M.

2.6 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and non-staining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.
 - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
 - 3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
 - 4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 2. Thermal cutting is not allowed at the project site.
- C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- E. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning." or SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

- G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 - 2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.8 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.
 - 2. Erection plates shall be removed after welding and prior to finishing.
 - 3. Exposed welded connections lower than 25'-0" above finished floor shall be finished to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Type 1 welds; no evidence of a welded joint.

2.9 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
 - 5. Galvanized surfaces.
 - 6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction (not exposed-to-view in final position).
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
 - 2. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 - 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

2.10 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
 - 1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
 - 2. Galvanize lintels, shelf angles and welded door frames attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform shop tests and inspections.

- 1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Inspect shop-bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Visually inspect shop-welded connections according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
 - 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - 4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect shop-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
 - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 - Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- F. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents
- G. Special Inspections: Owner will retain and pay for the services of a qualified independent inspection agency acceptable to the Architect to conduct special inspections of all structural welding and high-strength bolting in accordance with applicable requirements of Section 1704 of the International Building Code, latest edition, as adopted and amended by authority having jurisdiction. The inspection agency shall inspect the work, prepare and submit periodic reports and final reports to City Code Officials, Architect, and Owner in compliance with building code requirements.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

- 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
- 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
- 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
- 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Structural Engineer of Record. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Structural Thermal Break Material: Install per manufacturer's written recommendations to achieve load performance indicated by Structural Drawings. Installation methods shall be submitted to Structural Engineer for review of compliance with design intent only.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 - 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 - 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," for mill material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
 - Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
 - 3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
 - 2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - a. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:

- 1) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
- 2) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration are not accepted.
- 3) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
- 4) Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- C. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
 - 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 - 2. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.
- B. Touchup Prime Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

END OF SECTION
PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following applications of cold-formed metal framing:
 - 1. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing exceeding height limitations of standard, nonstructural metal framing.
 - 2. Ceiling joist framing.
 - 3. Miscellaneous framing and furring members.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel shapes, masonry shelf angles, and connections used with cold-formed metal framing.
 - 2. Section 092116 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for standard, interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing, with height limitations and ceiling-suspension assemblies.
 - 3. Section 092117 "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies, with height limitations.
- 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
 - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Before installation of cold formed metal framing, review procedures and tolerances for ensuring quality of metal framing materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cold-formed metal framing to attend, including but not limited to the following:
 - a. Owner's representative
 - b. Architect.
 - c. Contractor's superintendent.
 - d. Cold Formed Metal Framing subcontractor.
 - e. Manufacturer's representative for cold-formed metal framing.
 - 2. Review field quality control measures for the following items:
 - a. Field dimensions and tolerances for cold formed metal framing installation.
 - b. Coordination of items where blocking is required
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
 - A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed steel framing product and accessory.
 - B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
 - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
 - 3. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For nonstandard cold-formed steel framing post-installed anchors and power-actuated fasteners, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- D. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Certified Steel Stud Association, the Steel Framing Industry Association or the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association.
- E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code Sheet Steel."
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
 - A. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cold-formed metal framing by one of the following:
 - 1. All Steel and Gypsum Products.
 - 2. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Company.
 - 3. Clark-Dietrich Metal Framing.
 - 4. Custom Stud, Inc.
 - 5. MBA Building Supplies.
 - 6. MarinoWare; a division of Ware Industries.
 - 7. SCAFCO Corporation.
 - 8. Steel Construction Systems.
 - 9. Steel Network, Inc.
 - 10. Steel Structural Systems.
 - 11. United Metal Products, Inc.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Design Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing shall comply with AISI S100, AISI S200, and the following:
 - 1. Floor and Roof Systems: AISI S210.
 - 2. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
 - 3. Headers: AISI S212.
 - 4. Lateral Design: AISI S213.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

- Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled Α. content not less than 25 percent.
- Β. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - Grade: As required by structural performance. 1.
 - 2. Coating: G60.
- Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection and Drift Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade C. and coating as follows:
 - Grade: As required by structural performance. 1.
 - 2. Coating: G60.
- 2.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD BEARING WALL FRAMING
 - Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened Α. flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch, minimum.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches minimum.
 - Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened B flanges, and as follows:
 - Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs. 1.
 - Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches. 2.
 - C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch. 1.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches minimum.
 - Section Properties: As required by structural performance. 3
 - Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass and/or head clips, capable of accommodating upward D. and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web. 1.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - AllSteel & Gypsum Products, Inc. a.
 - b. Clark/Dietrich Building Systems.
 - MarinoWARE. c.
 - SCAFCO Corporation. d.
 - e. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
- 2.5 INTERIOR NON-LOAD BEARING WALL FRAMING
 - Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened Α. flanges, and as follows:
 - Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 1
 - For horizontal framing members: 0.0428 inch a.
 - For vertical framing members (where welding occurs): 0.0966 inch. b.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches minimum.
 - Section Properties: Per SSMA or as required by structural performance. 3
 - Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened В. flanges, and as follows:
 - Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs. 1.
 - Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches. 2.
 - C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard Z-shaped and hat-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Uncoated Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
 - 2. Z-Furring: Manufacturer's standard slotted or non-slotted web, face flange of at least 1-1/4 inches and wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch.
 - 3. Hat Channels: Manufacturer's standard profile.
 - 4. Depth/Height:
 - a. For Z-furring: 3 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. For hat channels: 7/8 inch, unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - 1. Supplementary framing.
 - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
 - 3. Web stiffeners.
 - 4. Anchor clips.
 - 5. End clips.
 - 6. Foundation clips.
 - 7. Gusset plates.
 - 8. Stud kickers and knee braces.
 - 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
 - 10. Hole-reinforcing plates.
 - 11. Backer plates.

2.8 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, threaded carbon-steel headless bolts, with encased end threaded, and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with bolts of same basic metal as fastened metal, if visible, unless otherwise indicated; with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC58 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.
 - 1. Uses: Securing cold-formed steel framing to structure.
 - 2. Type: Torque-controlled adhesive anchor or adhesive anchor.
 - 3. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainlesssteel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosionresistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or ASTM A 780.
- B. Nonmetallic, Non-shrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, non-staining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- C. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, and non-leaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.
- D. Isolation Strip beneath Runner Tracks at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
 - 1. Polyethylene-sheet backed rubberized asphalt membrane, 40 mils thick. Field cut to match widths of runners.
 - 2. Lamatek; 0.25 inch by 5.87 inches SCE-41 plain neoprene sponge rubber. Furnish in not less than 50 foot rolls.

2.10 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.
 - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- B. Install isolation strips beneath runner tracks at exterior walls.

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 INTERIOR NON-LOAD BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Do not fasten studs to outer track of double deflection tracks.
 - 2. Stud Spacing: 16 inches, maximum.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Do not fasten studs to outer track of double deflection tracks.
 - 2. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 - 3. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
 - 4. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing and infill studs and anchor to building structure.
 - 5. Connect drift clips to cold-formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.

- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 - Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Where miscellaneous framing is installed parallel to stud framing in wall, align miscellaneous framing over studs. Securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
 - a. Anchor Spacing: As shown on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Where miscellaneous framing is installed perpendicular to stud framing in wall, secure over studs. Securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacing as follows:
 - a. Anchor Spacing: As shown on Shop Drawings.
 - 3. Set miscellaneous framing plumb, level and true to plane.

3.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.8 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Miscellaneous framing with dimension lumber (061000.A01).
- 2. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers (061000.A13)
- 3. Preservative-treated wood blocking, cants and nailers (061000.A12).
- 4. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood blocking and nailers (061000.A16).
- 5. Wood furring and grounds (061000.A15, 061000.A18).
- 6. Plywood blocking panels (061000.A19).
- 7. Fire retardant treated plywood blocking and backing panels (061000.A20).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for those alternates effecting work of this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 - 1. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 - 2. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 - 3. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 - 4. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
 - 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
 - 5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
 - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
 - 2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
 - 3. Power-driven fasteners.
 - 4. Post-installed anchors.
 - 5. Expansion anchors and metal framing anchors.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Regional Materials: The following wood products shall be manufactured within 100 miles (160 km) of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 100 miles (160 km) of Project site.
 - 1. Dimension lumber, except treated materials.
- B. Certified Wood: The following wood products shall be certified as "FSC Pure" or "FSC Mixed Credit" according to FSC STD-01-001 and FSC STD-40-004.
 - 1. Dimension lumber, except treated materials.
- C. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; no limit for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
 - Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, shall meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, chemical formulations shall not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
 - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.

- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 - 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
 - 4. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this Α. article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or B less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners. 1.
 - Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated 2. lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 - Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested 3. according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 - Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design 4. value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841. For enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.
- Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to C. maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- Ε. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - Framing for raised platforms and stages. 1.
 - Plywood blocking and backing panels. 2.
 - Roof construction. 3

24 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- Miscellaneous Framing (061000.A01): No. 2 grade. Α.
 - Species: 1.
 - Hem-fir (north); NLGA. a.
 - Mixed southern pine; SPIB. b.
 - Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA. C.
 - Refer to Article 2.2 and Article 2.3 for locations of preservative treated wood and fire retardant treated 2. wood.
- 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER
 - Α. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
 - Preservative-treated blocking, grounds and nailers (061000.A12). 1. 2.
 - Blocking, grounds and nailers (061000.A13).
 - Blocking for wall-mounted cabinets and casework shall be 2x6, minimum. a.
 - 3. Curbs and cants (061000.A14).

- 4. Furring (061000.A15).
- 5. Fire-retardant treated wood blocking and nailers (061000.A16).
- 6. Fire-retardant treated wood curbs and cants (061000.A17).
 - a. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
- 7. Fire-retardant treated wood furring: (061000.A18).
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any of the following species:
 - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; SPIB.
 - 2. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 - 3. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - 4. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
- C. Concealed Boards: 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
 - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
 - 2. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 - 3. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
- D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS PLYWOOD PANELS

- A. General: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, CD, non-fire-retardant treated and fire-retardant treated as noted below, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 5/8-inch nominal thickness.
 - 1. Plywood shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. Plywood blocking and backing panels, non-fire-retardant treated (061000.A19).
 - 3. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood blocking and backing panels (061000.A20).
 - a. Note that plywood equipment backing panels are specified in Article below.
 - 4. Preservative Treated Plywood blocking and backing panels, non-fire-retardant treated (061000.A22).

2.7 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels (061000.A20): Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, A-C, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.
 - 1. Plywood shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.8 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
 - 2. Where rough carpentry is preservative treated or fire-retardant-treated wood materials, provide Type 304 stainless steel fasteners or fasteners with corrosion-protective coating have a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC58 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.
 - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Install plywood blocking and backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- D. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- F. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
- G. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- H. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- I. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- K. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.
- L. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
 - 1. Comply with approved fastener patterns where applicable. Before fastening, mark fastener locations, using a template made of sheet metal, plastic, or cardboard.
 - 2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal-size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.
- C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal-size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 062023 - INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior trim with transparent finish (062023.A01).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for custom casework and custom trim/molding.
 - 2. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view.
 - 3. Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing".

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. MDF: Medium density fiberboard.
- B. MDO: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained. Include chemical-treatment manufacturer's written instructions for finishing treated material.
 - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced before shipment to Project site to levels specified.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products with nonfactory-applied finish, with half of exposed surface finished; 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.
 - 2. For foam-plastic moldings, with half of exposed surface finished; 50 sq. in.
 - 3. For each finish system and color of lumber and panel products with factory-applied finish, 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.
 - 4. For each species and cut of trim and molding profile with non-factory-applied finish, with 1/2 of exposed surface finished for each molding profile and one trim profile. Samples shall be at least 8 inches long.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.
 - 1. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored.
 - 2. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified for installation areas.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet-work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 1 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL
 - A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the American Lumber Standard Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC's Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
 - 3. Grading Agencies and Rules:
 - a. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association, "Standard Grading Rules for Northeastern Lumber."
 - b. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association, "Rules for the Measurement and Inspection of Hardwood & Cypress."
 - c. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority, "Standard Grading Rules for Canadian Lumber."
 - d. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau, "Standard Grading Rules for Southern Pine Lumber."
 - e. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau, Standard No. 17, "Grading Rules for West Coast Lumber."
 - f. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association, "Western Lumber Grading Rules."
 - B. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
 - C. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4.
 - D. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin.
 - E. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin.
 - F. Plastic Laminate: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with NEMA LD 3.
 - 1. Refer to Drawings for laminate selections.
 - a. Comparable products from other manufacturers will be considered which match colors and patterns to Architect's satisfaction (submit samples) and which are submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - G. Melamine-Faced Particleboard: Particleboard complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, finished on both faces with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD3, Grade VGL, for test methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.
 - 1. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 INTERIOR TRIM

- A. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish) (062023.A01):
 - 1. Species and Grade: White Oak as indicated on the drawings, NHLA Clear stained to match Architects sample.

- 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 13 percent.
- 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
- 4. Gluing for Width: Use for lumber trim wider than 6 inches.
- 5. Veneered Material: Not allowed.
- 6. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
- 7. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.
- 8. Profiles: Refer to Drawings and Material Finish Legend for configurations and profiles required.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.
- B. Low-Emitting Materials: Adhesives shall comply with testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.
- D. Installation Adhesive for Foam-Plastic Moldings: Product recommended for indicated use by foam-plastic molding manufacturer.
- E. Paneling Adhesive: Comply with paneling manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives.
- F. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: Formulation, complying with ASTM D3498, that is recommended for indicated use by adhesive manufacturer.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members, except those with ends exposed in finished work:
 - 1. Interior standing and running trim, except shoe and crown molds.
 - 2. Wood-board paneling.
- B. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch radius and edges of lumber 1 inch or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch radius.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
- B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials that are unsound; warped; improperly treated or finished; inadequately seasoned; too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements; or with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
- B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
 - 2. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Where face fastening is unavoidable, countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
 - 5. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

3.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install trim with minimum number of joints as is practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available.
 - 1. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary.
 - 2. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim.
 - 3. Cope at returns, miter at outside corners, and cope at inside corners to produce tight-fitting joints with fullsurface contact throughout length of joint.
 - 4. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.
 - 5. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints where necessary for alignment.
 - 6. Match color and grain pattern of trim for transparent finish (stain or clear finish) across joints.
 - 7. Install trim after gypsum-board joint finishing operations are completed.
 - 8. Install without splitting; drill pilot holes before fastening where necessary to prevent splitting.
 - 9. Fasten to prevent movement or warping.
 - 10. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements.
 - 1. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.
- B. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.
- B. Restore damaged or soiled areas and touch up factory-applied finishes if any.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during construction.
- B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.

2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 064023 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Interior plastic laminated clad panels (064023.A08).
 - 2. Custom plastic laminated clad casework (064023.A16).
 - 3. Metal Edge Trim (064023.A24 TR2).
 - 4. Concealed Countertop Bracket (064023.A32).
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
 - 2. Section 123200 "Manufactured Wood Casework" for premanufactured casework.
 - 3. Section 123666 "Solid Surfacing Countertops" for solid surfacing countertops.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
- B. Balanced Construction: Where exposed face of a panel is surfaced with high pressure plastic laminate and the opposite (back) surface shall receive a cabinet liner or backer sheet when that surface is not exposed to view.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including hardware, accessories, and solid-surfacing material.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
 - 1. Show details full size.
 - 2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
 - 3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in architectural woodwork.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product involving selection of colors, profiles, or textures.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each species and cut of lumber and wood trim with non-factory-applied finish, with 1/2 of exposed surface finished, 50 sq. in. for lumber and 10-inch-long for trim.
 - 2. Plastic laminate-faced panel products, 8 by 10 inches for each color of plastic laminate panel. Include two edges with specified edging.
 - 3. Plastic laminates, 8 by 10 inches, for each color, pattern, and surface finish, with one sample applied to core material and specified edge material applied to one edge.
 - 4. Solid-surfacing materials, 6 inches square.
 - 5. Upholstery: Not less than 6-by-8-inch for each type of upholstery selected.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.
 - B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance of not less than seven years under the current company name.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- C. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers and plastic laminate finishes.
- D. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 1. Comply with "Premium" grading requirements, unless specifically specified otherwise.
- E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.
- B. Stack lumber, trim, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect materials from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Do not install interior architectural woodwork materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet, or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.
- C. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Hardware: Manufacturer's standard from in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure of operating hardware.
 - b. Deterioration of finishes.
 - 2. Warranty period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

1

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: Red Oak, plain sliced/plain sawn. Refer to Material Finish Legend and Drawings for addition information and locations.
- C. Wood Products: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
 - Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
 a. Where Fire Retardant MDF or FRT MDF is indicated, MDF must meet class A requirements per ASTM E 84.
 - 3. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
 - 4. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
 - Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made using ultra-low-emitting formaldehyde resins as defined in the California Air Resources Board's "Airborne Toxic Control Measure to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products" or shall be made with no added formaldehyde.
- D. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
 - 1. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Formica" and "Wilsonart" or comparable product submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 2. Colors and Patterns: Refer to Material Finish Legend designations.
- E. Plastic-Laminate-Clad Panels: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard core, ³/₄ inch thick, finished with plastic laminate, grade VGS in color as selected by Architect. Each panel shall be self-edged. Back panel face (non-exposed) to receive grade BKL backing sheet.
 - 1. Markerboard Panels (PL#) shall have markerboard edgebanding to match adjacent laminate in color and ability to erase markers. Basis of Design shall be by Rehau or a comparable manufacturer submitted to and accepted by Architect.
- F. Sealant for Countertops: Manufacturer's standard sealant of characteristics indicated below that complies with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - 1. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealant: Mildew resistant, single component, nonsag, neutral curing, silicone.
 - 2. Color: Clear.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this Article, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified.
 - 1. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
 - 2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
 - 3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Comply with performance requirements of AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood). Use the following treatment type:
 - 1. Interior Type A: Low-hygroscopic formulation.
 - 2. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.

2.3 PLASTIC LAMINATE CLAD PANELS (064023.A08)

- A. General: Plastic-laminate-clad panels shall be fabricated with a particleboard or medium-density fiberboard core, 3/4 inch thick, finished with plastic laminate, grade VGS in color as selected by Architect. Each panel shall be self-edged. Back panel face (non-exposed) shall receive grade BKL backing sheet.
 - 1. Fabricate to sizes and configurations indicated.
 - 2. Finish as indicated on Drawings.
- 2.4 METAL EDGE TRIM (064023.A24)
 - A. Millwork channel "L" angle with return key (064023.A24 **TR2**): Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "MWCL100" by Fry Reglet Corporation or comparable product with the following product characteristics, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding:
 - 1. Material: 6063-T5 Aluminum.
 - 2. Finish: Clear Anodized
 - 3. Projection from Substrate: 1/4 inch.
 - 4. Installed with 1 inch millwork panels at 90 degree outside corners.
 - 5. Provide clips in lengths as required to meet performance requirements.
 - 6. Installation: Mechanically fastened using manufacturer's recommended fasteners.
 - B. Z-cleats for Mechanically Fastened Interior Panels: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product with the following product characteristics, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding:
 - 1. Material: 6063-T6 Aluminum.
 - 2. Depth: 1/4 inch.
 - 3. Length of Cleat: 2 inch minimum to 72 inches maximum.
 - a. Provide cleats in lengths as required to meet performance requirements.
 - 4. Installation: Mechanically fastened using manufacturer's recommended fasteners.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.
- C. Adhesives: Use adhesives that meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

- D. Installation Adhesive: Product recommended by fabricator for each substrate for secure anchorage.
 - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
- B. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - 1. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members 3/4 Inch Thick or Less: 1/16 inch.
 - 2. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch Thick: 1/8 inch.
- C. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
 - 2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.
- D. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine all areas and conditions where solid surfacing fabrications will be installed. Notify Architect of any conditions that would adversely affect the installation. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
 - 1. Commencement of installation is construed as acceptance of the adjacent surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and back priming.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.
- B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.

- E. Preservative-Treated Wood: Where cut or drilled in field, treat cut ends and drilled holes according to AWPA M4.
- F. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.
- G. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- D. Stainless Steel Protection: Provide 6-mil plastic or other suitable water-resistant covering over the countertop surfaces. Tape to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches o.c. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls and floors
 - 1. Penetrations in me-resistance-rated war
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction, at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections, and in smoke barriers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its penetration firestopping products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Penetration firestopping products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - b. Classification markings on penetration firestopping correspond to designations listed by the following:
 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of Β. ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

16 COORDINATION

- Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed Α. according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

MANUFACTURERS 2.1

- Α. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Grace Construction Products. 1.
 - 2. Hilti, Inc.
 - Johns Manville. 3.
 - Specified Technologies Inc. 4
 - 3M Fire Protection Products. 5.
 - 6. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
 - 7. USG Corporation.
- В. Single Source Responsibility: All firestopping insulation, sealants, and related firestopping accessories required to prevent the passage of fire and smoke through fire rated penetrations, smoke rated penetrations and joints shall be furnished and installed by (or installed under direct supervision of) one contractor for the entire project. All products used for this work shall be furnished by one manufacturer for the entire project.

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING (078413.A01)

- Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements A. indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
 - Fire-resistance-rated walls include fire walls fire-barrier walls and fire partitions. 1.
 - 2. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less C. than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- VOC Content: Provide penetration firestopping that complies with the following limits for VOC content when D. calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L. 1.
 - 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L. 3.
- Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials F and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated. 1
 - Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
 - Slag-wool-fiber or rock-wool-fiber insulation. a.
 - Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill b. materials in liquid state.
 - Fillers for sealants. C.

- 2. Substrate primers.
- 3. Collars.
- F. Firestopping compounds shall be paintable or capable of receiving finish materials in areas which are exposed to view and scheduled to receive finishes.

2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- B. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- C. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- D. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- E. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- F. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
 - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and sloped surfaces, unless indicated firestopping limits use of nonsag grade for both opening conditions.

2.4 MIXING

A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
 - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestopping's seal with substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
 - 1. The words "Warning Penetration Firestopping Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 4. Date of installation.
 - 5. Manufacturer's name.
 - 6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Firestopping Manufacturer's representative shall perform and inspections of penetration firestopping. Contractor shall notify Architect and manufacturer's representative no later than seven days after penetration firestopping is complete to schedule inspection.
 - 1. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.
 - 2. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEM SCHEDULE

A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 078446 - FIRE RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions. (078446.A01).
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each fire-resistive joint system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing agency's illustration for a particular fireresistive joint system condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fireresistance-rated assembly.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fire-resistive joint systems.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating fire-resistive joint systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements." Firm shall be experienced in installing fire-resistive joint systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its fire-resistive joint system products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Fire-resistive joint systems shall comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Fire-resistive joint system tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing agency.
 - b. Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by reference to designations listed by the following:
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fire-resistive joint systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure fire-resistive joint systems per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate fire-resistive joint systems.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS (078446.A01)
 - A. Where required, provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which fire-resistive joint systems are installed. Fire-resistive joint systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
 - B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079:
 - 1. Joints include those installed in or between fire-resistance-rated walls floor or floor/ceiling assemblies and roofs or roof/ceiling assemblies.
 - 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of construction they will join.
 - 3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Grace Construction Products.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. Johns Manville.
 - d. Specified Technologies Inc.
 - e. 3M Fire Protection Products.
 - f. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
 - g. USG Corporation.
 - C. Exposed Fire-Resistive Joint Systems: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
 - 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - D. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for systems indicated.
 - E. Firestopping compounds shall be paintable or capable of receiving finish materials in areas which are exposed to view and scheduled to receive finishes.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean joints immediately before installing fire-resistive joint systems to comply with fireresistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of fill materials.
 - 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent fill materials of fire-resistive joint system from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing fire-resistive joint system's seal with substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.
- C. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 - 2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify fire-resistive joint systems with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of joint edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove or penetrate joint system. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
 - 1. The words "Warning Fire-Resistive Joint System Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
 - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
 - 3. Designation of applicable testing agency.
 - 4. Date of installation.
 - 5. Manufacturer's name.

6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Fire-Resistive Joint System manufacturer's representative will perform inspections of completed installation of work of this Section. Contractor shall notify Architect and manufacturer's representative not later than seven days after completion of fire-resistive joint system installation to schedule inspection.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or fire-resistive joint systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace fire-resistive joint systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure fire-resistive joint systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.
- 3.7 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEM SCHEDULE
 - A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHBN or Category XHDG.
 - B. Wall-to-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: WW-S-0000-0999.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 2 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II 25 percent compression or extension.
 - 5. L-Rating at Ambient: As selected by Contractor to suit project conditions.
 - C. Floor-to-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint Systems:
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: FW-S-0000-0999.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 2 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II 25 percent compression, extension, or horizontal shear.
 - 5. L-Rating at Ambient: As selected by Contractor to suit project conditions.
 - D. Head-of-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint Systems (for Fire-Resistive Roof Systems):
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: HW-S-0000-0999.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 2 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II 25 percent compression or extension.
 - 5. L-Rating at Ambient: As selected by Contractor to suit project conditions.
 - E. Head-of-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint Systems (for Non-Fire-Resistive Roof Systems):
 - 1. UL-Classified Systems: CJ-S-0000-0999.
 - 2. Assembly Rating: 2 hours.
 - 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 - 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II 25 percent compression or extension.
 - 5. L-Rating at Ambient: As selected by Contractor to suit project conditions.
 - F. Perimeter Fire-Resistive Joint Systems:
 - UL-Classified Perimeter Fire-Containment Systems: CW-S-0000-0999.

1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.
- Integrity Rating: 2 hours. Insulation Rating: 1 hour. Linear Opening Width: As indicated. Movement Capabilities: Class II 25 percent compression or extension. L-Rating at Ambient Temperature: As selected by Contractor to suit project conditions. 6.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Urethane joint sealants.
 - 3. Latex joint sealants.
 - 4. Polyurea joint sealants.
 - 5. Hybrid silicone sealants.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for sealing penetrations in fire-resistance-rated construction.
- 2. Section 078446 "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for sealing joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
- 3. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
- 4. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for acoustical sealant and sealing acoustical joints.
- 5. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in pavements, walkways, and curbing.

1.2 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

2.

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:
 - a. Each kind of sealant and joint substrate in exterior walls.
 - b. Sealant around perimeter of exterior windows/storefront.
 - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
 - 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
 - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 - 5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
 - 6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.
- D. Product Certificates: For each kind of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- C. Field-Adhesion Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- D. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.
 Refer to Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for sealant joint in masonry mockups.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which joint-sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 - 1. Movement of the structure caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
 - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content: Sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the following:
 - 1. Architectural sealants shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 2. Sealants and sealant primers for nonporous substrates shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 3. Sealants and sealant primers for porous substrates shall have a VOC content of 775 g/L or less.
- C. Liquid-Applied Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied joint sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- D. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be non-staining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- E. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.
- F. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Keynote Designations: Refer to schedule at end of this Section for types and applicable substrates.
 - 1. Sealant: (079200.A01).
 - 2. Sealant with backer rod: (079200.A02).
 - 3. Acoustical sealant: (079200.A04): Refer to Section 092900.
 - 4. Tape Sealant (079200.A05).

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Non-Staining, Non-sag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50 minimum, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 2.
 - b. Sika Products; Sikasil WS-295 FPS.
 - c. Dow; Dowsil 756 SMS Building Sealant.
 - d. Pecora; 890NST.
- B. Single-Component, Non-sag, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use T.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Dow; Dowsil 790 Silicone Building Sealant.
 - b. Sika Products; Sikasil 728 NS.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; 311 NS.
- C. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Non-sag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25 minimum, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 2.
 - b. Sika Products; Sikasil GP.

2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Multicomponent, Non-sag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25 minimum, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Master Seal NP 2.
 - b. Tremco Incorporated; Dymonic 100.
 - c. Sika Products; Sikaflex; 2c NS EZ Mix.
 - d. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
- B. Multicomponent, Non-sag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25 minimum, for Use T.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Master Seal NP 2.
 - b. Tremco Incorporated; Dymonic 100.
 - c. Sika Products; Sikaflex; 2c NS EZ Mix.
 - d. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
- C. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25 minimum, for Use T.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Master Seal SL 2.
 - b. Sika Products; Sikaflex; 2c SL.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II SG.

2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

1.

- A. Latex Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolac.
 - b. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil-A 700.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.
- 2.5 POLYUREA SEALANTS
 - A. Polyurea Sealant: Semi-rigid, self-leveling, 2-part type. Shore D hardness of 85 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2240. Tensile strength of 1160 pounds per square inch when tested in accordance with ASTM D 412.
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Curecrete Distribution Company, Inc.; Ashford Crete-Fill.
 - b. L&M Construction Chemical, Inc. Joint Tite 750.
 - c. Adhesives Technologies Corp.; Crackbond JF311.

2.6 HYBRID SILICONE SEALANTS FOR RESINOUS WALL TREATMENTS

- A. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of products listed below or a comparable product, with the following product characteristics, submitted to and accepted by Architect.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. BASF; MasterSeal NP 100.
 - 2. Product Characteristics:
 - a. Classification: ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use T.
 - b. Movement Capacity: +/- 50 percent.
 - c. Shore A Hardness: 17 to 23 per ASTM C 661.
 - d. Tensile Strength: 160-200 psi per ASTM D 412.
 - e. Tear Strength 22 lbs per inch per ASTM 1004.
 - f. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of custom options.

2.7 JOINT SEALANT BACKING

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material that are non-staining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings (079200.A04): ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape (079200.A05): Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Non-staining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with jointsealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.

- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
 - 4. As sealant work progresses, install tube weeps at 24 inches on center along base of metal wall panels and where indicated.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Non-sag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
 - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform one test for the first 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 - 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.

- 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
- 5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.
- 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE (079200.A01)
 - A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - 2. Urethane Joint Sealant: Multicomponent, pourable/non-sag, traffic grade, Class 25.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
 - B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - b. Joints in formed metal wall panels.
 - c. Joints within and at perimeter of storefront and curtain wall assemblies.
 - d. Control and expansion joints.
 - e. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - f. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
 - g. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
 - 2. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, non-staining, non-sag, neutral curing, Class 50.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
 - C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Other joints as indicated, except for expansion and control joints.
 - 2. Urethane Joint Sealant: Multicomponent, non-sag, traffic grade, Class 25.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
 - D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Expansion joints in tile and resinous flooring.
 - 2. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, non-sag, traffic grade, neutral curing, Class 100/50.
 - 3. Joint Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
 - E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior control/contraction joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.

1. Joint Locations:

2.

- a. Control/contraction joints in concrete slabs indicated to receive sealed finish, polished concrete finish, resinous flooring and joints in slabs on grade extending to building exterior, seal watertight.
- Polyurea Joint Sealant: Polyurea, multi component, self-leveling, traffic grade.
- 3. Joint Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
 - c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior unit masonry and concrete.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Urethane, multicomponent, non-sag, Class 25, paintable.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- G. Joint Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces.
 - 1. Joint Locations:
 - a. Vertical joints in exposed surfaces of gypsum drywall partitions.
 - b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors and windows.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Acrylic based, paintable.
 - 3. Joint Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- H. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
 1. Joint Sealant Location:
 - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Single component, non-sag, mildew resistant, acid curing, Silicone.
 - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- Joint-Sealant Application: Interior control/contraction joints in vertical surfaces (Resinous Wall treatments)
 Joint Locations:
 - JOINT LOCATIONS:
 Control and expansion joint
 - a. Control and expansion joints in CMU, cement board, or gypsum board indicated to receive resinous wall treatment.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: Hybrid Silicone, single component, non-sag, Class 50, traffic grade.
 - 3. Joint Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of custom colors.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes hollow-metal work.
 - 1. Hollow-metal frame (081113.A31).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.
 - 2. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for field painting of hollow-metal work.
 - 3. Division 26 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
 - A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, temperaturerise ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Furnish a schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings.
 - 2. Elevations of each door type.
 - 3. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 5. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 6. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 - 8. Details of accessories.
 - 9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
 - 10. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than 6 by 8 inches.
- D. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow-metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final Door Hardware Schedule.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of hollow-metal door and frame assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal work palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
 - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
 - 2. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- B. Store hollow-metal work vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 - 2. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 - 3. Republic Doors and Frames.
 - 4. Steelcraft; an Allegion company.
 - 5. Elco Manufacturing Inc.
 - 6. HMF Express.
 - 7. Southwestern Hollow Metal.
 - 8. Steward Steel Inc.
 - 9. West Central Manufacturing.
- B. Source Limitations:
 - 1. Obtain hollow-metal work from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 - 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Provide an assembly with gaskets listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
 - 2. For areas required to receive a fire rating greater than 45 minutes, fire testing shall be based on fire resistive criteria according to NFPA 251 or ASTM E119.

2.3 INTERIOR DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct interior doors and frames to comply with the standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2.
 - 1. Physical Performance: Level B according to SDI A250.4.
 - 2. Frames (081113.A31):
 - a. Materials: Uncoated, steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.067 inch (14 gauge).
 - 1) Provide metallic-coated cold rolled steel in areas exposed to moisture and as indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
 - c. Construction: Face welded.
 - d. Reinforcement: Provide high frequency hinge reinforcement at top hinge location.
 - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.4 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 - 1. General: Anchors for severe storm-resistant door and frame assemblies shall be of sufficient length to provide not less than 5 inches of embedment into adjacent wall construction at jamb.
 - 2. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
 - 3. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.
 - 4. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
 - 5. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.
- B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, and as follows:
 1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.

2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- F. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- G. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

- I. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- J. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow-metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for metal thickness. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
 - 1. Sidelite and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
 - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
 - 4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottoms of jambs with at least four spot welds per anchor; however, for slip-on drywall frames, provide anchor clips or countersunk holes at bottoms of jambs.
 - 5. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
 - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 16 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c., to match coursing, and as follows:
 - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
 - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
 - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
 - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus one additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.
 - c. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each frame.
 - d. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches o.c.
 - 6. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- C. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and edge channels from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- D. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
 - 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
 - 2. Comply with applicable requirements in SDI A250.6 and BHMA A156.115 for preparation of hollow-metal work for hardware.
 - 3. Provide high frequency hinge reinforcement on top hinge only (two additional 10 gauge reinforcements are welded at 3 places each) on all door frames.
- E. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites and louvers where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted hairline joints.
 - 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow-metal work.
 - 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 - 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.

- 4. Vision lights shall be "flush" type, without through-bolts, except for vision lights associated with fire-rated security glass as specified in Article 2.8 below.
- 5. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal work.
- 6. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.

2.7 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
 - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- B. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch thick.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
- C. Provide high frequency hinge reinforcement on top hinge only (two additional 10 gauge reinforcements are welded at 3 places each) on all door frames.
- D. Reinforce doors and frames to receive continuous hinges where scheduled.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow-metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Install hollow-metal frames for doors, transoms, sidelites, borrowed lites, and other openings, of size and profile indicated. Comply with SDI A250.11 or NAAMM-HMMA 840 as required by standards specified.
 - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. At fire-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

- c. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
- d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
 - 1) Provide mortar guards for hinge and strike plate cutouts and any electrical components attached to frames.
- e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
- f. Check plumb, square, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
- g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that will be filled with grout containing antifreezing agents.
- 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
- 3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
- 4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
- 5. Concrete Walls: Solidly fill space between frames and concrete with mineral-fiber insulation.
- 6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- 7. In-Place Metal or Wood-Stud Partitions: Secure slip-on drywall frames in place according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 8. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow-metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow-metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- D. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-core doors with factory finished wood-veneer faces (081416.A01 Types A1, B1).
 - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for hollow metal frames.
 - 2. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for hardware in flush wood doors.
 - 3. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
 - 1. Dimensions and locations of blocking.
 - 2. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 - 3. Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
 - 4. Undercuts.
 - 5. Requirements for veneer matching.
 - 6. Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
 - 7. Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For
 - 1. Factory finished doors.

D. Samples for Verification:

- 1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches, for each material and finish.
 - a. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
- 2. Frames for light openings, 6 inches long, for each material, type, and finish required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- B. Certificates: For door manufacturer as set forth in Quality Assurance article.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is a certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.

- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- C. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Do not deliver doors until building interior environmental conditions are maintained to meet Manufacturer's requirements for relative humidity.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
 1. Protect doors in place as necessary to prevent scratches, dents, and other damage.
- C. Mark each door on bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.
- D. Do not place other items on top of stored doors.
- E. Do not drag doors across one another or across other surfaces.
- F. Handle doors using clean gloves.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during remainder of construction period.

1.8 WARRANTY

1.

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
 - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
 - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.
- 2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL
 - A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
 - 1. Provide labels indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
 - 2. Contract Documents contain selections chosen from options in quality standard and additional requirements beyond those of quality standard. Comply with those selections and requirements in addition to quality standard.
 - B. Regional Materials: Wood doors shall be manufactured within 100 miles (160 km) of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 100 miles (160 km) of Project

site.

- C. Certified Wood: Wood doors shall be certified as "FSC Pure" or "FSC Mixed Credit" according to FSC STD-01-001 and FSC STD-40-004.
- D. Adhesives: Use adhesives that meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made using ultra-low-emitting formaldehyde resins as defined in the California Air Resources Board's "Airborne Toxic Control Measure to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products" or shall be made with no added formaldehyde.
- F. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade:
 - 1. Extra Heavy Duty.
- G. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
 - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
 - 3. Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
 - 4. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - 5. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
- H. Smoke-and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control, based on testing according to UL 1784.
- I. Particleboard-Core Doors:
 - Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-2.
 Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particle
 - Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as follows:
 - a. 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
 - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
 - 3. Provide doors with structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.
- J. Heavy Duty Particleboard-Core Doors:
 - PC-5 Bonded 5-ply Wood Based Particleboard Core Doors shall meet the WDMA Extra Heavy Duty Performance Level unless noted otherwise.
 - a. Provide with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde
- K. Mineral-Core Doors:
 - 1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
 - 2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as follows:
 - a. 5-inch top-rail blocking.
 - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
 - c. 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
 - d. 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
 - 3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 - a. Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf per WDMA T.M.-10.

2.3 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Solid-Core Doors (081416.A01 – Type A1, B1):

- 1. Grade: Premium, with Grade A faces.
- 2. Species:
 - a. Match species of existing wood doors at each location as determined by Architect and Owner from manufacturer's full range of options.
- 3. Cut:
 - a. Match cut of existing wood doors at each location as determined by Architect and Owner from manufacturer's full range of options.
- 4. Match between Veneer Leaves:
 - a. Match veneer matching of existing doors at project site.
- 5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
- 6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
- 7. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces edge Type A.
 - a. Stile edges shall be 2-ply, not less than 1-3/8 inch thick. Outer hardwood edge ply shall be 5/8 inch thick. Inner ply shall be structural composite lumber or hardwood. Stile edges shall be continuous and shall not be finger jointed.
- 8. Core: Particleboard or structural composite lumber.
- 9. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.
 - a. MDF cross bands are not acceptable.
- 10. Color:
 - a. Factory Finish to match color of existing wood doors at each location as determined by Architect and Owner from manufacturer's full range of options.
- 11. Doors thickness for the sliding barn doors shall be 1-3/8 inches.

2.4 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

- A. General: Light frames are to match light frames in existing doors for each school. Contractor shall field verify material type and profile for light frames.
- B. Metal Frames for Light Openings: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch-thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish.
 - 1. Colors to be selected by Architect from full range of manufacturer's options.
 - 2. Fire Rated Doors: Products shall be listed and labeled for use in doors with fire protection rating required on doors schedule on Drawings.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
 - 1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
- C. Transom and Side Panels: Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces, and finish as specified for associated doors. Finish bottom edges of transoms and top edges of rabbeted doors same as door stiles.
 - 1. Fabricate door and transom panels with full-width, solid-lumber meeting rails. Provide factory-installed spring bolts for concealed attachment into jambs of metal door frames.
- D. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
 - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
 - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
 - 3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
 - 1. Finish two faces, two vertical edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
 - a. Where top edge is visible from an upper level (occupiable space) top edge shall be finished.
- B. Factory finish doors that are indicated to receive transparent finish.
- C. Transparent Finish:
 - 1. General: Intent is to match Architect's control sample.
 - 2. Grade: Premium.
 - 3. Finish: Provide one of the following finishes:
 - a. AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" System 10, UV curable, water based polyurethane.
 - b. WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
 - 4. Staining: Custom, to match Architect's control sample.
 - 5. Effect: Semifilled finish, produced by applying an additional finish coat to partially fill the wood pores.
 - 6. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
 - 1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
 - 1. Install fire-rated doors according to NFPA 80.
 - 2. Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.
 - 3. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
 - b. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
- C. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings (083113.A01).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for coordinating doors and frames set in masonry.
 - 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for heating and air-conditioning duct access doors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, fire ratings, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Detail fabrication and installation of access doors and frames for each type of substrate.
- C. Product Schedule: Provide complete access door and frame schedule, including types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection and temperature-rise limit ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Babcock-Davis.
 - 2. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Div. of Activar Construction Products Group.
 - 3. Karp Associates, Inc.
 - 4. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
 - 5. Milcor Inc.
 - 6. Nystrom, Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door and frame from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges (083113.A01 Type 1):
 - 1. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide manufacturer's standard-width exposed flange, proportional to door size.
 - 2. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
 - 3. Door Sizes:
 - a. 24" x 24" unless otherwise specified.
 - b. 12" x 12" where indicated for access to water shut-off valves.
 - Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch, 16 gage.
 - a. Finish: Factory prime.

4.

- 5. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Provide in restrooms and other wet areas. Nominal 0.064 inch, 16 gage.
 - a. Finish: Factory prime.
- 6. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
- 7. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
- 8. Hardware: Provide hardware as follows:
 - a. At non-public spaces provide latching hardware.
 - b. At public spaces accessible to students, provide locking hardware.

D. Hardware:

1. Latch: Cam latch operated by screwdriver.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 or A60 metallic coating.
- D. Frame Anchors: Same type as door face.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
 - 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum panels securely attached to perimeter of frames.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling. Provide access sleeves for each latch operator and install in holes cut through finish.
- E. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
 1. For cylinder locks, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Steel and Metallic-Coated-Steel Finishes:

1. Factory Prime: Apply manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that rough openings are correctly sized and located.
- B. Begin installation only after substrates have been properly prepared.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to proceeding with this work.
- B. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by manufacturer for applicable substrates in accordance with project conditions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Position units to provide convenient access to concealed equipment when necessary.
- C. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Non-Thermal Broken Storefront Framing (4.5") (084113.A06).
 - 2. Aluminum Door (Standard) (084113.A11).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for installation of joint sealants installed in storefronts and entrance framing and for sealants not specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for aluminum doors.
 - 3. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass within storefront and entrance systems.
 - 4. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board " for mullion closure at partition gaps.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, installation instructions, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, accessories and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Elevations shall be drawn at $\frac{1}{2}$ inch scale.
 - 2. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 - 3. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Interface with adjoining building construction.
 - d. Expansion provisions.
 - e. Glazing.
 - f. Flashing and drainage.
 - 4. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
 - 5. Shop Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a structural engineer licensed in the state where the project is located.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
 - 1. Architect reserves the right to require additional samples for verification purposes that show fabrication techniques and workmanship.
- E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch lengths of fullsize components and showing details of the following:
 - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - 2. Anchorage.
 - 3. Expansion provisions.
 - 4. Glazing.
 - 5. Flashing and drainage.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

- F. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems.
 - 2. Include design calculations.
 - 3. Indicate design solutions for deflections of overhead structure as indicated on Structural Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and field-testing agency.
- B. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront.
- C. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Preconstruction Test Reports: For sealant.
- E. Quality-Control Program: Developed specifically for Project, including fabrication and installation, according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401. Include periodic quality-control reports.
- F. Source quality-control reports.
- G. Field quality-control reports.
- H. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for aluminum-framed systems, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in systems similar to those indicated for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.
- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
 - 1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Listings and Labels for Fire-Rated Framing: Fire rated framing and glazing shall be under current follow-up services by an approved independent agency and maintain a current listing or certification. Assemblies shall be labeled in accordance with limits of listings.
- F. Source Limitations:
 - 1. For Aluminum-Framed Storefront Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. For Heavy-Duty Door Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

1.6 MOCKUPS

- A. Mockups/Field Samples: Build mockups/field samples, to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Mockups/Field Samples: Furnish and install quantity and size of aluminum windows indicated on Drawings within mockup constructed under Section 042000 "Unit Masonry." Mockup/Field Sample will be used set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - a. Install aluminum window to demonstrate surface preparation and installation of: jamb closure membrane, subsill, window framing, and application of perimeter window sealant and associated flashing.
 - b. Window shall include specified glazing where mockup is erected.
 - c. Maintain a 3/8 to ½ inch wide gap around entire perimeter of window to receive sealant.
 - d. Coordinate installation of window within mockups to permit inspection by Architect. Approved window installation will set quality standard of installation and aesthetic qualities of workmanship for project.
 - 2. Field Samples: Build field sample/mockup of typical wall areas as shown on Drawings.
 - a. Note: Mockup shall be a field sample of storefront, entrance and punched opening areas in Project. Architect and manufacturer's representative will observe installation of first 100 square feet of storefront installation and 100 square feet of entrance framing installation.
 - 3. Field testing shall be performed on field sample areas according to requirements in "Field Quality Control" Article.
 - 4. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 5. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups/field sample areas may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver aluminum framing components in manufacturer's original protective packaging.
- B. Store aluminum components in a clean dry location away from uncured masonry and concrete. Cover components with waterproof paper, tarpaulin or polyethylene sheeting in a manner to permit circulation of air.
 1. Stack framing components in a manner that will prevent bending and avoid damage.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Check openings by accurate field measurements before fabrication. Show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay in the work.
- B. Commencement of aluminum entrance and storefront work will be construed as Installer's acceptance of substrate surfaces and rough openings indicated to receive work of this Section.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Warranty period for heavy-duty doors and associated frames shall be ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

- Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that Β. shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period. 1
 - Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244. a.
 - Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214. h
 - Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal. C.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- Α. Delegated Design: Engage a gualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-В. framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure including. 1. but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - Failure also includes the following: 2.
 - Thermal stresses transferring to building structure. a.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - Failure of operating units. e.
- Structural Loads: C.
 - Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings. 1
- D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
 - Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1. 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
 - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch.
 - Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16-inch clearance between framing members and operable а. units.
 - Refer to Structural Drawings for additional information regard structure and deflection criteria. b.
 - Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, as follows: 3.
 - Perpendicular to Plane of Wall: No greater than 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater a. than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches or 1/175 times span, for spans less than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches.
- Ε. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
 - When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection 1. exceeding specified limits.
 - When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including 2. anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- Heavy Duty Aluminum Storefront Doors and Frames: F.
 - Swing Door Cycle Test: Test doors and frames according to ANSI A250.4 as follows: 1 Minimum 16,000,000 cycles. a.
 - 2. Cycle Slam Test Method: Test according to NWWDA T.M. 7-90 as follows:
 - Minimum 1,000,000 cycles. а
- Seismic Performance: Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand the effects of earthquake G. motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

Liberty Public Schools	
Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations	
Project No. 23027, 23028	

- 1. Seismic Drift Causing Glass Fallout: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.6 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.
- Vertical Interstory Movement: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when 2. tested according to AAMA 501.7 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS AND PRODUCTS

- Basis-of-Design Criteria: Drawings indicate sizes, profiles, and dimensional requirements for storefront, entrance A. and window framing systems required, that are based on specific types, models and performance criteria indicated. Systems from other manufacturers may be considered, provided deviations in dimensions, profiles and performance are minor and do not change the design concept as judged by the Architect. Burden of proof is on the proposer.
- Basis-of-Design Products for Storefront Framing Systems: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or В. one of the systems listed below or comparable product submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding. 1
 - Non-thermal Storefront and Entrance Framing (084113.A06 Center Plane Glazed):
 - Basis-of-Design: Kawneer North America; Trifab VG 451. a.
 - EFCO Corporation: Series 402 NT. b.
 - c. Manko Windows and Doors: 450 Series.
 - Tubelite; 14000 Series (non-thermal). d.
 - 2. Interior standard-duty manual-swing doors (084113.A11 - E10):
 - Basis-of-Design: Kawneer North America; Series 500 Wide Stile. a.
 - EFCO Corporation: D-500. 1)
 - Manko Windows and Doors; 150 Series. 2)
 - 3) Tubelite; Comparable product.
- Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing C. and accessories, from single manufacturer.

2.3 FRAMING

3.

- Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and Α. reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 - Construction: 1.
 - Non-Thermal а.
 - 2. Glazing System:
 - Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides. a.
 - Glazing Plane:
 - Interior Locations: a.
 - Center plane glazed. 1)
 - Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system. 4.
- Β. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.
- Pressure Caps: Manufacturer's standard snap-on aluminum caps that mechanically retain glazing. C.
 - Provide extended caps where indicated. 1.
 - At 90 degree outside corners, provide pre-manufactured mullion cap/trim as single unit to cover both sides 2. where shown.
- Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous D. shims for aligning system components.
- E. Materials:
 - Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated. 1
 - Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209. a.
 - Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221. b.
 - Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M. C.
 - Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M. d.
 - 2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

- a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
- c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 2. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners except for application of hardware. For application of exposed hardware, use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads or flat-head machine screws, fabricated from 300 series stainless steel.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- F. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using shear-block system, or screw-spline system, or head-and-sill-receptor system with shear blocks at intermediate horizontal members.

G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Structural Sealant: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C 1401 recommendations including, but not limited to, assembly material qualification procedures, sealant testing, and assembly fabrication reviews and checks.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure non-movement joints.
 - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 - 6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
 - 7. Completely fill gaps between shims and adjacent construction with loose fiberglass insulation or spray foam insulation.
- B. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
 - 2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Prior to installation of perimeter vertical members, install jamb closure membrane at cavity walls to cover gap/joint between interior and exterior substrates. Intent is to seal air cavity and joints between substrates. Extend membrane from interior face of framing/blocking to exterior. Trim membrane so that it will not be exposed to view after vertical members are set, and edge of membrane is terminated in sealant installed around perimeter of aluminum framing.

- 1. Seal tops of end dams at jambs to adjacent construction or extend jamb closure membrane over end dam to direct water into subsill in order to drain to exterior.
- F. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.
- G. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 3. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
 - 4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
 - 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Perform tests in each test area as directed by Architect.
 - 1) For punched openings, test 25 percent of installation, in each type of exterior finish substrate, unless noted otherwise.
 - 2) For storefront, and clerestories; test each installation, unless noted otherwise.
- C. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 085613 - TRANSACTION WINDOWS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sliding transaction windows (085613.A02).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for transaction window lock coordination.
 - 2. Section 088000 "Glazing" for laminated glass requirements for sliding window.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for windows. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in adjacent construction. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for window units.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Full-size section details of framing members, including internal armoring, reinforcement, and stiffeners.
 - 3. Details of shelf.
 - 4. Hardware for sliding window units.
 - 5. Glazing details.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Framing: 12-inch-long sections of frame members.
 - 2. Glazing: 6-inch square sample.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Examination reports documenting inspections of substrates, areas, and conditions.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Pack windows in wood crates for shipment. Crate glazing separate from frames unless factory glazed.
- B. Label window packaging with drawing designation.
- C. Store crated security windows on raised blocks to prevent moisture damage.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including deflections exceeding 1/4 inch.
 - b. Failure of welds.
 - c. Excessive air leakage.
 - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SLIDING TRANSACTION WINDOWS - <u>A. DONIPHAN ELEMENTARY</u> (085613.A02)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Fyre-Tec; "900 Horizontal Slider".
 - 1. Comparable products from other manufacturers meeting specified requirements will be considered, when submitted to Architect prior to bidding. Comparable products acceptable to Architect will be set forth by Addendum. Refer to Sections 012500 and 016000 for requirements on submitting comparable products.
 - 2. Fire-rated windows shall conform to UL-9 and shall be labeled with a 3/4 hour fire-test rating as specified in the window schedule. Units shall be designed and fabricated to meet glass sizes, window sizes, and opening dimensions established by NFPA 80. Hardware shall conform to NFPA 80 requirements. All operable fire-rated windows are to be self-closing and latching by means of a heat activated fusible link operator.

B. Product Characteristics and Features:

- Configuration: One fixed-glazed panel with one movable sliding glazed panel.
 - a. Unit size: 48 inches wide by 54 inches high.
 - b. Operation Type: Manual.
 - c. Opening Direction: As follows, as seen from outside view.
 - 1) Right to Left opening.
 - d. Glass frame: Steel Frame
 - e. Color: To match color of existing adjacent painted frames, as determined by Architect and Owner.
 - f. Glazing:
 - 1) 1-hour rated glazing as specified in Section 088000.

2.2 MATERIALS

1

- A. Steel Frames and Inserts
 - 1. Steel frames and inserts shall be fabricated from roll-formed galvanized lock-forming quality steel per ASTM A 653.
 - 2. Frame and insert corners shall mitered and welded. Integral muntins where required shall be galvanized roll-formed material fitted and welded.
3. Operable insert/sash shall be supported on two field adjustable roller trucks consisting of corrosion resisting steel with integral ball bearing rollers. Rollers are to supported and operate on a stainless steel track

B. Installation Kits

- 1. Provide subframe installation kits for all windows
- C. Formed Component Parts
 - 1. Formed component parts shall be hot-rolled sheet steel conforming to ASTM A 569, commercial quality with a minimum of 0.15 percent carbon.
 - 2. Sheet steel shall be zinc coated (galvanized) by the hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A 653 or ASTM A 924.
- D. Screws and Bolts
 - 1. Screws and bolts shall conform to ASTM B 766, ASME B18.6.3 and ASME B18.6.4.

E. Fasteners

1. Fastening devices shall be window manufacturer's design made from cadmium-plated steel, zinc-plated steel, nickel/chrome-plated steel or magnetic stainless steel.

F. Window Anchors

- 1. Anchors for installing windows shall be stainless steel or hot-dip zinc coated steel conforming to ASTM A 123.
- G. Glass and Glazing
 - 1. As specified in Section 088000.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate windows to provide a complete system for assembly of components and anchorage of window units.
 - 1. Provide units that are preglazed at the factory.
 - 2. Provide units that are reglazable from the secure side without dismantling the non-secure side of framing.
 - 3. Prepare teller windows for field glazing.
- B. Framing: Miter or cope corners the full depth of framing; weld and dress smooth.
- C. Glazing Stops: Finish glazing stops to match teller window framing.
 - 1. Non-Secure-Side (Exterior) Glazing Stops: Welded or integral to framing.
 - 2. Secure-Side (Interior) Glazing Stops: Removable, coordinated with glazing indicated.
- D. Welding: Weld components to comply with referenced AWS standard. To greatest extent possible, weld before finishing and in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- E. Metal Protection: Separate dissimilar metals to protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
- F. Weather Stripping: Factory applied.

2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 STEEL WINDOW FINISHES

- A. Prime Coat Intended to be field painted with a Finish Coat.
 - 1. teel windows, fins, mullions, cover plates and associated parts shall be cleaned, pre treated with iron phosphate and factory painted manufacturer's standard primer powder coat and cured in a dry film thickness of not less than 0.025 mm (1.0 mil)
- B. Finish Coat Specified Color Match
 - 1. Steel windows, fins, mullions, cover plates and associated parts shall be cleaned, pre treated with iron phosphate and factory coated with baked alkyd enamel or powder coat and cured in a dry film thickness of not less than 0.050 mm (2.0 mil)

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Concealed Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to four times the load imposed, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified testing agency; of type indicated below.
 - Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel or ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as required; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329/F 2329M.
- C. Embedded Plate Anchors: Fabricated from mild steel shapes and plates, minimum 3/16 inch thick; with minimum 1/2-inch-diameter, headed studs welded to back of plate.
- D. Glazing Strips and Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
 - Compression Type: Molded EPDM or neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM D 2000, Designations 2BC415 to 3BC620; molded PVC gaskets complying with ASTM D 2287; or molded, expanded EPDM or neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Grade 4.
 - 2. Sliding Type: AAMA 701/702, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric backing.
- E. Miscellaneous Glazing Materials: Provide material, size, and shape complying with requirements of glass manufacturers and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
 - 1. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Type recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
 - 2. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
 - 3. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
 - 4. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Anchors, Clips, and Window Accessories: Stainless steel; hot-dip, zinc-coated steel or iron, complying with ASTM B 633; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressures indicated.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of security windows.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of security window connections before security window installation.
- C. Inspect built-in and cast-in anchor installations, before installing security windows, to verify that anchor installations comply with requirements. Prepare inspection reports.
 - 1. Remove and replace anchors where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements. Reinspect after repairs or replacements are made.

- 2. Perform additional inspections to determine compliance of replaced or additional work. Prepare anchor inspection reports.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordination: Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other security window anchors whose installation is specified in other Sections.
 - 1. Furnish cast-in-place anchors and similar devices to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordinating other work.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Steel windows shall be installed in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's approved recommendations.
- B. Fire-rated windows shall be installed in compliance with NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.
- C. Steel surfaces in close proximity with masonry, concrete, wood, and dissimilar metals other than stainless steel, zinc, cadmium, or small areas of white bronze shall be protected from direct contact.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing security windows to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for inserts, security fasteners, and other connectors.
- E. Glazed Framing: Provide sealant-glazed framing. Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 " Glazing."
- F. Removable Glazing Stops and Trim: Fasten components with security fasteners.
- G. Fasteners: Install security windows using fasteners recommended by manufacturer with head style appropriate for installation requirements, strength, and finish of adjacent materials. Provide stainless-steel fasteners in stainless-steel materials.
- H. Sealants: Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for installing sealants, fillers, and gaskets.
 - 1. Set continuous sill members and flashing in a full sealant bed to provide weathertight construction unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Seal frame perimeter with sealant to provide weathertight construction unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended in writing by manufacturer for this purpose. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect installed products to verify compliance with requirements. Prepare inspection reports and indicate compliance with and deviations from the Contract Documents.
- B. Perform additional inspections to determine compliance of replaced or additional work. Prepare inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust horizontal-sliding, teller (transaction) windows to provide a tight fit at contact points for smooth operation and a secure enclosure.

B. Remove and replace defective work, including teller windows that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean surfaces promptly after installation of windows. Take care to avoid damaging the finish. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances.
- B. As applicable, clean glass of preglazed security windows promptly after installation. Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" for cleaning and maintenance.
- C. Provide temporary protection to ensure that windows are without damage at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 085613

SECTION 087100 – DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Intent: The intent of this Section is to provide finish hardware for the proper operation and control of all wood, hollow metal and aluminum doors in the Project. Prior to bidding, notify the Architect of any doors that do not have hardware meeting this intention.
- B. This Section includes items known commercially as finish or door hardware that are required for swinging doors, except special types of unique hardware specified in the same sections as the doors and door frames on which they are installed. This Section includes, but is not necessarily limited to furnishing and installing complete, the following:
 - Finish hardware for proper operation and control of all wood, aluminum and hollow metal doors, including hinges, locks and latch sets, closers, panic devices, auto-flushbolts, electric strikes, magnetic holders, removable mullions, cylinders, keys, miscellaneous stops, flat goods, weatherstripping and thresholds as required.
 - 2. Cylinder for access doors where specified.
- C. Related work in other sections:
 - 1. Hollow metal doors, frames and silencers: Section 081113.
 - 2. Wood doors: Section 081416.
 - 3. Aluminum doors: Section 084113.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. "Finish Hardware" includes items known commercially as finish hardware which are required for swing, and folding doors, except special types of unique and non-matching hardware specified in the same section as the door and door frame.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturers technical product data for each hardware item. Include information necessary to show compliance with requirements and include instructions for installation and for maintenance of operating parts and finishes.
 - 1. Manufacturer shall submit written certification confirming closers compliance with U.L. 10C.
- B. Hardware Schedule: Submit a hardware schedule in a vertical format (horizontal format not acceptable), organized into sets, including the information below. Designations for door numbers and hardware sets in the schedule shall match those used in the Construction Documents for each opening.
 - 1. Hardware Schedule shall be coordinated with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand function, and finish of door hardware.
 - 2. Catalog cuts of each type of exposed hardware unit, highlighted in color to indicate compliance with the Hardware Schedule.
 - 3. Type, style, function, size and finish of each hardware item.
 - 4. Name and manufacturer of each item.
 - 5. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - 6. Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, codes, etc., contained in schedule.
 - 7. Mounting locations for hardware.
 - 8. Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - 9. Deviations from Specifications shall be noted in cover letter.
- C. Submittal Sequence: Submit schedule at earliest possible date particularly where acceptance of hardware schedule must precede fabrication of other work (e.g., hollow metal frames) which is critical in the project construction schedule. Include with schedule the product data, samples, shop drawings of other work affected by finish hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of hardware schedule.
- D. Keying Schedule: Submit separate detailed schedule, at the same time as the Hardware Schedule, indicating keying for all locks and how Owner's instructions, on keying of locks has been fulfilled. Keying schedule must be approved before ordering any locks.

- E. Pinning Transcript: Submit detailed schedule indicating each lock cylinder and core.
- F. Templates: Furnish hardware templates to each fabricator of doors, frames and other work to be factoryprepared for the installation of hardware. Upon request, check shop drawings of such other work, to confirm that adequate provisions are made for proper location and installation of hardware.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Obtain each type of hardware (latch and lock sets, hinges, closers, etc.) from a single manufacturer, although several may be indicated as offering products complying with requirements.
- B. Product/Material Qualifications: Manufacturer's product numbers are indicated for convenience in identifying finish hardware items. Unless otherwise indicated, manufacturer's description for indicated product number constitutes minimum standards of quality, design, function and performance required for each item to be incorporated into the Project.
 - 1. It will be the responsibility of the Bidder to furnish with his Bid a list clarifying any deviations from these specifications written or implied, in order that a fair and proper evaluation be made. Those Bidders not submitting a list of deviations will be presumed to have Bid as specified.
- C. Supplier Qualifications: A recognized Architectural Finish Hardware Supplier, with warehousing facilities, who has been furnishing hardware in the project's vicinity for a period of not less than 2 years. Supplier shall be or employ an experienced Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) who is certified by and member of the Door and Hardware Institute. The Architectural Hardware Consultant shall be available, at reasonable times during the course of the work, for consultation about project's hardware requirements, to Owner, Architect and Contractor.
 - 1. Supplier shall meet with the Owner to finalize keying requirements and obtain final instructions in writing.
- D. Fire-Rated Openings: Provide hardware for fire-rated openings in compliance with NFPA Pamphlets No. 80, No. 101 and of authorities having jurisdiction requirements. Provide only hardware which has been tested and listed by UL, FM or Warnock Hersey for types and sizes of doors required and complies with requirements of door and door frame labels.
 - 1. Where emergency exit devices are required on fire-rated doors, (with supplementary marking on doors' UL or FM labels indicating "Fire Door to be Equipped with Fire Exit Hardware") provide UL or FM label on exit devices indicating "Fire Exit Hardware".
- E. Standards: Comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the following standards, unless indicated otherwise:
 - 1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Publications:
 - 1. A115 Series Door and Frame Preparation.
 - 2. A156 Series Hardware.
 - 2. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA) Publications:
 - 1. 1201 Auxiliary Hardware.
 - 2. 1301 Materials and Finishes.
 - 3. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI) Publications:
 - 1. Keying Procedures, Systems, and Nomenclature.
 - 2. Abbreviations and Symbols.
 - 3. Hardware for Labeled Fire Doors.
 - 4. Recommended Locations for Builder's Hardware for Standard and Custom Steel Doors and Frames.
 - 5. Wood Door Standards W1, W2, WDHS-2, WDHS-3.
 - 4. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Publications:
 - 1. NFPA Pamphlet No. 80 Standards for Fire Doors and Windows.
 - 5. International Building Code current edition adopted.
 - 6. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).
- F. Keying Conference: Conduct conference in accordance with Section 013100. In addition to Owner, Construction Manager, and Architect, conference participants shall also include Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
 - 2. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - 3. Requirements for key control system.

- 4. Address for delivery of keys.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Section013100 as follows:
 - 1. Architectural Finish Hardware supplier (AFHS) shall conduct the preinstallation conference at the site. The AFHS shall instruct finish hardware installer on proper installation, adjustment and troubleshooting for each operable item of finish hardware specified. The AFHS shall observe the installation and adjustment of the first three locksets, closers and exit devices.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Package each hardware item in separate containers with all screws, wrenches, installation instructions and installation templates. Mark or tag each box with hardware heading and door number according to approved hardware schedule.
- B. Packaging of door hardware is responsibility of supplier. As material is received by hardware supplier from various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers clearly marked with appropriate hardware set number to match set numbers of approved hardware schedule. Two or more identical sets may be packed in same container.
- C. Deliver individually packaged hardware items at the proper times to the proper locations (shop or project site) for installation. Provide a complete packing list showing items, door numbers and hardware headings with each shipment.
- D. Store hardware in shipping cartons above ground and under cover to prevent damage.
 - 1. Provide secure lockup for door hardware delivered to the Project, but not yet installed. Control handling and installation of hardware items that are not immediately replaceable so that completion of the Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.
- E. Aluminum Door Hardware: If required by door manufacturer deliver hardware for aluminum doors as directed by the door supplier for factory installation.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing door hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies, fire alarm system and detection devices, access control system, security system, and building control system, as applicable.

1.7 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HARDWARE - GENERAL

- A. Provide the materials or products indicated by trade names, manufacturer's name, or catalog number.
- B. Provide manufacturer's standard products meeting the design intent of this Specifications, free of imperfections affecting appearance or serviceability.
 - Base Metals: Produce hardware units of basic metal and forming method indicated using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness, but in no case of lesser (commercially recognized) quality than specified for applicable hardware units for finish designations indicated.

- 2. Provide hardware complete with all fasteners, anchors, instructions, layout templates, and any specialized tools as required for satisfactory installation and adjustment.
- 3. Hand of door: Drawings show direction of slide, swing or hand of each door leaf. Furnish each item of hardware for proper installation and operation of door movement as shown.
- 4. Furnish screws for installation, with each hardware item. Provide Phillips flat-head screws except as otherwise indicated or approved. Finish screws exposed under any condition to match hardware finish or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of such other work as closely as
- 5. Finish all other hardware in accordance with the BHMA finish as follows, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturers screws to secure hardware.
- 6. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units which are exposed when door is closed, except to extent no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thrubolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work, except where indicated otherwise or where it is not feasible to adequately reinforce the work. In such cases, provide sleeves for each thrubolt or use sex bolt fasteners.
- 7. Provide factory pinned cylinders and cores.
- C. Hardware is specified in the hardware schedule by set, type, and functions which have been selected as best meeting the application requirements. Acceptable products for each category are specified under PART 2 of this Specification.

2.2 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Hinges:
 - 1. Provide non-removable pins for all exterior doors and out-swinging corridor doors. Use nonrising pins for all other doors.
 - 2. Pre-drill pilot holes for hinge fasteners at factory to suit hinge type.
 - 3. Provide continuous hinges where specified.
- B. Locksets:
 - 1. Locksets shall meet or exceed ANSI A156.13-94, Grade 1 requirements.
- C. Panic Devices:
 - 1. All panic devices shall have touchbars made of stainless steel, provide devices in stainless finish where specified.
 - 2. All latchbolts are to be deadlatching.
 - 3. Panic devices shall be through-bolted, using sex bolt fasteners.
 - 4. Exit devices are to incorporate a flush and tapered end cap.
 - 5. Hardware mullions are to be of the same manufacturer as the panic device. Provide keyed mullions unless otherwise specified. Provide mullion storage kits where specified.
 - 6. Except on fire-rated doors, or unless specified otherwise, provide panic devices with hex key dogging device to hold latch bolt open on doors with closers.
 - 7. Devices incorporating plastic dogging components will not be allowed.
 - 8. Provide electrical options as specified.
- D. Closers:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for unit size based on door size, weather exposure and usage.
 - 2. Through-bolt all closer units, using sex bolt fasteners.
 - 3. Provide parallel arms for all overhead closers, except as otherwise indicated.
 - 4. All surface closers shall exceed ANSI A156.4 Grade 1 requirements in all aspects as called for below. All closers shall have certification by an independent testing laboratory of 10,000,000 cycles without failure. Provide special rust inhibitive primer (SRI) where specified.
 - 5. Furnish all brackets, drop plates and any other necessary hardware required to insure proper installation.
- E. Stops
 - 1. Provide heavy duty and concealed or surface mounted overhead stop or holder for interior doors as specified. Provide overhead stop for interior doors that swing more than opens against equipment, casework, sidelights, and where conditions do not allow wall stop.
- F. Thresholds and Gasketing
 - 1. Provide thresholds, weatherstripping (including door sweeps, seals, astragals) and gasketing systems (including smoke, sound, and light) as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.

- 2. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.
- 3. Gasketing and astragals on aluminum frames by door manufacturer.

G. Silencers

- Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal or wood frames. 1
- 2. Provide one silencer per 30 inches of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
- 3. Omit where aasketing is specified.

2.3 **KEYING**

- Α. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 cylinders; face finished to match lockset.
- Β. Key all locks separately, or alike, as directed by the Owner's representative and Architect. Provide keys as follows:
 - 1. Change Keys: Two (2) per lock.
 - 2. Master Keys: Six (6) required (per system).
- C. Existing Key System: Key cylinders to Owners existing master key system.
- D. All exterior doors to be keyed to Schlage Primus, interior doors to match existing keyway.
- Ε. Provide Schlage cylinders with large format interchangeable construction cores on all exterior openings.

2.4 **KEY CONTROL SYSTEM**

- Α. Fire Department Access Boxes:
 - Provide key lock boxes designed for storage of 2-5 keys. Manufactured by Knox Company or 1. equal
 - 2. Provide one lock box at exterior and provide one near elevators, if applicable.
 - 3. Locate in accordance with architectural detail. Where not specifically indicated, locate as directed by Architect.
 - 4. Provide surface mounted or recessed based on direction from Architect.

2.5 HARDWARE FINISHES

- Α. Provide matching finishes for hardware units at each door to the greatest extent possible, unless otherwise indicated. In general, match items to the finish for the latch, lock or push-pull unit for color and texture. 1.
 - Product description or schedule:
 - 626 satin chrome-plated. 1)
 - 2) 630 satin stainless steel.

2.6 HARDWARE PRODUCTS

- Α. Hinges:
 - Specified manufacturer: IVES Hardware; an Allegion Company. 1. 2.
 - Acceptable substitutions:
 - 1. Hager Companies.
 - 2. McKinney Products Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - 3. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works.

Β. Continuous Gear-Type Hinges:

- Specified manufacturer: IVES Hardware; an Allegion Company. 1.
 - Acceptable substitutions:
 - Hager Companies. 1.
 - 2. McKinney Products Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
 - 3. Select Products Limited.
- C. Locksets:

2.

- 1. Specified manufacturer: Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Allegion Company.
- 2. Substitutions: Not allowed. Products to match District standard.
- D. Exit Devices:
 - 1. Specified manufacturer: Von Duprin; an Allegion Company

- 2. Substitutions: Not allowed. Products to match District standard.
- E. Closers:
 - 1. Specified manufacturer: LCN Closers; an Allegion Company.
 - 2. Substitutions: Not allowed. Products to match District standard.
- F. Flatgoods:
 - 1. Specified manufacturer: Ives Hardware; an Allegion Company.
 - 2. Acceptable substitutions:
 - 1. Burns.
 - 2. Rockwood.
- G. Stops:
 - 1. Specified manufacturer: Ives Hardware; an Allegion Company.
 - 2. Acceptable substitutions:
 - 1. Burns Manufacturing Incorporated.
 - 2. Hager Companies.
 - 3. Rockwood Manufacturing Company.
 - 4. Trimco
- H. Overhead stops:
 - 1. Specified manufacturer: Glynn-Johnson; an Allegion Company.
 - 2. Acceptable substitutions:
 - 1. Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc.
 - 2. Door Controls International.
 - 3. Ives Hardware; an Allegion Company.
 - 4. Rixson Specialty Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group.
- I. Thresholds:
 - 1. Specified manufacturer: Zero International
 - 2. Acceptable substitutions:
 - 1. Pemko Manufacturing Co.
 - 2. Reese Enterprises.
 - 3. National Guard Products.
- J. Door Gasketing/Weatherstripping:
 - 1. Specified manufacturer: Zero International
 - 2. Acceptable substitutions:
 - 1. Pemko Manufacturing Co.
 - 2. Reese Enterprises.
 - 3. National Guard Products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Carefully inspect doors, frames, and conditions under which hardware will be installed. Notify the Architect of any conditions that would adversely affect the installation or subsequent door operations. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
 - 1. Frames shall be verified, inspected, and confirmed by General Contractor as being plumb and true.
- B. Refer to Sections 081113, 081416, and 084113 for additional installation requirements.
- C. Prior to hardware installation, the Hardware Supplier shall meet with the Owner's Representative, Architect, and Hardware Installer to ensure the Installer has and understands the manufacturers' installation requirements for all hardware items.
 - 1. The Supplier shall observe the installation of the first lockset, closer and panic device.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Mount Hardware units at heights indicated in respective DHI Standards, except as specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations, and except as may be otherwise directed by Architect.

- B. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and written recommendations. Wherever cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces which are later to be field finished, coordinate removal, storage and reinstallation or application of surface protections with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrate.
- C. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
 - Special care shall be taken to avoid damaging surrounding surfaces.
- D. Provide fasteners and anchoring devices of suitable size, quantity, and type to secure hardware in proper position for heavy use and long life.
 - 1. Drill and countersink units which are not factory-prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.
- E. Adjust door closers immediately upon installation. Adjust in exact conformance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Advance backcheck to eliminate shock at dead stop. Set latching speed to assure unassisted positive latching.
 - 1. Degrees of swing of doors for self-limiting closers shall be maximum available.
- F. Install each protection plate with a thinly-spread spot of mastic at its center to assure even contact before fastening with screws. Install all such plates on visual centers of closed doors. Set bottom edges of all such plates flush with door bottom.
- G. Cut and fit thresholds to door frame profiles. Prepare thresholds for the attachment of strikes and clearance for spindles as required. Set thresholds in a continuously laid bed of polyisobutylene mastic sealant to completely fill voids and exclude moisture from every source.
- H. Seal weather protection components attached to the exterior sides of doors and frames, such as drip caps and weatherstripping, in place with clear silicone caulk in such a manner as to ensure a continuously filled seam throughout the joinery.
- I. Cut and fit weatherstripping accurately to provide the greatest possible continuity of the contact element. Adjust closer templating as required.
- J. At exterior doors, obtain satisfactory operation of the installation, then apply a thin layer of clear silicone caulk under hinge leaves, and outside lock trim. Remove excess caulk after torqueing fasteners.

3.3 ADJUST AND CLEAN

- A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door, to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units which cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly as intended for the application made.
 - 1. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation.
- B. Final Adjustment: Wherever hardware installation is made more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the work during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy, and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.

3.4 INSTRUCTION AND INSPECTION

- A. Instruct Owner's Personnel in proper adjustment and maintenance of hardware and hardware finishes, during the final adjustment of hardware.
- B. After hardware is installed and adjusted, the Supplier shall inspect the job with the Architect and the Contractor to determine if the hardware is functioning properly.
 - 1. Maintain the instruction sheets, layout templates, and any supplementary literature regarding hardware in a readable condition. Transmit all such items to the Owner's Representative, together with all spare parts, specialized tools, other accessories supplied with the hardware, and a copy of the approved hardware schedule at the time of instruction.
- C. Continued Maintenance Service: Approximately six months after the acceptance of hardware in each area, the Installer, accompanied by the representative of the latch and lock manufacturer, shall return to the project and re-adjust every item of hardware to restore proper function of doors and hardware. Consult

with and instruct Owner's personnel in recommended additions to the maintenance procedures. Replace hardware items which have deteriorated or failed due to faulty design, materials or installation of hardware units at no cost to the Owner. Prepare a written report of current and predictable problems (of substantial nature) in the performance of the hardware.

HARDWARE SETS

HARDV DOOR I	VARE SET NUMBER:	: 1			
2C12	5A				
EACH 1	O HAVE:				
QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	CONST LATCHING BOLT	FB52	630	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80LD RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	K-I-L CYLINDER	23-065	626	SCH
1	EA	COORDINATOR	COR X FL	628	IVE
2	EA	MOUNTING BRACKET	MB	689	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	488SBK PSA	BK	ZER
1	EA	MEETING STILE	383AA	AA	ZER
HARDV DOOR I	VARE SET	·: 2			

2C109	9	3B100			
EACH T	O HAVE:				
QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT	628	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10	689	VON
1	EA	EU STOREROOM LOCK	ND80LDEU RHO RX CON 12V/24V DC	626	SCH
1	EA	K-I-L CYLINDER	23-065	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP EDA	689	LCN
1	EA	BLADE STOP SPACER	4040XP-61 SRT	689	LCN
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	BY OWNER	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	BY OWNER		
1		CARD READER	BY ACCESS CONTROL PROVIDER		

OPERATION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ACCESS VIA VALID CARD READ OR REMOTE RELEASE AT DESK. ALWAYS FREE EGRESS.

HARDW	ARESEI	: 3					
2B112	NUMBER:	201120					
	О НА\/Е·	301120					
OTY		DESCRIPTION		CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	FA	HINGE		5BB1HW 4 5 X 4 5		652	IVE
1	ΕΛ	STOREROOM LOCI	~			626	SCH
1			Υ.	23-065		626	SCH
1				20-000 00S		630	
י ר				900 8400 10" X 2" I DW/ B C	c		
2					3	620	
1 2				NO400/407CCV			
Ζ	EA	SILENCER		3804		GRI	IVE
HARDW DOOR N 3B115	ARE SET	: 4					
EACH T	O HAVE:						
QTY		DESCRIPTION		CATALOG NUMBER		FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE		5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5		652	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM SECU	JRITY	ND75P6D RHO XN12-0	35	626	SCH
2	EA	K-I-L CYLINDER		23-065		626	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP		90S		630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER		4040XP RW/PA		689	LCN
1	EA	WALL STOP		WS406/407CCV		630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING		488SBK PSA		BK	ZER
		· 5					
HARDW DOOR N	ARE SET	: 5					
HARDW DOOR N 2C108	ARE SET NUMBER: A	: 5 3B110	3B111	3B111A	3B112A	3B110A	
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T	ARE SET NUMBER: A O HAVE:	: 5 3B110	3B111	3B111A	3B112A	3B110A	
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY	ARE SET NUMBER: A O HAVE:	3B110 DESCRIPTION	3B111	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER	3B112A	3B110A FINISH	MFR
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3	ARE SET NUMBER: BA O HAVE: EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE	3B111	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	3B112A	3B110A FINISH 652	MFR IVE
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1	VARE SET NUMBER: 3A O HAVE: EA EA EA	5 3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE	3B111 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO	3B112A	3B110A FINISH 652 626	MFR IVE SCH
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1	VARE SET NUMBER: BA O HAVE: EA EA EA	5 3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER	3B111 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065	3B112A	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626	MFR IVE SCH SCH
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1	VARE SET NUMBER: BA O HAVE: EA EA EA EA	3B110 JESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER	3B111 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA	3B112A	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 689	MFR IVE SCH SCH LCN
HARDW DOORN 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1	ARE SET NUMBER: BA O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA	3B110 JESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE	3B111 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 689 630	MFR IVE SCH LCN IVE
HARDW DOORN 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1	VARE SET NUMBER: BA O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA	5 3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP	3B111 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 689 630 630	MFR IVE SCH SCH LCN IVE IVE
HARDW DOORN 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ARE SET NUMBER: BA O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING	3B111	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 689 630 630 BK	MFR IVE SCH SCH LCN IVE IVE ZER
HARDW DOORN 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ARE SET NUMBER: BA O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING	3B111	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 689 630 630 BK	MFR IVE SCH SCH LCN IVE IVE ZER
HARDW DOORN 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ARE SET NUMBER: BA O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING	3B111	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 689 630 630 BK	MFR IVE SCH SCH LCN IVE IVE ZER
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2C108 N 2C108	ARE SET NUMBER: A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET NUMBER:	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING	3B111 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 689 630 630 BK	MFR IVE SCH LCN IVE IVE ZER
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2C108 EACH T	VARE SET NUMBER: 3A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET NUMBER: 3 O HAVE:	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING : 6 3B101	3B111 E LOCK 3B102	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 689 630 630 BK	MFR IVE SCH SCH IVE IVE ZER
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2C108 EACH T QTY	ARE SET NUMBER: A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET NUMBER: O HAVE:	5 3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING 5 6 3B101 DESCRIPTION	3B111 E LOCK 3B102	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 630 630 630 BK	MFR IVE SCH LCN IVE IVE ZER
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2C108 EACH T QTY 3	VARE SET NUMBER: 3A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET NUMBER: 3 O HAVE: EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING : 6 3B101 DESCRIPTION HINGE	3B111 E LOCK 3B102	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 630 630 630 BK FINISH 652	MFR IVE SCH ICN IVE IVE ZER MFR IVE
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ARE SET JUMBER: A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET JUMBER: O HAVE: EA EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING : 6 3B101 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE	3B111 E LOCK 3B102	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 689 630 630 BK FINISH 652 626	MFR IVE SCH IVE IVE ZER MFR IVE SCH
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2C108 EACH T 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1	ARE SET NUMBER: A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET NUMBER: O HAVE: EA EA EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING : 6 3B101 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER	3B111 E LOCK 3B102 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 689 630 630 BK FINISH 652 626 626	MFR IVE SCH IVE IVE ZER MFR IVE SCH
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1	ARE SET NUMBER: A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET NUMBER: O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING : 6 3B101 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER KICK PLATE	3B111 E LOCK 3B102 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 630 630 8K FINISH 652 626 626 630	MFR IVE SCH SCH IVE IVE ZER MFR IVE SCH IVE
HARDW DOOR N 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1	ARE SET NUMBER: A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET NUMBER: O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA EA EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING : 6 3B101 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER KICK PLATE WALL STOP	3B111 E LOCK 3B102 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 630 630 BK FINISH 652 626 626 630 630	MFR IVE SCH IVE IVE ZER MFR IVE SCH IVE IVE
HARDW DOORN 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2C108 EACH T QTY 3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	ARE SET JUMBER: A O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA CARE SET JUMBER: O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA EA EA EA EA EA	3B110 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER SURFACE CLOSER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING : 6 3B101 DESCRIPTION HINGE ENTRANCE/OFFICE K-I-L CYLINDER KICK PLATE WALL STOP GASKETING	3B111 E LOCK 3B102 E LOCK	3B111A CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 4040XP RW/PA 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA CATALOG NUMBER 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 ND50LD RHO 23-065 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-C WS406/407CCV 488SBK PSA	3B112A S	3B110A FINISH 652 626 626 630 630 BK FINISH 652 626 626 630 630 BK	MFR IVE SCH IVE IVE ZER MFR IVE SCH IVE IVE ZER

HARDWARE SET: 7

UMBER:						
,	2C110	2C125B	2C126	2C127A	2C128A	۱
;	3B117					
O HAVE:						
	DESCRIPTION		CATALOG NUMBER	२	FINISH	MFR
EA	HINGE		5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5		652	IVE
EA	KEYED PRIVACY		L9056L 06A L583-36	63 L283-722	626	SCH
	W/INDICATOR					
EA	MORTISE CYLINDE	R	20-001		626	SCH
EA	SURFACE CLOSER		4040XP RW/PA		689	LCN
EA	KICK PLATE		8400 10" X 2" LDW	B-CS	630	IVE
EA	WALL STOP		WS406/407CCV		630	IVE
EA	GASKETING		488SBK PSA		BK	ZER
	O HAVE: EA EA EA EA EA EA EA EA EA EA	UMBER: 2C110 3B117 O HAVE: DESCRIPTION EA HINGE EA KEYED PRIVACY W/INDICATOR EA MORTISE CYLINDE EA SURFACE CLOSER EA KICK PLATE EA WALL STOP EA GASKETING	NUMBER:2C1102C125B3B1173B117O HAVE:DESCRIPTIONEAHINGEEAKEYED PRIVACY W/INDICATOREAMORTISE CYLINDEREASURFACE CLOSEREAKICK PLATEEAWALL STOPEAGASKETING	NUMBER:2C1102C125B2C1263B1173B117O HAVE:DESCRIPTIONCATALOG NUMBEREAHINGE5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5EAKEYED PRIVACYL9056L 06A L583-36W/INDICATORW/INDICATOREAMORTISE CYLINDER20-001EASURFACE CLOSER4040XP RW/PAEAKICK PLATE8400 10" X 2" LDWEAWALL STOPWS406/407CCVEAGASKETING488SBK PSA	NUMBER:2C1102C125B2C1262C127A3B1173B1172C1262C127AO HAVE:DESCRIPTIONCATALOG NUMBEREAHINGE5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5EAKEYED PRIVACY WINDICATORL9056L 06A L583-363 L283-722EAMORTISE CYLINDER20-001EASURFACE CLOSER4040XP RW/PAEAKICK PLATE8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CSEAWALL STOPWS406/407CCVEAGASKETING488SBK PSA	NUMBER:2C1102C125B2C1262C127A2C128A3B1173B1172C128AO HAVE:DESCRIPTIONCATALOG NUMBERFINISHEAHINGE5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5652EAKEYED PRIVACY WINDICATORL9056L 06A L583-363 L283-722626EAMORTISE CYLINDER20-001626EASURFACE CLOSER4040XP RW/PA689EAKICK PLATE8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS630EAWALL STOPWS406/407CCV630EAGASKETING488SBK PSABK

HARDWARE SET: 8

DOOR NUMBER:

2C12	5				
EACH T	O HAVE:				
QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ND50LD RHO	626	SCH
		NOTE	REMAINDER OF HARDWARE		
			EXISTING		

DOOR/HARDWARE SET INDEX

DOOR #	HwSet #
2C107	7
2C108	6
2C108A	5
2C109	2
2C110	7
2C125	8
2C125A	1
2C125B	7

DOOR #	HwSet #
2C126	7
2C127A	7
2C128A	7
3B100	2
3B101	6
3B102	6
3B110	5
3B10A	5

DOOR #	HwSet #
3B111	5
3B111A	5
3B112	3
3B112A	5
3B112B	3
3B115	4
3B116	7
3B117	7

END OF SECTION 087100

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

2.

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
 - a. Windows.
 - b. Transaction Windows
 - c. Doors.
 - d. Storefront framing.
 - Glazing sealants and accessories.
 - 3. Glass types include:
 - a. Fully Tempered Monolithic Float Glass.
 - Fire Glazing.
 - 1) Fire resistive glazing.
 - 2) Fire protective glazing.
 - Specialty/Decorative Glass.
 - 1) Decorative Film Overlay.
- B. Related Requirements:

b.

C.

- 1. Section 081113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for vision light glass in hollow metal frames and doors.
- 2. Section 084113 "Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts."
- 3. Section 085613 "Transaction Windows."

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass units.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 1. ASTM E 119: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
- B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 1. ANSI Z97.1: Standard for Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings.
- C. Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC):
 - 1. CPSC 16 CFR 1201: Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials, Category II.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.
 - 3. Review drawings for locations and details of glazing.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.
 - 1. Testing will not be required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
 - 2. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
 - 3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 - 4. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated primers.

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
 - 1. For security "forced entry resistant" glass, include UL listing verification and UL-752 Test Results.
 - 2. For security "forced entry resistant" glass, include manufacturer's written installation and cleaning instructions.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square. Submit the samples listing glass type corresponding to Glass Legend indicated on Drawings and as follows:
 - 1. Fire Glazing:
 - a. Fire-resistive glazing products.
 - b. Fire protective glazing products.
 - 2. Specialty Glass:
 - a. Decorative Film Overlay.
 - 1) Glazing Film Overlay Samples: Submit colored manufacturer's standard sample sets showing full range of colors available for each type and color indicated.
- C. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For the following:
 - 1. Installers.
 - 2. Glass testing agency.
 - 3. Sealant testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of glass and glazing product, from manufacturer. For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- 1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.

1.9 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- C. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- D. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- E. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing labeling is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- F. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire-protection-rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, test standard, whether glazing is for use in fire doors or other openings, whether or not glazing passes hose-stream test, whether or not glazing has a temperature rise rating of 450 deg F, and the fire-resistance rating in minutes.
- G. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Install glazing in mockups specified in related Sections indicated below to match glazing systems required for Project, including glazing methods.
 - a. Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts".
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.12 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
 - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
- B. Environmental Limitations for Fire Glazing: Do not deliver or install fire-resistant glazing until spaces are enclosed and weathertight and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.13 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Glazing Film Overlay: Manufacturer's standard form in which glazing film manufacturer agrees to replace glazing film units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of glazing film is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning glazing film contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Glazing Films: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type
 - 1. Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Obtain laminated glazing from single source from single manufacturer using the same types of lites, plies, interlayers, and spacers for each laminated glazing type.
 - 3. Obtain decorative glazing film overlay from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.
- B. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing. Design glass, including comprehensive engineering analysis according to the ICC's International Building Code (IBC) listed on Drawings and ASTM E 1300 by a qualified professional engineer, using design criteria set forth in Article 2.2 and as follows:
 - 1. Vertical Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped 15 degrees or less from vertical, design glass to resist design wind pressure based on glass type factors for short-duration load.
 - 2. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
 - 3. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- C. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
 - 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
 - 3. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - 4. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.

- 5. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.
- 6. Self-ignition temperature of 650 deg F or more when tested according to ASTM D 1929 on plastic sheets in thicknesses indicated for the Work.
- 7. Smoke-Developed Index of 450 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, or smoke density of 75 or less when tested according to ASTM D 2843 on plastic sheets in thicknesses indicated for the Work.
- 8. Burning extent of 1 inch or less when tested according to ASTM D 635 at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch or thickness indicated for the Work.
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. GANA Publications: "Glazing Manual."
 - 2. GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual"
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the Safety Glazing Certification Council (SGCC) or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- C. Fire-Resistive-Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire-resistance-rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, test standard, that the glazing is approved for use in walls, and the fire-resistance rating in minutes.
- D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.
- E. Strength:
 - 1. Where float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 2. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 3. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Fully-Tempered Monolithic Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Glass Types: Refer to Glass Type Schedules at end of this Section.

2.5 LAMINATED GLASS

- A. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials, and with other requirements specified. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Construction: Laminate glass with the following interlayer types to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions.
 - a. As required to provide fire resistive glass types or fire protective glass types indicated.
 - 2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
 - 3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

- 4. Glass: Comply with applicable requirements in "Glass Products" Article as indicated by designations in "Laminated Glass Schedule" at end of this Section.
- B. Glass Types: Refer to Glass Type Schedules at end of this Section.

2.6 FIRE-RESISTIVE-RATED GLAZING

- A. Fire-Resistive-Rated Glazing: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-resistance ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119 or UL 263.
 - 1. "W" denotes installed locations that must meet wall assembly criteria per ASTM E119.
 - 2. "OH" denotes installed locations that must meet fire window assembly criteria per NFPA 257.
 - 3. "D" denotes installed locations that must meet fire door assembly criteria per NFPA 252.
 - 4. "H" denotes installed locations that must meet fire door assembly hose stream test per NFPA 252.
 - 5. "T" denotes installed locations that must meet temperature rise requirement per NFPA 252.
 - a. Fire-resistance-rated glazing is tested the same as a wall assembly is tested and can be used in fireresistance-rated walls. Size is limited only by size that was used in test.
- B. Fire-Resistive-Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire-resistance-rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, test standard, that the glazing is approved for use in walls, and the fire-resistance rating in minutes.
- C. Laminated Glass with Intumescent Interlayers: Laminated glass made from multiple plies of uncoated, ultraclear float glass; with intumescent interlayers; and complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.

2.7 FIRE-PROTECTIVE-RATED GLAZING

- A. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing, General: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 for door assemblies and NFPA 257 for window assemblies.
 - 1. "W" denotes installed locations that must meet wall assembly criteria per ASTM E119.
 - 2. "OH" denotes installed locations that must meet fire window assembly criteria per NFPA 257.
 - 3. "D" denotes installed locations that must meet fire door assembly criteria per NFPA 252.
 - 4. "H" denotes installed locations that must meet fire door assembly hose stream test per NFPA 252.
 - 5. "T" denotes installed locations that must meet temperature rise requirement per NFPA 252.
- B. Laminated Glass with Intumescent Interlayers: Laminated glass made from multiple plies of uncoated, ultraclear float glass; with intumescent interlayers; and complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II and ASTM E119. Label shall be/meet W120 in accordance with the latest edition of the International Building Code, as adopted by the authority having jurisdiction. Rating shall not be less than 2 hours (120 minutes).
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Pilkington "Pyrostop", or comparable meeting specified requirements submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
- C. Fire-Protective-Rated Glazing: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on positive-pressure testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9, including the hose-stream test, and shall comply with NFPA 80.
 - 1. Fire-protection-rated glazing required to have a fire-protection rating of 20 minutes shall be exempt from the hose-stream test.
- D. Fire-Protective-Rated Tempered Glass: Min 6mm thickness, fire-protection-rated tempered glass; and complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Film-Faced Ceramic Glazing: Clear, ceramic flat glass; 5-mm thickness; faced on one surface with a clear glazing film; and complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- F. Laminated Ceramic Glazing: Laminated glass made from two plies of clear, ceramic glass; 8-mm total thickness; and complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- G. Laminated Glass with Intumescent Interlayers: Laminated glass made from multiple plies of uncoated, ultraclear float glass; with intumescent interlayers; and complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- H. Double Glazing Units with Clear Gel Fill: Double glazing units made from two lites of uncoated, fully tempered, ultraclear float glass; with a perimeter edge seal enclosing a cavity filled with optically clear, intumescent gel; and

complying with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.

I. Glass Types: Refer to Glass Type Schedules at end of this Section.

2.8 SPECIALTY / DECORATIVE GLAZING

- A. Glazing Film Overlay (088000.A93): Glass with decorative adhesive-backed colored film overlay. Use dimensionally stable, optically clear polyester film with UV stable, pressure-sensitive, clear adhesive back for adhering to glass and releasable protective backing.
- B. Glass Types: Refer to Glass Type Schedules at end of this Section.

2.9 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal, made from one of the following:
 - 1. EPDM complying with ASTM C 864.
 - 2. Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned EPDM or silicone gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
 - 1. Application: Use where soft compression gaskets will be compressed by inserting dense compression gaskets on opposite side of glazing or pressure applied by means of pressure-glazing stops on opposite side of glazing.
- C. Fire-Rated Glazing: Provide glazing gaskets, glazing sealants, glazing tapes, setting blocks, spacers, edge blocks, and other glazing accessories that are compatible with glazing products and each other and are approved by testing agencies that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing products with which products are used for applications and fire-protection ratings indicated.
 - Glazing Sealants for Fire-Rated Glazing Products: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT. Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated.
 - a. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.10 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
 - 1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with glazing products and each other and are approved by testing agencies that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing products with which products are used for applications and fire-protection ratings indicated.
 - 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
- C. Glazing Sealants for Fire-Rated Glazing Products: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT. Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated.
 - 1. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.11 GLAZING TAPES

A. General: Provide glazing tapes that are compatible with glazing products and each other and are approved by testing agencies that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing products with which products are used for applications and fire-protection ratings indicated.

- B. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
 - 1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 - 2. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- C. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
 - 1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 - 2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General:
 - 1. Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
 - Provide glazing gaskets, glazing sealants, glazing tapes, setting blocks, spacers, edge blocks, and other glazing accessories that are compatible with glazing products and each other and are approved by testing agencies that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing products with which products are used for applications and fire-protection ratings indicated.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.
- G. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Product that is approved by testing agency that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing product with which it is used for application and fire-protection rating indicated.

2.13 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.
 - 1. Provide ground and polished edges for glass doors and shelving at display cases.
 - 2. Provide ground and polished edges for glass shelving at merchandising walls.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
 - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
 - 4. Minimum required bite.
 - a. No less than 1/2" on all 4 sides.
 - 5. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
 - 1. Use methods approved by testing agencies that listed and labeled fire-resistive glazing or fire-protective glazing products.
- B. Adjust glazing channel dimensions as required by Project conditions during installation to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
 - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- J. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face fire side or protected side as specified.

- K. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- L. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 GLAZING FILM OVERLAY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with glazing film manufacturer's written instructions for preparation and installation.
 - 1. Apply squarely aligned to glass edges, uniformly smooth, and free from tears, air bubbles, wrinkles, and rough edges completely overlaying the back face of clean glass.
 - 2. Install film continuously in longest practicable lengths. Install with no gaps and no overlaps.
 - 3. If seamed, install with no gaps and no overlaps. Install seams vertical and plumb. Horizontal seams are not allowed.
 - 4. Delay removal of release liner from film until just before each piece of film is cut and ready for installation.
 - 5. Install film with mounting solution and custom cut to glass with neat, square corners and edges tight to window frame.
 - Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters and other defects, banding, thin spots and pinholes.a. Where installed film does not meet this criteria, it shall be removed and replaced with new film.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- F. Remove excess glazing film mounting solution at finished seams, perimeter edges and adjacent surfaces. Use cleaning methods recommended by glazing film manufacturer. Remove and replace films that cannot be cleaned.

3.9 HEAT TREATED MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type 11 Clear Fully Tempered monolithic float glass (088000.A11):
 - 1. 1/4 inch (6 mm).
 - 2. Visible Light Transmittance: 85 percent minimum.
 - 3. Provide safety glazing labeling.

3.10 FIRE RESISTIVE GLASS GLAZING SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type 71 Fire-Resistive-Rated 60-Minute Interior Glass. (088000.A71)
 - 1. Glass Type 71.
 - 2. Multiple plies of uncoated, clear float glass; with intumescent interlayers; complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials. Product shall be non-heat conductive and have fire protection rating of not less than 60 minutes. Fire protective label per IBC shall be D-H-W-T-60 minutes.
 - 3. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Pilkington Group Limited (distributed by Technical Glass Products); PyroStop, or comparable product from manufacturers listed below, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.

- a. AGC; Pyrobel (distributed by McGrory Glass).
- b. Safti First.
- c. Vetrotech Saint-Gobain.

3.11 FIRE PROTECTIVE GLAZING SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type 74 Fire-Protective 20-Minute Rated Tempered Glass. (088000.A74)
 - 1. Glass Type 74.
 - 1/4-inch-thick, fire-protection-rated tempered glass, complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials. Non-heat conductive and 20-minute rating minimum. Fire protective label per IBC shall be D-20.
 - 3. Basis of Design Products: Provide one of the following products:
 - a. Technical Glass Products; "Fireglass 20".
 - b. Safti First; "SuperLite I 20".
 - c. McGrory Glass; "FireDefend 20".
- 3.12 SPECIALTY / DECORATIVE GLAZING
 - A. Glazing Film Overlay (088000.A93 <u>WF1</u>): Glass with decorative adhesive-backed colored film overlay. Use dimensionally stable, optically clear polyester film with UV stable, pressure-sensitive, clear adhesive back for adhering to glass and releasable protective backing.
 - Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide 3M.; "Fasara"; or a comparable substitute product submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 a. Substitutions for convenience will not be considered after bidding.
 - 2. Film Finish: Frost/Matte Opaque White (SH2MAOW).
 - 3. Film Thickness: 142 microns.
 - 4. Product Description: Single or multi-layered decorative film products, applied to interior glass surfaces, consisting of (from outboard surface to inboard surface):
 - a. Removable release liner.
 - b. Pressure sensitive adhesive with integral ultraviolet absorbers.
 - c. Dyed or printed pattern layer of polyester film.
 - 5. Use: Suitable for interior applications.
 - 6. Apply to Glass Type 11 where indicated on drawings.
 - 7. Accessories: Provide accessories complying with glazing film manufacturer's requirements for application indicated, with proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted.
 - a. Adhesives: Pressure sensitive acrylic adhesive system.
 - b. Cleaners, Primers and Sealers: Types recommended by glazing film manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092116 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions (092116.A01).
- 2. Suspension systems for interior ceilings, bulkheads, soffits, and exterior soffits.
 - a. For spans exceeding 8 feet in any direction refer to Section 054000 for design requirements.
- 3. Grid suspension systems for gypsum board ceilings (092116.A06).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for description of alternates affecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 054000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-loadbearing wall studs; floor joists; and ceiling joists. In addition, for all interior soffits and ceilings with an unsupported span in any direction exceeding 8 feet.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Studs and Runners: Provide documentation that framing members' certification is according to SIFA's "Code Compliance Certification Program for Cold-Formed Steel Structural and Non-Structural Framing Members."

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Certified Steel Stud Association, the Steel Framing Industry Association or the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For embossed steel studs and runners and firestop tracks, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated or where not specifically indicated, as specified below, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - Provide fire-resistance-rated assemblies identical to those specified by reference to design designations in UL "Fire Resistance Directory" or in listing of other testing and agencies acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Design designation from UL are minimum requirements. Where more stringent requirements are indicated or specified, the more stringent requirements shall take precedence.
 - a. One Hour non-load bearing partitions: UL U 465.
 - b. Two Hour non-load bearing partitions: UL U 411.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Horizontal Deflection: For wall assemblies, limited to 1/360 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft..

2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

2.

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
 - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
 - Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40 or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance of ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Studs and Runners (092116.A01): ASTM C 645. Use either steel studs and runners or embossed steel studs and runners.
 - 1. Steel Studs and Runners:
 - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch.
 - b. Provide 0.0296 inch minimum base metal thickness for studs and runners at walls indicated to receive tile, walls indicated to receive abrasion-resistant drywall, impact-resistant drywall, and at other locations indicated.
 - c. Depth: 3-5/8 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
 - Embossed Steel Studs and Runners:
 - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0147 inch.
 - b. Provide 0.025 inch minimum base metal thickness for studs and runners at walls indicated to receive tile, walls indicated to receive abrasion-resistant drywall, impact-resistant drywall, and at other locations indicated.
 - c. Depth: 3-5/8 inches, unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
 - 1. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit over inside runner and one gauge heavier than gauge for wall construction indicated.
- D. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0296 inch.
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members) (09216.A03):
 - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
- G. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
 - 1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.
- H. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels (092116.A02): ASTM C 645.
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch.
 - 2. Depth: 7/8 inch, unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- I. Z-Shaped Furring (092116.A04): With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-metal thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
 - 1. Anchors: Capable of sustaining a load equal to 5 times that imposed as determined by ASTM E488. a. Type: Post installed, chemical anchor or post-installed, expansion anchor.
 - 2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.

- B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated.
- D. Carrying Channels (092116.A05:) Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep. Hot-dip galvanize carrying channels in exterior locations to at least G40 requirements.
 - 1. Depth: 2 inches.
- E. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings and Soffits (092116.A06): At Contractor's option, premanufactured grid suspension systems may be used. Grid suspension system shall comply with ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc; Drywall Grid Systems.
 - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; 640/660 Drywall Ceiling Suspension.
 - c. United State Gypsum Company; Drywall Suspension System.
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members) (09216.A03) :
 - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
 - 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0329 inch.
 - 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- G. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels (092116.A02): ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch.
- H. Z-Shaped Furring (092116.A04): With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-metal thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
 - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Vertical Isolation Strips at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
 - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
- C. Isolation Strips beneath Runner Tracks at Exterior Walls: Provide the following:
 - 1. Polyethylene-sheet-backed rubberized asphalt membrane, 40 mils thick. Field cut to match widths of runners.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.

- 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
 - 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.
 - 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
 - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Where runner tracks for exterior walls are installed directly against concrete or dissimilar metals, install rubberized asphalt isolation strips between bottom of runner track and concrete.
- D. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- E. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs, having a minimum base metal thickness of 0.0296 inches, at each jamb.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
 - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
 - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
 - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.

- 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- F. Direct Furring:
 - 1. Screw to wood framing.
 - 2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- G. Z-Shaped Furring Members:
 - 1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches o.c.
 - 2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
 - 3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- H. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
 - 1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
 - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
 - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.
- B. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
 - 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
 - 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
 - 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
 - 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- C. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- D. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- E. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 092400 - CEMENT PLASTERING - INTERIOR

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior vertical plasterwork.
- 2. Interior horizontal and nonvertical plasterwork.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of factory-prepared finish coat and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups for each substrate and finish texture indicated for cement plastering, including accessories.
 - a. Size: Not to exceed 100 sq. ft. in surface area.
 - b. Location: First area of replacement may be used as mock-up area if approved by architect prior to installation.
 - 2. For interior plasterwork, simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with ASTM C 926 requirements.
- B. Interior Plasterwork: Maintain room temperatures at greater than 40 deg F for at least 48 hours before plaster application, and continuously during and after application.
 - 1. Avoid conditions that result in plaster drying out during curing period. Distribute heat evenly; prevent concentrated or uneven heat on plaster.
 - 2. Ventilate building spaces as required to remove water in excess of that required for hydrating plaster in a manner that prevents drafts of air from contacting surfaces during plaster application and until plaster is dry.

C. Factory-Prepared Finishes: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for environmental conditions for applying finishes.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide cement plaster assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance according to ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency.

2.2 METAL LATH

- A. Expanded-Metal Lath: ASTM C 847, cold-rolled carbon-steel sheet with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
 - 1. Diamond-Mesh Lath: Self-furring, 3.4 lb/sq. yd.
- B. Paper Backing: FS UU-B-790a, Type I, Grade B, Style 1a vapor-retardant paper.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1063, and coordinate depth of trim and accessories with thicknesses and number of plaster coats required.

B. Metal Accessories:

- 1. External- (Outside-) Corner Reinforcement: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hotdip galvanized-zinc coating.
- 2. Cornerbeads: Fabricated from zinc.
 - a. Smallnose cornerbead with expanded flanges; use unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Smallnose cornerbead with expanded flanges reinforced by perforated stiffening rib; use on columns and for finishing unit masonry corners.
- Control Joints (09 24 00.A07): Fabricated from zinc; one-piece-type, folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with perforated flanges and removable protective tape on plaster face of control joint.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Water for Mixing and Finishing Plaster: Potable and free of substances capable of affecting plaster set or of damaging plaster, lath, or accessories.
- B. Fiber for Base Coat: Alkaline-resistant glass or polypropylene fibers, 1/2 inch long, free of contaminants, manufactured for use in cement plaster.
- C. Fasteners for Attaching Metal Lath to Substrates: ASTM C 1063.
- D. Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, not less than 0.0475-inch diameter unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 PLASTER MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I.1. Color for Finish Coats: Gray.
- B. Lime: ASTM C 206, Type S; or ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Sand Aggregate: ASTM C 897.

- D. Perlite Aggregate: ASTM C 35.
- E. Ready-Mixed Finish-Coat Plaster: Mill-mixed portland cement, aggregates, and proprietary ingredients.

2.6 PLASTER MIXES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 926 for applications indicated.
 - 1. Fiber Content: Add fiber to base-coat mixes after ingredients have mixed at least two minutes. Comply with fiber manufacturer's written instructions for fiber quantities in mixes, but do not exceed 1 lb of fiber/cu. yd. of cementitious materials.
- Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: Scratch and brown coats for three-coat plasterwork as follows:
 Portland Cement Mixes:
 - a. Scratch Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 0 to 3/4 parts lime. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
 - b. Brown Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 0 to 3/4 parts lime. Use 3 to 5 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material, but not less than volume of aggregate used in scratch coat.
- C. Factory-Prepared Finish-Coat Mixes: For ready-mixed finish-coat plasters, comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect adjacent work from soiling, spattering, moisture deterioration, and other harmful effects caused by plastering.
- B. Prepare smooth, solid substrates for plaster according to ASTM C 926.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Install components according to requirements for design designations from listing organization and publication indicated on Drawings.
- B. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: Where required, install blankets before installing lath unless blankets are readily installed after lath has been installed on one side.
- C. Remove existing unsound and loose plaster back to fully adhered plaster. Create a slight dovetail in remaining plaster to key new plaster to existing.

3.4 INSTALLING METAL LATH

A. Metal Lath: Install according to ASTM C 1063.

3.5 INSTALLING ACCESSORIES

- A. Install according to ASTM C 1063 and at locations indicated on Drawings.
- B. Control Joints: Locate as approved by Architect for visual effect and as follows:
 - 1. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) of the following maximum sizes:
 - a. Vertical Surfaces: 144 sq. ft.
 - b. Horizontal and Other Nonvertical Surfaces: 100 sq. ft.
 - 2. At distances between control joints of not greater than 18 feet o.c.
 - 3. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) with length-to-width ratios of not greater than 2-1/2:1.
 - 4. Where control joints occur in surface of construction directly behind plaster.
 - 5. Where plasterwork areas change dimensions, to delineate rectangular-shaped areas (panels) and to relieve the stress that occurs at the corner formed by the dimension change.

3.6 PLASTER APPLICATION

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 926.
 - 1. Do not deviate more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in 10 feet from a true plane in finished plaster surfaces when measured by a 10-foot straightedge placed on surface.
 - 2. Finish plaster flush with metal frames and other built-in metal items or accessories that act as a plaster ground unless otherwise indicated. Where casing bead does not terminate plaster at metal frame, cut base coat free from metal frame before plaster sets and groove finish coat at junctures with metal.
 - 3. Provide plaster surfaces that are ready to receive field-applied finishes indicated.
- B. Walls; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork with 3/4-inch total thickness, as follows:
 - 1. Portland cement mixes.
 - 2. Masonry cement mixes.
 - 3. Portland and masonry cement mixes.
 - 4. Plastic cement mixes.
 - 5. Portland and plastic cement mixes.
- C. Ceilings; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork and having total thickness that matches existing, as follows:
 - 1. Portland cement mixes.
- D. Walls; Base-Coat Mix: For base (scratch) coat, for two-coat plasterwork and having total thickness that matches existing, as follows:
 - 1. Portland cement mixes.
- E. Ceilings; Base-Coat Mix: For base (scratch) coat, for two-coat plasterwork and having 1/4-inch thickness on concrete, as follows:
 - 1. Portland cement mixes.
- F. Plaster Finish Coats: Apply to provide to match existing adjacent finish as approved by Architect.

3.7 PLASTER REPAIRS

A. Repair or replace work to eliminate cracks, dents, blisters, buckles, crazing and check cracking, dry outs, efflorescence, sweat outs, and similar defects and where bond to substrate has failed.
3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protection and enclosure of other work after plastering is complete. Promptly remove plaster from door frames, windows, and other surfaces not indicated to be plastered. Repair floors, walls, and other surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during plastering.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior gypsum board.
 - a. Gypsum Board, Type X (092900.A02).
 - b. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board (092900.A06).
 - 2. Tile backing panels (092900.A10).
 - 3. Sound attenuation blankets (092900.A14).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for description of alternates effecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 092116 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
 - 3. Division 26 Sections for electrical connections to lighting components within trim pieces.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
 - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Integrated Field Sample: Build mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build integrated field sample for the following:
 - a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
 - b. Each texture finish indicated.
 - 2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
 - 3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL
 - A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American Gypsum.
 - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
 - 3. Lafarge North America, Inc.
 - 4. National Gypsum Company.
 - 5. USG Corporation.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X (092900.A02): ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
 - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
- C. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board (092900.A06): ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 - 1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units (092900.A10): ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or ASTM C 1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products or a comparable product, with the following product characteristics, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - a. C-Cure.; C-Cure Board 990
 - b. National Gypsum Company.; Permabase Cement Board.
 - c. USG Corporation.; DUROCK Cement Board.
 - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim (092900.A11): ASTM C 1047.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.

- a. At Contractor's option, interior trim may be a structural laminate drywall corner system using "No-Coat" products as manufactured by Certainteed or a comparable product submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
- 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. J-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - d. Expansion (control) joint.
 - e. Wall end cap: Provide "Fast Cap" as manufactured by Trim-Tex Drywall Products.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 - 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
 - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - a. Where specifically indicated on Drawings, provide a setting-type, sandable topping compound for trowel-applied skim coat.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
 - 1. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
 - 1. Laminating adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Laminating adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
 - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."
- E. Sound-Attenuation Blankets (092900.A14): ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
 - 2. Recycled Content of Blankets: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

- F. Acoustical Impaling clips (092900.A14): Galvanized sheet metal impaling clips each with 8 spikes that stick onto the fiberglass and hold the panel in place; 2-1/8" x 1-1/2"; install by either drywall screws or attached with adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer.
- G. Acoustical Joint Sealant (092900.A15): Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following products or a comparable product, with the following product characteristics, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - a. Accumetric LLC.; BOSS 824 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
 - b. Pecora Corporation.; AIS-919.
 - c. USG Corporation.; SHEETROCK Acousitical Sealant.
- H. Interior Wall-to-Mullion Sound Seal System (092900.A17 : Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Mullion Mate - Series 30" by Gordon Incorporated or a comparable product submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding with the following product characteristics:
 - 1. Size: Per opening/gap size as verified in field.
 - 2. Description: Extruded aluminum partition gap closure.
 - 3. Finish: Standard satiin clear anodized.
 - 4. Acoustic Performance: STC of 39 minimum per ASTM E90.
 - 5. Fire Resistance: Class A per ASTM E84.
 - 6. Installation shall be friction fit as recommended by manufacturer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
 - A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL
 - A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
 - B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
 - C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
 - D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
 - E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
 - F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install

sealant.

- 4. Where ceilings in showers abut adjacent walls, Provide 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide spaces and trim edges with plastic edge trim to allow for sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
 - 1. Type X: Vertical and horizontal surfaces of walls, soffits, bulkheads and ceiling surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Impact-Resistant Type: Refer to Drawings for locations required.
 - 3. Tile Backing Panels: Restroom walls indicated to receive tile.
 - Moisture and Mold Resistant Type X: Exterior walls and restrooms, except at walls indicated to receive tile. Restrooms and wet walls (such as behind electric drinking fountains, behind janitor's sink and sinks).
 a. All other walls to receive moisture and mold resistant gypsum below 4 feet.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 - 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
 - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
 - 3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
 - 4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11
 - 1. Locations:
 - a. At shower ceiling locations and vertical surfaces indicated to receive tile
 - b. At showers, tubs, and where indicated
 - c. At locations indicated to receive tile.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
 - 2. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
 - 3. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 09 Sections.
 - 3. Level 5:
 - a. Provide at the following locations:
 - 1) At walls perpendicular to exterior glazing.
 - 2) Down Light / Wall Washers
 - 3) Where indicated on Drawings.
 - b. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Other Division 09 Sections.
- E. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 093000 - TILING

TILING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Glazed wall tile.
 - 2. Waterproof membrane.
 - 3. Crack isolation membrane.
 - 4. Metal edge strips (093000.A04).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
 - 2. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for cementitious backer units.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and, in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, ANSI A108.17, 108.18, 108.19, 108.20, A118, A136 which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. ANSI A 137.1, American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile.
- D. ANSI A 137.2, American National Standard Specifications for Glass Tile.
- E. ANSI A 37.3, American National Standards Specifications for Gauged Porcelain Tile and Gauged Porcelain Tile Panel/Slabs.
- F. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- G. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:
 - 1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.60.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
 - 1. Show extent and locations for waterproof membrane and crack isolation membrane.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
 - 2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
 - 3. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish one unopened box, but not more than 2 percent, for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from one source or producer.
 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
 - B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from one manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.
 - C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer for each product:
 - 1. Crack isolation membrane.
 - 2. Joint sealants.
 - 3. Metal edge strips.
 - D. Installer Qualifications:
 - 1. Installer is a five-star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
 - 2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.
 - 3. Installer employs Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers.
 - E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
 - F. Mockups/Field Samples: Build mockups/field samples to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

- 1. Build mockups/field samples of each type of *restroom wall tile installation*. Mockup/field sample shall extend to floor to demonstrate transition from wall to floor.
- 2. Build mockups/field samples of each type of wall tile installation.
- 3. Approved mockups/field samples may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
 - A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
 - B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
 - C. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.
 - D. Handle tile that has temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:
 1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.60.
- B. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: for tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide product with the following values as
 - determined by testing identiical products per ANSI A137.1.
 - 1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.42.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Obtain waterproof membrane and crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
 - 1. Metal edge strips.

2.3 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements.
 - 2. Dynamic coefficient of Friction (DCOF) for Floor Tile: Greater than or equal to 0.42 per ANSI A137.1.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Factory-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: Where indicated under tile type, protect exposed surfaces of tile against adherence of mortar and grout by pre-coating with continuous film of petroleum paraffin wax, applied hot. Do not coat unexposed tile surfaces.

2.4 CERAMIC TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Tile Type (093000.A01 <u>**T3,T4, and T5**</u>):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Daltile; "Linear Color Wheel Collection," glazed ceramic wall tile.
 - a. Comparable products from other manufacturer's, meeting specified requirements, colors and shape, will be considered when submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 2. Composition: Glazed ceramic tile.
 - 3. Shape: Refer to Material Finish Legend.
 - 4. Size:
 - a. <u>Type T3 and T4</u>: 4 inches by 16 inches by 3/8 inch
 - b. <u>Type T5</u>: 4 inches by 8 inches by 5/16 inch.
 - 5. Tile Color and Pattern: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on Material Finish Legend.
 - 6. Finish: Matte, Accent
 - 7. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturers full range.
 - 8. Grout Joint: 1/16 inch
 - 9. DCOF: \geq 0.42 floors, N/A for walls.
 - 10. Performance Characteristics:
 - a. Water Absorption: ASTM C 373, <20%.
 - b. Breaking Strength: ASTM C 648, 120-230 lbs.
 - c. Scratch Hardness: MOHS, 4.0 6.0.
 - d. Chemical Resistance: ASTM C 650, Resistant.
- B. Tile Type (093000.A01 <u>**76**</u>):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Daltile; "Articulo Collection," glazed ceramic wall tile.
 - a. Comparable products from other manufacturer's, meeting specified requirements, colors and shape, will be considered when submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 2. Composition: Glazed ceramic tile.
 - 3. Shape: Refer to Material Finish Legend.
 - 4. Size: 6 inch by 18 inch by 3/8 inch
 - 5. Tile Color and Pattern: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on Material Finish Legend.
 - 6. Finish: Matte, Accent
 - 7. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturers full range.
 - 8. Grout Joint: 1/16 inch
 - 9. DCOF: \geq 0.42 floors, N/A for walls.
 - 10. Performance Characteristics:
 - a. Water Absorption: ASTM C 373, <20%.
 - b. Breaking Strength: ASTM C 648, 120-230 lbs.
 - c. Scratch Hardness: MOHS, 4.0 6.0.

d. Chemical Resistance: ASTM C 650, Resistant.

2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE AND CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE (093000.A03)

- A. Fluid-Applied Waterproofing/Crack Isolation Membrane: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Laticrete; "Hydro Ban" waterproofing and crack isolation membrane. Comparable products from other manufacturers will be considered when submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 2. Product Description and Characteristics:
 - a. Single component, self-curing liquid rubber polymer that forms a flexible and seamless membrane.
 - 1) Meets ANSI A118.10 Membranes / Water Proofing and ANSI A118.12 Membranes / Crack Isolation.
 - b. Thickness: Not less than 0.020 inches when cured.
 - c. Anti-fracture protection up to 1/8 inch.
 - d. Extra Heavy Service rating per TCNA.
 - 3. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
 - 4. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.6 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Improved Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset and LHT Mortars): ANSI A118.15.
 - 1. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersable, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 - 2. For large & heavy tile (LHT) use mortar meeting LHT requirements.
 - 3. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for non-sagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.15.

2.7 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. High-Performance Polymer-Modified Tile Grout: Meeting or exceeding ANSI A118.7. Grout shall be chemical and stain resistant type. Polymer modified with ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, re-dispersible form, pre-packaged with other dry ingredients. Grout shall be fast setting, highly stain resistant, crack and shrink resistant, and mold /mildew resistant.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: LATICRETE International, Inc., "Permacolor Grout" or comparable product from other manufacturers listed below, meeting specified requirements, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - a. Ardex.
 - b. Bostik, Inc.
 - c. Custom Building Products.
 - d. MAPEI.
 - e. Mer-Kote Products, Inc.
 - f. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
 - g. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
 - h. TEC; a subsidiary of H. B. Fuller Company.
 - 2. Grout Color: As selected by Architect.
- B. Water-Cleanable High Performance Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a working time not less than 80 minutes, equipped with anti-microbial technology and a full cure time of 14 days at 70 degrees F, and with a with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: LATICRETE International, Inc., "Spectralock PRO Grout" or comparable product from other manufacturers listed below, meeting specified requirements, submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - a. Ardex.
 - b. Bostik, Inc.
 - c. Custom Building Products.
 - d. MAPEI.
 - e. Mer-Kote Products, Inc.

- f. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
- g. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
- h. TEC; a subsidiary of H. B. Fuller Company.
- 2. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 deg. F. and 212 deg. F., respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.
- 3. Grout Color: As selected by Architect.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Rapid Set Pre-Tiling Mortar: mortar shall be designed for both interior and exterior use and shall be non-sag type.
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Ardex; "AM 100 Rapid Set" or comparable product submitted to and accepted by
 - Basis-of-Design Product: Ardex; "AM 100 Rapid Set" or comparable product submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 2. Locations for Use: Provide as a ¼ inch thick leveling mortar over interior concrete unit masonry walls indicated to receive tile.
- C. Metal Edge Strips (093000.A04): Profile as specified below, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring and wall applications; white zinc alloy or Type 316 L stainless-steel, ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material. Provide Schluter profiles as follows:
 - 1. <u>Type TR1</u>: Schluter; "SCHIENE" satin anodized aluminum edge at all tile outside corners. Unless noted on the Material Finish Legend color shall be selected by Architect from manufacturers full range of options.
 - 2. <u>TypeTR3</u>: Schluter; "Dilex EKE", satin anodized aluminum interior corner movement joint trim profile at all vertical inside wall corners of wall tile.
 - 3. <u>Type TR4</u>: Schluter; "Jolly" satin anodized aluminum straight-edge profile for horizontal edges of tiled surfaces on walls transitioning to resinous flooring integral cove base.
 - a. Size: To be selected from manufacturers full range.
- D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- E. Grout Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.

2.9 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tilesetting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.

- b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
- c. Verify that protruding edges of concrete masonry units have been ground smooth and flush with plane of wall.
- 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
- 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.
- C. Field-Applied Temporary Protective Coating: If indicated under tile type or needed to prevent grout from staining or adhering to exposed tile surfaces, pre-coat them with continuous film of temporary protective coating, taking care not to coat unexposed tile surfaces.

3.3 TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Tile floors in wet areas.
 - b. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
 - c. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Jointing Pattern:
 - 1. Lay tile in stacked grid pattern, unless otherwise indicated.
 - Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Refer to Drawings for Tile Patterns:
 - a. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
 - b. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - c. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Joint Widths: As recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Terminate top of wainscot decorative metal edge trim.

- G. All tile terminations that do not end in a corner will be capped with a metal edge trim.
- H. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
 - 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
 - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- I. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- J. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to cementitious grout joints in the wainscot according to grout-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as grout sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.4 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
 - 1. Allow waterproofing to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
 - 1. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.
 - 3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer and that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent drain clogging.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
 - 1. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- B. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.8 INTERIOR TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Refer to Article 2.6 for Setting

- B. Interior Wall Installations (except wet walls), Masonry or Concrete:
 1. Tile Installation:
 - a. Thin-set mortar; TCNA W202I-18
 - 1) Tile Type: T5
 - b. LHT mortar TCNA W202I-18
 - 1) Tile Type: T3, T4, T6
 - c. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: High performance grout.
- C. Interior Wall Installation (Wet Walls), Masonry or Concrete:
 - 1. Tile Installation:
 - a. Thin-set mortar; TCNA W202I-18
 - 1) Tile Type: T5
 - b. LHT mortar TCNA W202I-18
 - 1) Tile Type: T3, T4, T6
 - c. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
 - Interior Wall Installations (except wet walls), Metal Studs or Furring:
 - 1. Tile Installation:
 - a. Thin-set mortar on cementitious backer unit; TCNA W202I-18
 - 1) Tile Type: T5
 - b. LHT mortar on cementitious backer unit TCNA W202I-18:
 1) Tile Type: T3, T4, T6
 - c. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
 - d. Grout: High performance grout.
- E. Interior Wall Installations (Wet Walls), Metal Studs or Furring:
 - 1. Tile Installation:
 - a. Thin-set mortar on cementitious backer unit; TCNA W202I-18
 - 1) Tile Type: T5
 - b. LHT mortar n cementitious backer unit TCNA W202I-18
 - 1) Tile Type: T3, T4, T6
 - c. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar over liquid waterproofing.
 - d. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.

END OF SECTION

D.

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

- 1. Acoustical ceiling panels (095113.A01).
- 2. Ceiling suspension systems (095113.A02).
- 3. Edge Molding and Trim (095113.A03).

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 012300, "Alternates" for alternates effecting work of this section.
- 2. Division 26 Sections for electrical requirements.

1.2 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Acoustical Panel: One 6 inch square Sample of each type, color, pattern, and texture.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
 - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - 5. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Submit written certification of compliance with requirements.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system, from ICC-ES.
- E. Product test reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Furnish two, unopened boxes of each type installed.
 - 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
 - 3. Hold-Down Clips: Equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
 - 4. Impact Clips: Equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
 - 5. Single Tee Adapter Clips: Equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Firm with not less than three years of successful experience in installation of acoustical ceilings similar to requirements for this project and which is acceptable to manufacturer of acoustical units, as shown by current written statement from manufacturer.
- B. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Section 01 31 00.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to NVLAP.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
 - A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
 - B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
 - C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
 - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Ceiling products shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations:
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 2. Suspension System: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Glass-Fiber-Based Panels: Made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- C. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface according to ASTM E 795.
- D. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.
 - 1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.
- E. Metal Suspension System Standard: Comply with ASTM C 635.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS (095113.A01)

- A. Recycled Content for Acoustical Panels: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product specified hereinafter or comparable product, meeting specified requirements, by one of the following:
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - b. Certainteed, Saint-Gobain.
 - c. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
 - Metal Suspension Systems, Edge Moldings and Decorative Edge Trim:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - b. Certainteed, Saint-Gobain.
 - c. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
 - d. Gordon, Inc.
 - e. USG Interiors, Inc.; Subsidiary of USG Corporation.
- C. Classification: Provide panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as specified.
- D. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical panels treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.4 ACOUSTICAL CEILING PANELS

2.

- A. Acoustical Ceiling Panel, (095113.A01 **CLG1**): Provide medium textured, square edge lay-in, mineral fiber ceiling panels with the following characteristics:
 - 1. ASTM E 1264 Classification: Type III, Form 2, Pattern C E.
 - 2. Size: 24" x 48" x 7/8".
 - 3. Color: White.
 - 4. Average light reflectance (LR): 0.85.
 - 5. Noise reduction coefficient (NRC): 0.75.
 - 6. Ceiling attenuation class (CAC): 35, minimum.
 - 7. Flame Spread/Fire Resistance: Class A.

- 8. Antimicrobial: BioBlock+ or comparable from other listed manufacturers.
- 9. Humidity Resistance: HumiGuard+ or comparable from other listed manufacturers.
- 10. Product warranty: 30 years.
- 11. Suspension grid type: 15/16 (#2822).
- 12. Basis of Design Product: Provide Armstrong, "Fine Fissured High NRC" #1755 with 15/16" grid or comparable products from manufacturers listed in Article 2.3 of this Section.
- B. Acoustical Ceiling Panel, (095113.A01 **CLG2**): Install lay-in, mineral fiber ceiling panels to match existing as provided by Owner.
- C. Acoustical Ceiling Panel, (095113.A01 CLG3, CLG4): Provide fine textured, square edge lay-in, mineral fiber ceiling panels with the following characteristics:
 - 1. ASTM E 1264 Classification: Type III, Form 2, Pattern C,D.
 - 2. Size:
 - a. Type <u>CLG3</u>: 24" x 24" x 5/8".
 - b. Type <u>CLG4</u>: 24" x 48" x 5/8".
 - 3. Color: White.
 - 4. Average light reflectance (LR): 0.81.
 - 5. Noise reduction coefficient (NRC): 0.50, minimum.
 - 6. Sound blocking (CAC): 30.
 - 7. Flame Spread/Fire Resistance: Class A (UL).
 - 8. Flame Spread/Fire Resistance: Fire Guard.
 - 9. Humidity Resistance: HumiGuard+ or comparable from other listed manufacturers.
 - 10. Durability: Scratch resistance.
 - 11. Product warranty: 30 years.
 - 12. Suspension grid type: 15/16.
 - 13. Basis of Design Product Type **CLG3**): Provide Armstrong "Dune", #1772, or comparable products from manufacturers listed in Article 2.3 of this Section.
 - 14. Basis of Design Product Type **CLG4**): Provide Armstrong "Dune", #1773, or comparable products from manufacturers listed in Article 2.3 of this Section.
- 2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL
 - A. Recycled Content for Suspension Grid: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 60 percent.
 - B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.
 - 1. High-Humidity Finish: Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M requirements for "Coating Classification for Severe Environment Performance" where high-humidity finishes are indicated.
 - C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
 - 1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 or ASTM E 1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - a. Type: Post-installed expansion anchors.
 - b. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (0.005 mm) for Class SC 1 service condition.
 - Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 - 2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635/M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, provide not less than 0.106-inch-diameter wire.

- E. Hanger Rods and Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- F. Hold-Down Clips for Non-Fire-Resistance-Rated Ceilings: For vestibule and corridor ceilings adjacent to exterior doors, provide hold-down clips spaced 2'-0" o.c. on all cross-tees for a radius of 10 feet from center of door.
- G. Impact Clips: In all toilet provide manufacturer's standard impact clip system design to absorb impact forces against lay-in panels.
- H. Hemmed Edge Molding: Provide prefinished edge molding of profiles indicated. Finish to match adjacent suspension grid.
- Fixture Trim: Provide manufacturer's standard fixture trim for fixtures within the 4 by 4 ceiling panels.
 Color to match suspension trim.
- 2.6 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM (095113.A02)
 - A. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; pre-painted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, not less than G30 coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch- wide metal caps on flanges.
 - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
 - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
 - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
 - 4. Cap Material: Steel cold-rolled sheet, except in kitchen and food preparation areas provide aluminum.
 - 5. Cap Finish: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - 6. Basis of Design:
 - a. Armstong "Prelude XL"
 - b. Profile: USG "Donn DX/DXL" as indicated on Material Finish Legend.
- 2.7 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM (095113.A03)
 - A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
 - 1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension
 - systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth
 - and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member. 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration
 - 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

2.8 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints:
 - a. Henkel Corporation; OSI Pro-Series SC-175 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; AIS-919.
 - c. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.
- B. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 - 1. Concealed Joints: Nondrying, non-hardening, non-skinning, non-staining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M and seismic design requirements indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
 - 1. Fire-Rated Assembly: Install fire-rated ceiling systems according to tested fire-rated design.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 - 2. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 - 6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, post-installed mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
 - 7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
 - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
 - 9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 - 10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
 - 11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
 - 1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as indicated on reflected ceiling plans.

- D. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or post-installed anchors.
- E. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
 - 1. At areas indicated, apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
 - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim, unless acceptable to Architect.
- F. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- G. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
 - 1. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
 - 2. For reveal-edged panels on suspension-system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.
 - 3. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
 - 4. Hold-Down Clips for Non-Fire-Resistance-Rated Ceilings: For vestibule ceilings adjacent to exterior doors, provide hold-down clips spaced 2'-0" o.c. on all cross-tees for a radius of 10 feet from center of door.
 - 5. Impact Clips: In all toilet and locker rooms, provide manufacturer's standard impact clip system design to absorb impact forces against lay-in panels.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Resilient base (096513.A01).
- 2. Resilient molding accessories (096513.A06).
- 3. Metal transition strips.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for alternates effecting work of this section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturers' standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long.

1.3 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 65 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE (096513.A01 - RB2)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Roppe; "700 Series" Wall Base or comparable products, meeting specified requirements, which are submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 1. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (thermoplastic).
 - a. Group: I (solid, homogeneous).
 - b. Style: Cove. Refer to Material Finish Legend for locations.
 - 2. Product Characteristics:
 - a. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
 - b. Height: 4 inches as indicated on drawings.
 - c. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
 - d. Outside Corners: Pre-formed.
 - e. Inside Corners: Job formed.
 - f. Colors: Refer to Material Finish Legend for colors.
- 2.2 THERMOSET-RUBBER BASE (096513.A01 RB3, RB4)
 - A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Roppe: "Pinnacle Rubber Wall Base" or comparable product from one of the following:
 - 1. Johnsonite Corporation.
 - 2. Kentile.
 - 3. Mercer Plastics Co, Inc.
 - 4. R.C. Musson Rubber Co.
 - 5. Tarkett.
 - B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TS (rubber, thermoset).
 - 1. Group: 1 (solid, homogeneous).
 - 2. Style: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - C. Product Characteristics **Type RB3**:
 - 1. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
 - 2. Height: 4 inches as indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Type "RBX": 4 inches as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
 - 4. Outside Corners: Pre-formed.
 - 5. Inside Corners: Job formed.
 - 6. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on the Material Finish Legend.
 - D. Product Characteristics **Type RB4**: Match existing base color and profile.

2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY (096513.A06)

- A. Description: Reducer strips for carpet to resilient flooring transitions, nosing for carpet, nosing for resilient flooring, joiner for tile and carpet, and transition strips.
- B. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.
- C. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on Material Finish Legend.

2.4 TRANSITION STRIPS

A. Transition Strips: Refer to details on drawings and Sheet A681 for manufacturers and types.

- B. ADA compliant. Maximum slope 1:2.
- C. Locations: Provide molding accessories and transitions in areas indicated.
- D. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.5 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydrauliccement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and suitable for substrate conditions indicated.
 - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
- D. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Job-Formed Corners:

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

- 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
- 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
 - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.
- 3.5 METAL TRANSITION STRIP INSTALLATION
 - A. Install metal transition strips where indicated. Securely anchor in place with mechanical fasteners as recommended by transition strip manufacturer.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes resilient tile flooring (096519.A01) of the following types:
 - 1. Luxury vinyl floor tile.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for allowances effecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for integral moisture vapor sealing admixture.
 - 3. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for related base and floor transitions.
 - 4. Section 096813 "Tile Carpeting" for related flooring.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
 - 1. Floor patterns and transition strip locations.
 - 2. Layout, colors, widths, and dimensions of game lines and markers.
 - 3. Seam locations for sheet flooring.
- C. Samples for Verification: Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified in manufacturer's standard size, but not less than 6-by-9-inch sections.
- 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. Qualification Data:
 - 1. For qualified flooring Installer.
 - 2. For qualified flooring manufacturer.
 - B. Preparation and Installation Guidelines: For each type of resilient flooring, including current subfloor preparation guidelines in addition to installation guidelines published by flooring manufacturer.
 - C. Slab Moisture Testing Results: Refer to Part 3 of this Section.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Warranty:
 - 1. Manufacturer material warranty.
 - 2. Installer installation warranty.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish one un-opened box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
 - 1. ISO 9001 Certified.
 - 2. ISO 14001 Certified.
 - 3. At least ten years active experience in the manufacture and marketing of indoor resilient flooring.
 - 4. A provider of authorized installer training.
 - 5. Must be competent in techniques required by manufacturer for resilient flooring installation indicated.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.
 - Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required and shall have at least five years' experience.
- C. Mockups/Field Samples: Build mockups/field samples to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups/field samples for floor tile including resilient base and accessories.
 - a. Size: Minimum 50 sq. ft. for each type, color, and pattern in locations directed by Architect.
 - 2. Approval of mockups/field samples does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups/field samples unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- D. Fire Test Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648, Class 1, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storing.
- B. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain temperatures during installation within range recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive flooring 48 hours before installation, during installation, and 48 hours after installation unless longer period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 - 1. After post-installation period, maintain temperatures within range recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
 - 2. Close spaces to traffic during flooring installation.
 - 3. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after flooring installation unless manufacturer recommends longer period in writing.
- B. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Limited Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace resilient flooring that fails within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Material warranty direct from the product manufacture and not a separate or third party insurance provider.
 - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following
 - a. Material manufacturing defects.
 - b. Surface wear and deterioration to the point of wear-through.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

- c. Failure due to substrate moisture exposure not exceeding 5 pounds moisture vapor emission rate when tested according to ASTM F 1869, and 80 percent relative humidity when tested according to ASTM F 2170.
- 3. Warranty Period:
 - a. For materials: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For surface wear: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Limited Warranty: Installer's standard form in which installer agrees to repair or replace sports flooring that fails due to poor workmanship or faulty installation within the specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient tile flooring, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
- 2.2 LUXURY VINYL FLOOR TILE (096519.A010 *RF1 AND RF2*)
 - A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Brushed Lines" by Interface. Comparable products from other manufacturers will be considered, which match color and pattern selected to Architect's satisfaction and, are submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 1. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.
 - a. Class: Class III, printed film vinyl tile.
 - 2. Product Characteristics:
 - a. Thickness: 4.5 mm.
 - 1) Wear layer thickness 22 mil.
 - Size: 9.845 inches by 39.38 inches.
 - 3. Performance Characteristics:
 - a. Static Load Limit: Passes, modified at 1,500 psi when tested according to ASTM F 970.
 - 4. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on Material Color Schedule.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

b.

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydrauliccement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by tile flooring and adhesive manufacturers for each type of tile flooring. Adhesive shall be suitable for substrate conditions involved and compatible with flooring.
 - Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. LVT with Quick Stick pre-applied adhesive 99% R.H., MVER 18, pH12.
- D. Topical Concrete Vapor Sealer: Liquid penetrating type or film-forming type, designed to seal concrete and inhibit moisture transmission through slab. Concrete vapor sealers shall be as recommended by resilient tile flooring contractor based upon successful previous installations and as acceptable to resilient tile flooring manufacturer.
- E. Metal Transition Strips: Provide pre-manufactured transition strips as indicated on Sheet A681, in manufacturer's standard lengths and in longest lengths practical.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design: Product: Provide Gradus "TT35/AFT15" at transitions to carpet, resinous flooring, or vct. Comparable products matching profile and characteristics of specified product will be considered.
 - a. Transition Strip: Provide pre-manufactured two-piece edging.
 - b. Material: PVC-u top and aluminum base.
 - c. Overall Height: 10 mm.

- d. Width: Top 35 mm, base 16 mm.
- e. Color: As selected from manufacturers full range.
- 2. Fasteners: Provide post-installed expansion anchors with Type 304 stainless steel countersunk fasteners.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by carpet tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
 - 4. Moisture Testing (Contractor's Option):
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours, unless a higher rate is accepted by flooring manufacturer in writing.
 - 1) Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than two tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - b. Perform relative humidity test using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 80 percent relative humidity level measurement, unless a higher rate is acceptable to flooring manufacturer.
- C. Concrete Vapor Sealer Application: Prepare surfaces to receive concrete vapor sealer and apply concrete vapor sealer in strict accordance with vapor sealer manufacturer's written instructions to suit slab moisture conditions encountered.
- D. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Fill cracks 1/8 inch wide and wider, fill and level holes and depressions ¼ wide or wider and grind level all protrusions more than 1/32 inch, unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Do not install floor tiles until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
- F. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.

- 1. Lay tiles square with room axis, unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
 - 1. Foor pattern as indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - 2. Lay luxury vinyl tiles with grain running in one direction.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
 - 1. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over flooring. Protect flooring with plywood or hardboard panels to prevent damage from storing or moving objects over flooring.
- D. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank
SECTION 096723 - RESINOUS FLOORING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes seamless resinous flooring systems (096723.A01) with integral base (096723.A02).
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for waterproofing memebrane.
 - 2. Section 012300 "Alternates" for those alternates affecting work of this Section.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - . Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
 - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
 - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.
 - d. Review layout and patterns.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required; in addition to the following:
 - 1. List each material and cross-reference the specific coating, finish system and application. Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For resinous flooring systems, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers".
- B. Samples for Verification: Prior to beginning work, submit samples for each resinous flooring system color, texture and sheen required and as follows:
 - 1. Samples shall be 6 inches square, applied to a rigid backing by Installer for this Project.
 - 2. Resubmit samples as requested until required sheen, color and texture is acceptable to Architect.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: Submit certificates signed by manufacturer certifying that installers comply with specified requirements, in addition to the following:
 - 1. Submit substantiating evidence of experience installing the specific brand of products proposed in similar areas, in addition to meeting Installer Qualification criteria.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For resinous flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an Installer who is certified in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated. Installer shall be/have been trained by flooring system manufacturer with experience in application and installation of systems similar in complexity to those required for this project, in addition to the following:

- 1. Installer shall have a minimum of two (2) years continuous experience under the current company name.
- Installer shall submit a reference list of at least three (3) projects, similar in size and applied system(s), completed in the states of Missouri. Include contact information for General Contractor or Construction Manager and Owner. List types and names of systems installed, each material/component of system(s) installed, quantity installed and dates completed.
- B. Mockups/Field Samples: Build mockups/field samples to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups/field samples in conjunction with the wall tile mock-up installation. Mockup/field sample shall extend to floor to demonstrate transition from wall to floor.
 - 2. Approved mockups/field samples may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components. Include handling instructions and precautions.
- B. Store materials not in actual use in tightly covered containers at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F in a well-ventilated area. Maintain containers in clean condition, free from foreign material and residue.
 - Protect liquid components from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take necessary precautionary measures to ensure workmen and work areas are adequately protected from fire hazards and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing and application of floor systems.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
 - 1. Do not commence work until the building can be maintained at a temperature range between 60 deg F and 90 deg F for 48 hours before, during and 48 hours after application. Broom clean areas (reasonably dust free) and have adequate controlled ventilation.
 - 2. Maintain ventilation in each area indicated to receive resinous flooring until completion of the resinous flooring work in that area.
- B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for 24 hours after application unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.
- D. Surfaces to receive resinous flooring must be acceptable and in accordance with flooring system manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 1. Provide clean, dry, and neutral substrate for resinous flooring application.
 - 2. Notify Owner's Representative in writing of unsuitable surfaces and conditions. Commencement of work implies acceptance of surfaces and working conditions.

1.9 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage resulting from work of this trade. If necessary, mask and/or cover adjacent surfaces, fixtures, cabinetry, equipment, etc. by suitable means.
- B. Post "NO SMOKING" signs while work is in progress and during curing.

1.10 SPECIAL WARRANTY

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Flooring system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Department of Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Flammability: Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.
- C. Slip Resistance: Resinous flooring surfaces shall have the following minimum performance requirements as indicated below.
 - 1. Static Dry Coefficient of Friction: 0.6 minimum per ASTM D2047.
 - 2. Dynamic Wet Coefficient of Friction: 0.45 minimum per ANSI A326.3 or ANSI B101.3.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, body coats, and topcoats, from single source from single manufacturer to ensure material compatibility, chemical and mechanical bond; quality of materials, color and pattern consistency. Obtain secondary materials, including patching and fill material, color chips/flakes and granules, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from manufacturer recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.
- 2.3 RESINOUS FLOORING (096723.A01 FT1)
 - A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with specified requirements, provide DESCO Coatings, Inc; "Cremona TG" with aliphatic urethane topcoat, resinous flooring system or one of the resinous flooring systems listed below.
 - 1. Dur-A-Flex; "DUR-A-Quartz Q11" with alphatic urethane topcoat.
 - 2. Stonhard; "Stonetec ERF" with aliphatic urethane topcoat.
 - 3. Sherwin-Williams Resuflor Quartz TQ with aliphatic urethane topcoat.
 - 4. Tnemec; Series 223 "DECO-Trowel" with aliphatic urethane topcoat.
 - Comparable products from manufacturers listed below and other manufacturers which meet or exceed specified requirements will also be considered when submitted to and accepted by Architect as a substitution prior to bidding only.
 - B. Resinous Flooring System: System shall be a trowel-applied, abrasion-, UV-, impact-, and chemical-resistant, aggregate-filled, and resin-based monolithic floor surfacing designed to produce a seamless floor and integral cove base. System shall be capable of being applied over an existing epoxy resinous floor.
 - C. System Characteristics:
 - 1. Color and Pattern: As noted on Material Finish Schedule.
 - 2. Wearing Surface: Orange-peel texture to match approved sample.
 - a. Slip resistance shall not be less than performance requirements indicated in this Section.
 - 3. Overall System Thickness: Not less than 3/16 inch.
 - D. Primer: Provide manufacturer's recommended primer to suit substrate and resinous flooring system indicated.
 1. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.
 - E. Body Coats:
 - 1. Resin: Epoxy.
 - 2. Formulation Description: 100 percent solids.
 - 3. Type: Clear or colored to suit design mix selected.
 - 4. Application Method: Self-leveling slurry with broadcast aggregates.

- 5. Aggregates: Colored quartz (ceramic-coated silica). a. Quartz aggregate shall be Grade 11.
- F. Topcoats: Sealing or finish coats.
 - 1. Resin: Aliphatic Urethane.
 - 2. Formulation Description: High solids.
 - 3. Type: Clear.
 - 4. Number of Coats: As required to achieve overall system thickness specified and texture selected.
 - 5. Finish Texture and Sheen: Match sample approved by Owner's Representative.
- G. Integral Cove Base: Provide integral coved base of height indicated with 1 inch radiused cove and bullnosed top edge termination. Provide keyed joint where resinous flooring terminates with other materials.
- H. System Physical Properties: Provide resinous flooring system with the following minimum physical property requirements when tested according to test methods indicated:
 - 1. Compressive Strength (Binder): 14,000 psi minimum according to ASTM D 695.
 - 2. Compressive Strength (System): 10,000 psi minimum according to ASTM C 579.
 - 3. Tensile Strength: 2,250 psi minimum according to ASTM C 307.
 - 4. Bond Strength: 400 psi minimum according to ASTM D 4541.
 - 5. Water Absorption: 0.04 percent maximum according to ASTM D 570.
 - 6. Impact Resistance: No chipping, cracking, or delamination and not more than 1/16-inch permanent indentation according to MIL-D-3134J.
 - 7. Resistance to Elevated Temperature: No slip or flow of more than 1/16 inch according to MIL-D-3134J.
 - 8. Abrasion Resistance: 80 mg maximum weight loss according to ASTM D 4060.
 - 9. Hardness: 75-80 Shore D according to ASTM D 2240.
 - 10. Flame Spread/NFPA 101: Class A according to ASTM E 84.
- I. System Chemical Resistance: Test specimens of cured resinous flooring system are unaffected when tested according to ASTM D 1308 for 50 percent immersion in the following reagents for no fewer than seven days:
 - 1. Bleach (3%).
 - 2. Coffee.
 - 3. Hydro peroxide (3%).
 - 4. Nitric acid (10%).
 - 5. Phosphoric acid (20%).
 - 6. Sodium hydrate (40%).
 - 7. Urine.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Reinforcing Membrane: Flexible resin formulation that is recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer for substrate and resinous flooring system indicated and that inhibits substrate cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring.
 - 1. Formulation Description: Manufacturer's standard high solids.
 - a. Provide fiberglass scrim embedded in reinforcing membrane.
- B. Metal Transition Strips: Provide pre-manufactured aluminum edging, 1/8 inch high by 2 inches wide in manufacturer's standard lengths and in longest lengths practical.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: National Guard Products; Model 8132 "Heavy Duty Aluminum Transition Strip". Comparable products matching profile and characteristics of specified product will be considered.
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Schluter Systems; "RENO-Ramp". Comparable products matching profile and characteristics of specified product will be considered.
 - 3. Fasteners: Provide post-installed expansion anchors with Type 304 stainless steel countersunk fasteners. a. Provide all fasteners and accessories necessary for secure and proper installation.
- C. At top of resinous wall base provide the following product. Colors shall match existing at project site as determined by Architect. Height of trim shall match thickness of resinous flooring system.
 - 1. Basis of Design Product: "Jolly" by Schluter.
- D. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.

- E. Joint Sealant: Type recommended or produced by manufacturer of resinous flooring system for type of service and joint condition indicated.
- F. Waterproofing Membrane: When required by manufacturer for a successful installation over project site conditions, provide and install a fluid applied moisture barrier membrane, to prevent excessive moisture/humidity conditions, allowing a fully warranted floor installation.
 - 1. Vapor barrier to allow 100% relative humidity at the floor surface, while maintaining the manufacturer's full warranty.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Contractor shall examine subfloor surfaces to verify all substrates and conditions are satisfactory. A satisfactory subfloor surface is defined as one that is smooth and free from cracks, holes, ridges, curing compounds, and other adhesives and coatings that may inhibit bonding capability of resinous flooring and primer, as well as other defects that may impair performance and appearance.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, dry substrate for resinous flooring application.
 - 1. Areas where flooring is existing, must be cleaned to remove all floor material, adhesives, grease or any residue that may interfere with interfacial adhesion between substrate and new resinous flooring system.
 - 2. Prepare concrete substrates by shot blasting or grinding to achieve surface profile recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, adhesives, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
 - 1. Roughen concrete substrates as follows:
 - a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
 - b. Comply with ASTM C 811 requirements unless manufacturer's written instructions are more stringent.
 - 2. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Moisture testing is not required. However, Contractors at their own expense may, as they deem necessary, verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with application of resinous flooring only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. of slab area in 24 hours.
 - b. Relative Humidity Test: Use in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 80 percent relative humidity level measurement.
 - 4. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Verify that concrete substrates have pH within acceptable range. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Patching and Filling: Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Control Joint Treatment: Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Metal Transition Strips: Install at locations indicated and between resinous flooring and concrete. Transition strip may be used as a screed. Thicken resinous flooring application as necessary so flooring is flush with top of transition strip. Installation shall be in strict accordance with edging manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Proceed with resinous flooring work after subfloor surfaces are satisfactory. Commencement of resinous flooring work is construed as Installer's acceptance of substrate surfaces within a particular area.
 - 1. Coordinate work within this section with adjacent finish work to achieve full coverage of each finish as required by each section.
- B. Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's latest written instructions, employing technically-trained, approved mechanics, to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
 - 1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
 - 2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
 - 3. Expansion and Isolation Joint Treatment: At substrate expansion and isolation joints, comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
 - a. Do not fill moving isolation joints or expansion joints.
 - b. At movement joints, provide membrane isolation strips and reinforcing tape as recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer.
- C. Primer: Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
- D. Reinforcing Membrane: Apply reinforcing membrane to substrate cracks.
 - 1. Fill non-moving control joints with approved elastomeric sealant or full-depth semi-rigid two-component epoxy joint filler, designed specifically for this purpose (use full-depth semi-rigid joint filler when reinforcement of the joint edge s is desirable), or two-component epoxy and filler (epoxy to be same material as flooring).
- E. Troweled or Screeded Body Coats: Apply troweled or screeded body coats in thickness indicated for flooring system. Hand or power trowel and grout to fill voids. When body coats are cured, remove trowel marks and roughness using method recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Grout Coat: Apply grout coat, of type recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer, to fill voids in surface of final body coat.
- G. Topcoats: Apply topcoats in number indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer and to produce wearing surface indicated.
- H. Cure resinous flooring in compliance with flooring manufacturer's directions to prevent contamination during all stages of application.
- I. Finish work shall match approved samples; be uniform in thickness, sheen, color and texture; and be free of defects detrimental to appearance and performance.
- J. Install metal transition strips where resinous flooring abuts other flooring materials. Securely anchor in place with mechanical fasteners as recommended by transition strip manufacturer.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Material Sampling: Owner's Representative may, at any time and any number of times during resinous flooring application, require material samples for testing for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Owner will engage an independent testing agency to take samples of materials being used. Material samples will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
 - 2. Testing agency will test samples for compliance with requirements, using applicable referenced testing procedures or, if not referenced, using testing procedures listed in manufacturer's product data.
 - 3. If test results show applied materials do not comply with specified requirements, pay for testing, remove noncomplying materials, prepare surfaces coated with unacceptable materials, and reapply flooring materials to comply with requirements.
- B. Core Sampling: At the direction of Owner's Representative and at locations designated by Owner's Representative, take one core sample per 1000 sq. ft. of resinous flooring, or portion of, to verify thickness. For each sample that fails to comply with requirements, take two additional samples. Repair damage caused by

coring. Correct deficiencies in installed flooring as indicated by testing.

- C. Touch-up or repair damaged coatings. Touch-up shall not be visibly different. Recoat entire surface if touch-up results are visible, either in sheen, texture or color.
- 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
 - A. Clean resinous flooring prior to Substantial Completion. Use materials and procedures recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer.
 - B. Protect resinous flooring from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer.
 1. Remove any temporary covering prior to cleaning and final inspection.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 096813 - TILE CARPETING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes modular carpet tile (096813.A01).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for waterproofing memebrane.
 - 2. Section 012300 "Alternates" for those alternates affecting work of this Section.
 - 3. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

1.2 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following: a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
 - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
 - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
 - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.
 - d. Review carpet tile layout and patterns.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
 - 2. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
 - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
 - 2. Type of substrate to receive tile carpeting.
 - 3. Type of installation.
 - 4. Pattern of installation.
 - 5. Pattern type, location, and direction.
 - 6. Carpet tile type, color and dye lot.
 - 7. Type, color and location of insets and borders.
 - 8. Type, color and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
 - 9. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
- D. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Sustainable Product Certification: Provide ANSI/NSF 140 certification for carpet products.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
 - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Carpet Tile: Furnish one un-opened box of each carpet tile type, color and pattern for every 5 percent of amount installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Ratings: Where indicated, provide carpet tile identical to those of assemblies tested for fire response according to NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Mockups/Field Samples: Build mockups/field samples to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockups/field samples for carpet tile including accessories.
 - a. Size: Minimum 50 sq. ft. for each type, color, and pattern in locations directed by Architect.
 - 2. Approval of mockups/field samples does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups/field samples unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, runs, dimensional stability, excess static discharge, loss of tuft bind strength, loss of face fiber, and delamination.
 - 3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET TILE (096813.A01)

- Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products specified on drawings or a Α. comparable products meeting specified requirements, having similar colors and patterns as acceptable to Architect with the following characteristics submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 1. Refer to Material Finish Legend for carpet selections including name, manufacturer, and installation pattern.
- В. Carpet Type C2: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Analytic Form" #7633 by J+J Flooring, Inc.
 - Product Construction: Patterned Loop. 1.
 - Fiber Type: Encore SD Ultima with recycled content. 2.
 - Face Weight: 22 oz/yd². 3.
 - 4 Pile Density: 8,509 oz/yd³.
 - 5. Stiches: 10 per inch.
 - Radiant Panel: ASTM E-648 Class 1. 6.
 - 7. Smoke Density: ASTM E-662 \leq 450.
 - Primary Backing: Nexus Modular 8.
 - Soil / Stain Protection: Manufacturer's standard with warranty. 9
 - 10. Color and Pattern: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - 11. Installation Method: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - 12. Size: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
- Carpet Type C2a: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Analytic" #7631 by J+J Flooring, Inc. С
 - 1 Product Construction: Patterned Loop.
 - 2. Fiber Type: Encore SD Ultima with recycled content.
 - 3. Face Weight: 22 oz/yd².
 - 4 Pile Density: 7.818 oz/vd³.
 - Stiches: 10 per inch. 5
 - Radiant Panel: ASTM E-648 Class 1. 6.
 - 7. Smoke Density: ASTM E-662 \leq 450.
 - 8. Primary Backing: Nexus Modular
 - Soil / Stain Protection: Manufacturer's standard with warranty. 9.
 - 10. Color and Pattern: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - Installation Method: As indicated on Material Finish Legend. 11.
 - 12. Size: 18 inches by 36 inches
- D Carpet Type C3: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Detours Ahead" #14722302500 by Interface Product Construction: Tufted Textured Loop. 1
 - Fiber Type: 100 percent Recycled Content Type 6 Nylon.
 - 2.
 - Face Weight: 14 oz/yd². 3.
 - Pile Thickness: 0.14 inches. 4.
 - Pile Density: 3,500 oz/yd³. 5.
 - Stiches: 8.00 per inch. 6.
 - Radiant Panel: ASTM E-648 Class 1. 7.
 - Smoke Density: ASTM E-662 \leq 450. 8
 - Primary Backing: Synthetic GlasBac 9.
 - 10. Soil / Stain Protection: Manufacturer's standard with warranty.
 - 11. Color and Pattern: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - 12. Installation Method: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - 13. Size: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
- 2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES
 - Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or A. recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, non-staining, pressure-sensitive type. Select adhesives suitable В. for substrate conditions and compatible with flooring and backing. Adhesives shall comply with flammability

requirements for installed carpet tile and be recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.

- 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
- 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Adhesive Tape: Tile Carpeting manufacturer's recommended adhesive tape to suit backing type and substrates involved.
- D. Resilient Transition Strips: Refer to Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" and Interior Material Finish Legend for information and products for use at carpet transitions.
- E. Metal Edge/Transition Strips: Extruded aluminum with anodize aluminum finish of profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.
 - 1. For carpet to concrete, provide pre-manufactured aluminum edging, 3/8 inch high by 2-1/2 inches wide in manufacturer's standard lengths and in longest lengths practical.
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product: National Guard Products; Model 417 "Aluminum Carpet Edging". Comparable products matching profile and characteristics of specified product will be considered when submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding. Color and textures shall be as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of custom options.
 - 2. For carpet to resinous flooring and carpet to resilient sheet vinyl transitions, provide pre-manufactured transition strips as indicated on Sheet A681, in manufacturer's standard lengths and in longest lengths practical.
 - a. Basis-of-Design: Product:Gradus "TT35/AFT15". Comparable products matching profile and characteristics of specified product will be considered.
 - 1) Transition Strip: Provide pre-manufactured two-piece edging.
 - 2) Material: PVC-u top and aluminum base.
 - 3) Overall Height: 10 mm.
 - 4) Width: Top 35 mm, base 16 mm.
 - 5) Color: As selected from manufacturers full range.
 - 3. Fasteners: Provide post-installed expansion anchors with Type 304 stainless steel countersunk fasteners.
- F. Topical Concrete Vapor Sealer: Liquid penetrating type or film-forming type, designed to seal concrete and inhibit moisture transmission through slab. Concrete vapor sealers shall be as recommended by tile carpeting Contractor based upon successful previous installations and as acceptable to tile carpeting manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Vaporseal HM Plus" by Dependable Floor Products, or a comparable product acceptable to Architect and carpet tile manufacturer, with the following product characteristics:
 - a. Permeance: Less than 0.1 perms when applied at 11 mills (dry film thickness) per ASTM E96.
 - b. Moisture Barrier for slabs up to 100 percent relative humidity per ASTM F2170 and/or 25 pounds MVER per ASTM 1869.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- B. Painted Subfloors: Perform bond test recommended in writing by adhesive manufacturer.
 - 1. Access Flooring Systems: Verify the following:
 - 2. Access floor substrate is compatible with carpet tile and adhesive if any.
 - 3. Underlayment surface is flat, smooth, evenly planed, tightly jointed, and free of irregularities, gaps greater than 1/8 inch, protrusions more than 1/32 inch, and substances that may interfere with adhesive bond or show through surface.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by carpet tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
 - 4. Moisture Testing of Existing Slabs:
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours, unless a higher rate is accepted by flooring manufacturer in writing.
 - 1) Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than two tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
 - b. Perform relative humidity test using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 80 percent relative humidity level measurement, unless a higher rate is acceptable to flooring manufacturer.
- E. Concrete Vapor Sealer Application: When concrete vapor sealer is required, prepare surfaces to receive concrete vapor sealer and apply concrete vapor sealer in strict accordance with vapor sealer manufacturer's written instructions to suit slab moisture conditions encountered.
 - 1. Concrete vapor sealer shall be applied as base bid for installation of carpet over existing concrete slabs.
- F. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method:
 - 1. At perimeter of each room/area: Glue down; install every tile with full-spread, releasable, pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - 2. In field of room/area (inside glued down perimeter): install tiles with factory-applied releasable, pressuresensitive adhesive strips/tabs.
- C. Installation Layout: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
- D. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.

- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, non-staining marking device.
- H. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- I. Metal Transition Strips: Install at locations indicated and between carpet tile and adjacent finishes. Installation shall be in strict accordance with edging manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
 - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI's "Carpet Installation Standard," Section 20, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 097723 - FABRIC WRAPPED PANELS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:
 1. Shop-fabricated, fabric-wrapped wall panels (097723.A01 – WP1).

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of fabric facing, panel edge, core material, and mounting indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fabric-wrapped wall panels. Include mounting devices and details; details at panel head, base, joints, and corners; and details at ceiling, floor base, and wall intersections. Indicate panel edge and core materials.
 - 1. Include elevations showing panel sizes and direction of fabric weave and pattern matching.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of fabric facing from fabric-wrapped, wall panel manufacturer's full range.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For fabric-wrapped wall panels to include in maintenance manuals. Include fabric manufacturers' written cleaning and stain-removal recommendations.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fabric-wrapped wall panels from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fabric-wrapped wall panels meeting the following as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing per ASTM E 84, Class A.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- D. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- E. Mockup: Build mockup to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials, fabrication, and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as indicated by the architect.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with fabric and fabric-wrapped, wall panel manufacturers' written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature and humidity requirements for shipment, storage, and handling.
- B. Deliver materials and panels in unopened bundles and store in a temperature-controlled dry place with adequate air circulation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fabric-wrapped wall panels until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work at and above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Lighting: Do not install fabric-wrapped wall panels until a permanent level of lighting is provided on surfaces to receive fabric-wrapped wall panels.
- C. Air-Quality Limitations: Protect fabric-wrapped wall panels from exposure to airborne odors such as tobacco smoke, and install panels under conditions free from odor contamination of ambient air.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify locations of fabric-wrapped wall panels and actual dimensions of openings and penetrations by field measurements before fabrication.
 - 1. Verify locations of switch plates and other similar items penetrating fabric-wrapped wall panels.

1.8 WARRANTY

1

2.

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fabric-wrapped wall panels that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Fabric sagging, distorting, or releasing from panel edge.
 - b. Delamination from wall substrate.
 - c. Warping of core.
 - Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wall materials shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Panels shall comply with "Surface-Burning Characteristics" or "Fire Growth Contribution" Subparagraph below, or both, as determined by testing identical products by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 - 2. Fire Growth Contribution: Comply with acceptance criteria of local code and authorities having jurisdiction when tested according to NFPA 265 Method B Protocol or NFPA 286.

2.2 FABRIC-WRAPPED WALL PANELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. CF Stinson

- 2. Conwed.
- 3. Decoustics Limited; a CertainTeed Ceilings company.
- 4. Golterman & Sabo.
- 5. Lamvin, Inc.
- 6. Signature Craft.
- 7. Wall Technology, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.
- B. Fabric-Wrapped Wall Panel (097723.A01): Manufacturer's standard panel construction consisting of fabric facing material laminated to front face, edges, and back edge border of core.
 - 1. Mounting: Back mounted with manufacturer's standard adhesive supplemented with impaling clips, secured to substrate.
 - a. Impaling clips shall be mechanically fastened to substrate.
 - 2. Core: mineral-fiber board.
 - 3. Edge Profile: Square.
 - 4. Corner Detail in Elevation: Square with continuous edge profile indicated.
 - 5. Facing Material (WP1): CF Stinson: Style No. TBD
 - a. Colors as indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 - b. Fire Performance Characteristics: Class A per ASTM E 84.
 - 6. Nominal Overall Panel Thickness:
 - a. 1 inch
 - 7. Panel Width: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 8. Panel Height: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Core Materials:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: Maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 10, respectively; minimum density of 20 lb/cu. ft. (320 kg/cu. m).
 - a. Basis of Design: Provide Micore MC300-SC with coated face as manufactured by USG or a comparable product
 - b. Joint Treatment Material: As recommended by mineral fiber board manufacturer to create smooth uniform joints between core panels that will not telegraph through facing material.
- B. Facing Material: Fabric from same dye lot; color and pattern as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Mounting Devices: Concealed on back of panel, utilize adhesive supplemented with impaling clips as recommended by manufacturer to support weight of panel, and as follows:
 - 1. Adhesives: As recommended by fabric-wrapped, wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. Impaling Clips: Manufacturer's standard.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Use manufacturer's standard construction except as otherwise indicated; with facing material applied to face, edges, and back border of dimensionally stable core; and with rigid edges to reinforce panel perimeter against warpage and damage.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Board Cores: Chemically harden core edges and areas of core where mounting devices are attached.
- C. Facing Material: Apply fabric fully covering visible surfaces of panel; with material stretched straight, on the grain, tight, square, and free from puckers, ripples, wrinkles, sags, blisters, seams, adhesive, or other visible distortions or foreign matter.
 - 1. Square Corners: Tailor corners.
 - 2. Fabrics with Directional or Repeating Patterns or Directional Weave: Mark fabric top and attach fabric in same direction so pattern or weave matches in adjacent panels.
- D. Dimensional Tolerances of Finished Panels: Plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) for the following:

- 1. Thickness.
- 2. Edge straightness.
- 3. Overall length and width.
- 4. Squareness from corner to corner.
- 5. Chords, radii, and diameters.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fabric, fabricated panels, substrates, areas, and conditions, for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of fabric-wrapped wall panels.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fabric-wrapped wall panels in locations indicated with vertical surfaces and edges plumb, top edges level and in alignment with other panels, faces flush, and scribed to fit adjoining work accurately at borders and at penetrations.
 - 1. For monolithic installation, adhere core to wall substrate, treat panel joints and apply liner material to entire surface to receive facing material. Install wall liner, with no gaps or overlaps, to form a smooth wrinkle-free surface for finished installation. Do not begin facing material installation until wall liner has dried.
- B. Comply with fabric-wrapped, wall panel manufacturer's written instructions for installation of panels using adhesive type mounting supplemented with impaling devices indicated. Mount panels securely to supporting substrate.
- C. Align and level fabric pattern and grain among adjacent panels.

3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb and Level: Plus or minus 1/16 inch.
- B. Variation of Panel Joints from Hairline: Not more than 1/16 inch wide.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clip loose threads; remove pills and extraneous materials.
- B. Clean panels on completion of installation to remove dust and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
 1. Concrete.
 - Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
 - 3. Steel and iron.
 - 4. Galvanized metal.
 - 5. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
 - 6. Wood.
 - 7. Gypsum board.
 - 8. Plaster.
 - 9. Miscellaneous mechanical, electrical, plumbing, fire suppression, communication and technology work as delineated in this Section.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for those allowances affecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for unit prices affecting work of this Section.
 - 3. Section 012300 "Alternates" for those alternates related to work of this Section.
 - 4. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming structural steel.
 - 5. Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing" for surface preparation and the application of wood stains and transparent finishes on interior wood substrates.
 - 6. Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for special–use coatings.
- 1.2 DEFINITIONS
 - A. Gloss Level 1 "Matte": Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
 - B. Gloss Level 2 "Flat": Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
 - C. Gloss Level 3 "Eggshell": 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
 - D. Gloss Level 4 "Satin-like": 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
 - E. Gloss Level 5 "Semi-gloss": 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
 - F. Gloss Level 6 "Gloss": 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
 - G. Gloss Level 7 "High Gloss": More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 1. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Where colors are not specifically indicated, submit for each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Label each coat of each Sample.

- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas.
 - 2. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 3. Include color designations.
 - 4. VOC content.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Paint: 1 gallon of each material and color applied.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

2.

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers - Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by The Sherwin-Williams Company, or comparable products from other manufacturers submitted to and accepted by Architect and Owner prior to bidding.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

- 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. VOC Content: For field applications, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits for paints and paint colorants:
 1. Paints and Coatings: Less than 50 g/L.
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, 90 percent of paints and coatings shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. Colors: Where not indicated on Drawings, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 1. Twenty percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.
- E. Material Finish Schedule designations: As indicated on Material Finish Legend.
 1. Provide "flat" sheen for ceilings, unless otherwise specified.
- F. Provide "eggshell" sheen for walls, unless otherwise specified.
- G. Paint Systems: Refer to schedule at end of this Section.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
 - 1. Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
 - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
 - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - 2. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 - 3. Wood: 15 percent.
 - 4. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
 - 5. Plaster: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
- E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, marker boards and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove all surface contamination such as release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Wash previously painted surfaces with an abrasive cleanser and dull in one operation, or wash thoroughly and dull by sanding. Spot prime any bare areas with an appropriate primer.
 - 2. Verify that chemical removal agents (if used) have been neutralized prior to installation of paint products.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove all surface contamination such as oil, grease, loose paint, mill scale, dirt, foreign matter, rust, mold, mildew, mortar, efflorescence and sealers. Wash surfaces with an abrasive cleanser and dull in one operation, or wash thoroughly and dull by sanding. Spot prime any bare areas with an appropriate primer.
 - 1. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Existing Brick Substrates: Remove all surface contamination such as oil, grease, loose paint, mill scale, dirt, foreign matter, rust, mold, mildew, efflorescence and sealers. Wash surfaces thoroughly. Where brick has been previously painted or sealed, wash surfaces with an abrasive cleanser and dull in one operation, or wash thoroughly and dull by sanding. Spot prime any bare areas of previously painted brick with specified primer.
- G. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer, but not less than the following:
 1. SSPC-SP 3.
- H. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- I. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- J. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- K. Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
 - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
 - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
- L. Existing Wood Door Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
 - 2. Repair any major aesthetic and structural imperfections with epoxy hardening compound.
 - 3. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
 - 4. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - 5. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler.

- M. Existing Substrates: Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Prepare substrates in accordance with paint manufacturer's recommendations to ensure adhesion.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to paint manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations.
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
 - 6. Paint exposed air diffusers and grilles same color as adjacent wall or ceiling finish as directed by Architect.
 - 7. Mask off surfaces of doors prior to painting vision lite frames. Clean any excess paint from door surface to so that there is no evidence of excess paint remaining on door face and glass.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
 - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
 - h. Other items as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.
- F. Marking and Identification: Fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers and smoke partitions or any other walls required to have protected openings and penetrations shall be permanently identified with stenciling. Such identification shall:
 - 1. Be located in accessible concealed floor, floor/ceiling or attic spaces;
 - 2. Be located within 15 feet of the end of each wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet measured horizontally along the wall or partition; and
 - Shall include lettering not less than 3 inches in height with a minimum 3/8-inch wide stroke in a contrasting color incorporating the following wording on the first line: "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER – PROTECT ALL OPENINGS".
- G. Green Screen Paint System:
 - 1. Refer to paint manufacturer's installation requirements for items including but not limited to: nap size and type, roller direction during application, storage and handling during application.
 - 2. Apply in three coats at rate recommended by paint manufacturer.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

1

- A. Existing Cementitious Wood-Fiber Wall Panels:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 2 coats Pro-Industrial Acrylic.
- B. New Cementitious Wood-Fiber Wall Panels:
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 2 coats Pro-Industrial Acrylic.
- C. Existing Cementitious Wood Fiber Ceiling Panels:
 - . The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Seal all water stains using primer/sealer recommended by topcoat manufacturer in aerosol.
 - b. 2 coats Pro-Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall.
- D. New Cementitious Wood Fiber Ceiling Panels (099123.A07):
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 2 coats Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall
- E. Concrete Substrates, Wall Surfaces Latex System:
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer.
 - b. 2 coats ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Eggshell
- F. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates, Wall Surfaces Latex System:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - 1) 1 coat Loxon Concrete and Masonry Primer, LX02 Series.
 - 2) 2 coats ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Eggshell
- G. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates, Wall Surfaces Latex System:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - 1) 1 touchup coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer (spot prime bare areas).
 - 2) 2 coats ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Eggshell
- H. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates, Ceiling Surfaces Latex System:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - 1) 1 coat Loxon Concrete and Mason Primer, LX02 Series.

- 2) 2 coats Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall.
- I. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates, Ceiling Surfaces Latex System:
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - 1) 1 touchup coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer (spot prime bare areas).
 - 2) 2 coats Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall.
- J. CMU Substrates Latex System:

1

1.

2.

- The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - 1) 1 touchup coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer (spot prime bare areas).
 - 2) 2 coats ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, Eggshell
- K. CMU Substrates, Wall Surfaces Latex System.
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Block Filler: Pro Industrial Heavy Duty Block Filler, B42W150.
 - 1) at 16.0 mils wet, 8.0 mils dry.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Eg-Shel, B20-2600 Series, eggshell.
 1) at 4.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils dry, per coat.
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company. (For gyms, Corridors, cafeterias, and toilets).
 - a. Block Filler: Pro Industrial Heavy Duty Block Filler, B42W150.
 - 1) at 16.0 mils wet, 8.0 mils dry.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, interior, water based, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Water Based Epoxy, K45-1151 Series, eggshell.
 - 1) at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
- L. CMU Substrates Epoxy System: Refer to Section 099600.
- M. Steel Substrates Non-primed:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat of Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal WB Acrylic Primer.
 - b. 2 coats Pro Industrial WB Alkyd Urethane, semigloss.
- N. Steel Substrates Pre-primed:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat of Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal WB Acrylic Primer.
 - b. 2 coats Pro-Industrial Acrylic.
- O. Steel Hollow Metal Doors and Frames (including doors, frames, metal glass stops, vision lite frames, astragals and metal louvers):
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310 Series.
 - 1) at 5.0 to 10 mils wet, 2.0 to 4.0 mils dry.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Industrial Enamel, Gloss
 - 1) at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
- P. Steel Substrates (exposed metal decking, bar joists and exposed overhead structure) Dryfall. a. 2 coats Speedhide Supertech Acrylic Dryfall.
 - 2. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Top Coat: Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall Flat, B42-181 Series, flat.
 1) at 6.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry.
 - b. Top Coat: Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic DryFall Eg-Shel, B42-82, eggshell.
 - 1) at 6.0 mils wet, 1.9 mils dry.
- Q. Galvanized-Metal Substrates (where not specifically indicated to be painted):
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310 Series.
 - 1) at 5.0 to 10 mils wet, 2.0 to 4.0 mils dry.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Pro Industrial Acrylic Coating, B66-650 Series, semigloss.
 - 1) at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.

- R. Galvanized-Metal Ductwork Substrates:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat of Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal WB Acrylic Primer.
 - b. 2 coats Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall.
- S. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive: Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310 Series.
 - 1) at 5.0 to 10 mils wet, 2.0 to 4.0 mils dry.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Pro Industrial Acrylic Coating, B66-650 Series, semigloss.
 - 1) at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.
- T. Gypsum Board Wall Substrates Latex System:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Prime Coat: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600.
 - 1) at 4.0 mils wet, 1.0 mils dry.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex, B20-2600 Series, eggshell.
 1) at 4.0 mils wet, 1.7 mils) dry, per coat.
 - 2. The Sherwin-Williams Company. (For gyms, Corridors, cafeterias, and toilets).
 - a. Prime Coat: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Primer, B28W2600.
 - 1) at 4.0 wet, 1.0 mils dry.
 - b. Intermediate Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Water Based Epoxy, K45-1151 Series, eggshell.
 - 1) at 4.0 mils wet, 1.5 mils dry, per coat.
- U. Gypsum Board Wall Substrates Epoxy: Refer to Section 099600.
- V. Gypsum Board Wall and Ceiling Substrates indicated to receive Vinyl Wall Graphics prepare per the wallcovering manufacturer's printed recommendations.
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company
 - a. 1 coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer.
 - b. 1 coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC, eggshell.
- W. Gypsum Board Wall and Ceiling Substrates indicated to receive Wall Covering prepare per the wallcovering manufacturer's printed recommendations.
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Roman Adhessives.
 - 1) 1 coat Pro-977 Ultra Prime.
- X. Wood Doors (Existing):

1.

- The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Fill damaged areas and sand smooth.
 - b. Prime Coat: PrepRite ProBlock Int./Ext. Latex Primer-Sealer, B51-600 Seireat 4.0 mils wet, 1.4 mils dry.
 - 1) at 4.0 mils wet, 1.4 mils dry.
 - c. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating, B66-650 Series.
 - 1) at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.
- Y. Wood Trim and Decorative Paneling (Opaque Finish):
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. Prime Coat: PrepRite ProBlock Int./Ext. Latex Primer-Sealer, B51-600 Seireat 4.0 mils wet, 1.4 mils dry.
 - 1) at 4.0 mils wet, 1.4 mils dry.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Pro-Industrial Acrylic Coating, B66-650 Series, semigloss.
 - 1) at 2.5 to 4.0 mils dry, per coat.

END OF SECTION

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028

SECTION 099300 - STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and application of wood stains and transparent finishes on the following substrates:
 - 1. Interior Substrates:
 - a. Dressed lumber (finish carpentry or woodwork).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for those alternates affecting work of this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 3 "Eggshell": 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. Gloss Level 4 "Satin-like": 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. Gloss Level 5 "Semi-gloss": 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. Gloss Level 6 "Gloss": 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 1. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Where colors are not specifically indicated, submit for each type of product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of finish system and in each color and gloss of finish required.
 - Submit Samples on representative samples of actual wood substrates, 8 inches square.
 Apply finish to half of sample.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas.
 - 2. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 3. Include color designations.
 - 4. VOC content.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each finish system indicated and each color selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of finish system and substrate.
 - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft..
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 - 2. Final approval of stain color selections will be based on mockups.

Liberty Public Schools Franklin & A. Doniphan ES Renovations Project No. 23027, 23028 STAINING AND TRANSPARENT FINISHING a. If preliminary stain color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional stain colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply finishes only when temperature of surfaces to be finished and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply finishes when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior finishes in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products The Sherwin-Williams Company, or comparable products listed below:
 - 1. Glidden Professional.
 - 2. PPG Paints.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
 - 3. To the best extent possible, provide products from a single manufacturer.
- B. Stain Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Keynote Designations:
 - 1. Transparent Finish (Natural): (099300.A01).
 - 2. Transparent Finish (Stained): (099300.A02).
- 2.3 WOOD FILLERS
 - A. Wood Filler Paste: MPI #91, as recommended by topcoat manufacturer.
- 2.4 STAINS
 - A. Stain, Interior:
 - 1. Glidden Professional.
 - a. 1 coat Varathane Interior Wood Stain.
 - 2. PPG Paints.

- a. 1 coat DEFT Interior Wood Stain.
 - 1) 1 coat DEFT Water-Based Interior Wood Stain.
- 3. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat Wood Classics Interior Wood Stain or Minwax 250 Wood Stain.
 - 1) For Birch, Maple, and White Oak species, apply Pre-Stain Wood Conditioner by Minwax prior to stain application.

2.5 POLYURETHANE VARNISHES

- A. Varnish, Interior, Polyurethane, Waterborne, Satin (Gloss Level 4):
 - 1. Glidden Professional.
 - a. 2 coats Varathane Interior WB Polyurethane.
 - 2. PPG Paints.
 - a. 2 coats DEFT Interior WB Polyurethane.
 - 1) 2 coats DEFT Interior Water-Based Polyurethane
 - 3. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 2 coats Wood Classics Waterborne Polyurethane Varnish.
- 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
 - A. Testing of Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
 - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample wood finishing materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
 - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
 - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying wood finishes if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying materials from Project site, pay for testing, and refinish surfaces finished with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously finished surfaces before refinishing with complying materials if the two finishes are incompatible or produce results that, in the opinion of the Architect, are aesthetically unacceptable.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Exterior Wood Substrates: 15 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.
- C. Maximum Moisture Content of Interior Wood Substrates: 10 percent, when measured with an electronic moisture meter.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with finish application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Beginning finish application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and finishing.

- 1. After completing finishing operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean and prepare surfaces to be finished according to manufacturer's written instructions for each substrate condition and as specified.
 - 1. Remove dust, dirt, oil, and grease by washing with a detergent solution; rinse thoroughly with clean water and allow to dry. Remove grade stamps and pencil marks by sanding lightly. Remove loose wood fibers by brushing.
 - 2. Remove mildew by scrubbing with a commercial wash formulated for mildew removal and as recommended by stain manufacturer.
- D. Interior Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
 - 2. Apply wood filler paste to open-grain woods, as defined in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual," to produce smooth, glasslike finish.
 - 3. Sand surfaces exposed to view and dust off.
 - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dry.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply finishes according to coating manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for finish and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Finish surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces.
 - 3. Do not apply finishes over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Apply finishes to produce surface films without cloudiness, holidays, lap marks, brush marks, runs, ropiness, or other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing finish application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered materials by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from finish application. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced finished wood surfaces.

3.5 INTERIOR WOOD -FINISH-SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Stained Millwork:
 - 1. 1 coat stain.
 - 2. 2 coats polyurethane varnish.
- B. Varnish, Interior, Polyurethane, Waterborne, Satin (Gloss Level 4):
 - 1. WoodClassics Waterborne Polyurethane Varnish.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 099600 - HIGH PERFORMANCE COATINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:
 - 1. Exterior Substrates:
 - a. Steel.
 - b. Galvanized metal.
 - 2. Interior Substrates:
 - a. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
 - b. Gypsum board.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for those allowances affecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for unit prices affecting work of this Section.
 - 3. Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for general field painting.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 3 "Eggshell": 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. Gloss Level 5 "Semi-gloss": 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. Gloss Level 6 "Gloss": 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. Gloss Level 7 "High Gloss": More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 1. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of coating system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Cross-reference to coating system and locations of application areas.
 - 2. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 3. Color designations.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Coatings: One (1) gallon of each material and color applied.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers - Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by The Sherwin-Williams Company, or comparable products from other manufacturers submitted to and accepted by Architect and Owner prior to bidding.

2.2 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
 - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
 - 3. Products shall be of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.
- B. VOC Content: For field applications, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits for paints and paint colorants:
 - 1. Paints and Coatings: Less than 50 g/L.
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, 90 percent of paints and coatings shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. Colors: Where not indicated on Drawings, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Paint Systems: Refer to schedule at end of this Section.
- F. Material Finish Legend designations:
 - 1. Wall & Ceiling Finishes: 099600.A01, finishes "HP1."

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Coating Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
 - 1. Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If coating materials have already been

delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.

- 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
- 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - 2. Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
 - 3. Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
 - 4. Wood: 15 percent.
 - 5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
 - 6. Plaster: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.
- E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
 - 1. Prepare previously painted surfaces indicated to receive new paint finish in strict accordance with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove all surface contamination such as release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Clean concrete by one of the following methods as recommended by paint manufacturer:
 - a. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 1500 to 4000 psi at 6 to 12 inches.
 - b. Abrasive blast clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
 - 2. Verify that chemical removal agents (if used) have been neutralized prior to installation of paint products.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove all surface contamination such as oil, grease, loose paint, mill scale, dirt, foreign matter, rust, mold, mildew, mortar, efflorescence and sealers. Wash surfaces with an abrasive cleanser and dull in one operation, or wash thoroughly and dull by sanding. Spot prime any bare areas with an appropriate primer.

- 1. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content, alkalinity of surfaces, or alkalinity of mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 100 to 600 psi at 6 to 12 inches.
- F. Existing Pre-Painted CMU Substrates: Clean and prepare as recommended by coating manufacturer.
- G. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- H. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- I. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.
- J. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Coat backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Do not apply coatings over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test coatings for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore coated surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied coating does not comply with coating manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with coating manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. Galvanized Metals, Bollards and Trash Enclosure Framing:
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat Macropoxy 646.
 - b. 1 coat Pro Industrial WB Alkyd Urethane.
- B. Steel Substrates:

1.

- 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat Macropoxy 646-100.
 - b. 1 coat FluoroKem HS.
- 3.7 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE
 - A. Concrete and CMU Substrates Epoxy System (non-wet walls):
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat Loxon Block Surfacer, 18 mils wet, 8 mils dry.
 - b. 2 coats Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy, 1150 Series, single-component,
 - 1) Eggshell
 - B. Concrete and CMU Substrates Epoxy System (wet areas):
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat Pro Industrial Heavy-Duty Block Filler.
 - b. 2 coats Pro Industrial Zero VOC Waterborne Catalyzed Epoxy, two-component,
 - 1) Eggshell
 - C. Gypsum Board Wall Substrates Epoxy:
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Primer.
 - b. 2 coats Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy, 1150 Series, single-component,
 - 1) Eggshell
 - D. Gypsum Board Wall Substrates Epoxy (wet areas):
 - 1. The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Primer.
 - b. 2 coats Pro Industrial Zero VOC Waterborne Catalyzed Epoxy, two-component,
 - 1) Eggshell
 - E. Gypsum Board Ceiling Substrates Epoxy (wet areas):
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat Sherwin Williams Macropoxy 646-100.
 - b. 2 coats Pro Industrial Zero VOC Waterborne Catalyzed Epoxy, two-component,
 - 1) Eggshell
 - F. Existing Tile Substrates and Existing Pre-Painted CMU Substrates:
 - The Sherwin-Williams Company.
 - a. 1 coat Extreme Bond Primer.
 - b. 1 base coat Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy, 1150 Series, single-component, Eggshell
 - c. 2 coats Pro Industrial Zero VOC Waterborne Catalyzed Epoxy, two-component, [eggshell][gloss].

END OF SECTION

1.

This page intentionally left blank
SECTION 101423 - ADA AND CODE SIGNAGE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

1

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - Wayfinding Panel Signage (101423.A01):
 - a. Interior Room signage.
 - b. Custom fabricated polymer plastic signage.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for interior room signage.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."
- B. Signage Contractor: Contractor responsible for the fabrication and installation of signage unless responsibility for fabrication or installation is called out by others in the drawings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Including but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's technical product data for each type of product specified. Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, flame resistance and manufacturing process.
 - 2. Product data shall show compliance with requirements for fire performance characteristics and physical properties.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.
 - 1. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
 - 2. Provide message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.
 - 3. Include fabrication and installation details, and attachments to other work.
 - 4. Include elevations, component details, and attachments to other work for wayfinding signage.
 - 5. Indicate materials and profiles of signage fittings, joinery, finishes, fasteners, anchorages, and accessory items.
 - 6. Field Dimensions shall be obtained, reviewed, and accepted by signage manufacturer prior to submittal of shop drawings.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors available for the following:
 - 1. Aluminum.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Sample from same flitch to be used for the Work, with specified finish applied.
 - 2. Submit full-size samples of wayfinding signage. Quantity and type shall be determined by Architect with intent of one sample per each signage type representative of all types of products indicated.
- E. Sign Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- F. Mockups/Field Samples: Build mockups/field samples to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
- C. Provide written documentation that the braille translation included on the manufacturer's signage provided in this section has been evaluated by the American Foundation for the Blind, and is, in their opinion, correct and compliant with ADAAG.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that employs skilled workers experienced in producing custom-fabricated products similar to those required for this Project and with at least seven years continuous experience under the current company name. Fabricator shall have a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
 - 1. Fabricator shall have completed at least seven (7) similar signage projects having similar requirements within the last four (4) years for each signage type.
- C. Source Limitations for Signs: Obtain each sign type indicated from one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ICC A117.1.
- E. Fire Performance Characteristics: Provide wall coverings with the following surface burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify wall coverings with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting organization.
 - 1. Flame Spread: 5 or less.
 - 2. Smoke Developed: 25 or less.
- F. Accessibility Guidelines: Signage shall comply with ICC A117.1 where applicable. Characters and graphics, including but-not limited to, copy height, letter stroke symbols, materials, and finishes indicated on the Drawings are intended as guidelines for compliance. Implement each applicable ADA guideline. Should conflicts arise, notify the Designer before proceeding.

1.7 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Required parties include the contractor, sub-contractor and architect/designer.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review temporary protection requirements for during and after installation.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interior Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver and install vinyl wall graphics until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces to receive murals is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary or permanent HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

- 1. Maintain a constant temperature not less than 60 deg F in installation areas for at least 10 days before and 10 days after installation.
- B. Lighting: Do not install vinyl wall graphics until permanent level of lighting is provided on the surfaces to receive murals.
- C. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by the vinyl wall graphics manufacturer for full drying and curing.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify recess openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install ADA and Code Signage units until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature at 70 deg F for not less than 72 hours before beginning installation and for the remainder of the construction period.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Use special care in handling to prevent twisting, warping, nicking, and other damage to signage. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification.
- B. Store signage in a well-ventilated area, away from uncured concrete and masonry, and protected from weather, moisture, soiling, abrasion, extreme temperatures, and humidity.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate placement of anchorage devices with templates for installing signs.
- B. For signage furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of metal and polymer finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image colors.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for signs.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. Provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

- B. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with strength and durability properties for each aluminum form required not less than that of alloy and temper designated below.
 - 1. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003-H14, Alloy 5005-H32 or Alloy 6061-T6.
 - 2. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, of alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated.
 - 3. Extrusions: ASTM B221, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- C. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- D. PETG (Polyethylene Terephthalate Glycol) Sheet: ASTM D 5047-17 category as standard with manufacturer for each sign.
 - 1. Tensile Strength: 7,700 lbf/sq. in. per ASTM D 638.
 - 2. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity: 310,000 lbf/sq. in. per ASTM D 790.
- E. Photopolymer Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended photopolymer for producing integral non-laminated raised copy.
- F. Polycarbonate Sheet: Of thickness indicated, manufactured by extrusion process, ASTM C 1349, Appendix X1, Type II (coated, mar-resistant, UV-stabilized polycarbonate), coated on both surfaces with abrasion-resistant coating:
 - 1. Impact Resistance: 16 ft-lbf/in. per ASTM D 256, Method A.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 9000 lbf/sq. in. per ASTM D 638.
 - 3. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity: 340,000 lbf/sq. in. per ASTM D 790.
 - 4. Heat Deflection: 265 deg F at 264 lbf/sq. in. per ASTM D 648.
 - 5. Abrasion Resistance: 1.5 percent maximum haze increase for 100 revolutions of a Taber abraser with a load of 500 g per ASTM D 1044.
- G. Expanded PVC Sheet: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Sintra" by 3A Composites.
 - 1. Material: Moderately expanded closed-cell polyvinyl chloride.
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- H. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.3 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Aluminum Finishes
 - 1. Clear Anodic Finish: Manufacturer's standard Class 1 clear anodic coating, 0.018 mm or thicker, over a satin (directionally textured) mechanical finish, complying with AAMA 611.
- E. Acrylic Sheet Finishes
 - 1. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy and background colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and that are UV and water resistant for five years for application intended.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mounting Methods: Use double sided vinyl tape and silicone adhesive fabricated from materials that are not corrosive to sign materials and mounting surface.
- B. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.
 - 1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 - 2. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
 - a. Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened metal unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Fastener Heads: For nonstructural connections, use oval countersunk screws and bolts with tamperresistant, Allen-head slots unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.
 - 1. Mill joints to tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water penetration.
 - 2. Preassemble signs in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation, in location not exposed to view after final assembly.
 - 3. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.
 - 4. Provide rebates, lugs, and brackets necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Sign Message Panels: Construct sign-panel surfaces to be smooth and to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) measured diagonally from corner to corner.
 - 1. Increase panel thickness or reinforce with concealed stiffeners or backing materials as needed to product surfaces without distortion, buckles, warp, or other surface deformations.

2.6 WAYFINDING PANEL SIGNAGE – ROOM SIGNAGE (101423.A01)

- A. General: Panel signs shall be acrylic or photopolymer signs with aluminum holder for name insert to match existing. Refer to Drawings for existing sign construction.
 - 1. Provide painted edges for solid appearance.
 - 2. Provide white raised numbers and braille, unless otherwise indicated or required by code.
- B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Ad Trends.
 - 2. APCO Signs.
 - 3. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
 - 4. Fast Signs.
 - 5. Gemini.
 - 6. Howard Industries.
 - 7. Innerface Architectural Signage, Inc.
 - 8. Modulex.
 - 9. Nova Polymers.
 - 10. Star Signs.
 - 11. Take Form.
 - 12. 2/90 Sign Systems.
- C. Changeable Message Inserts: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages in the form of slide-in inserts.
- D. Tactile and Braille Sign: Manufacturer's standard process for producing text and symbols complying with ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square-cut edges free from burrs and cut marks; Braille dots with

domed or rounded shape.

- 1. Raised-Copy Thickness: Not less than 1/32 inch.
- E. Subsurface Copy: Apply minimum 4-mil- thick vinyl copy to back face of clear acrylic sheet forming panel face to produce precisely formed opaque image. Image shall be free of rough edges.
- F. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy background colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and are UV and water resistant for five years for application intended.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Sign Types General: Signs shall match existing interior signage to best extent possible in accordance with applicable codes and as acceptable to Architect.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Verify that sign-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate signs.
- C. Verify that anchor inserts are correctly sized and located to accommodate signs.
- D. Verify that items provided under other sections of Work are sized and located to accommodate signs.
- E. Examine supporting members to ensure that surfaces are at elevations indicated or required to comply with authorities having jurisdiction and are free from dirt and other deleterious matter.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- G. Field verify dimensions of all conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.
- B. Wall-Mounted Signs Mounted on Glass: Provide opaque sheet matching sign material and finish onto opposite side of glass to conceal back of sign.
- C. Wall-Mounted Signs on Smooth Surfaces: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
 - 1. Silicone-Adhesive Mounting: Attach signs to irregular, porous, or vinyl-covered surfaces. Where signage is located on exterior surfaces, provide exterior rated adhesive as recommended by signage manufacturer for substrate indicated.
- D. Wall-Mounted Signs on Textured Surfaces: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply. Mount characters using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for character form, type of mounting, wall construction, and condition of exposure indicated. Provide heavy paper template to establish character spacing and to locate holes for fasteners.
 - 1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support

sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

- b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
- E. Vertical Tolerance: Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1m)

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.
- B. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes to components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- D. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean conditions during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 102113 - TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-polymer (HDPE) toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures (102113.A01).
 - 2. Solid-polymer (HDPE) urinal screens (102113.A02).

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
- 2. Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, and similar accessories.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate requirements for blocking, reinforcing, and other supports concealed within walls.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments and urinal screens. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Show layout and size of each toilet compartment.
 - 2. Show layout and size for each urinal screen.
 - 3. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
 - 4. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
 - 5. Show locations of floor drains.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of unit indicated. Include Samples of compartment material involving texture and color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Each type of material, color, texture, and finish required for units, prepared on 6-inch- square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has five years of similar installations.
- B. Source Limitations: For products listed in the Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Guarantee entire installation for a period of <u>two</u> years from date of project Substantial Completion against defects in material and workmanship. Guarantee covers repair or replacement, with no costs to the Owner, of any and all items which become defective within the <u>25-year period</u>.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire Performance: Tested in accordance with, and pass the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 286.
- B. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.
- 2.2 SOLID-POLYMER TOILET COMPARTMENTS (102113.A01)
 - A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Scranton Products, Hiney Hiders "Eclipse" toilet enclosure units or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Accurate Partitions Corporation.
 - 2. Bradley Corporation; Mills Partitions.
 - 3. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
 - 4. Hadrian
 - 5. Partition Systems Incorporated of South Carolina (PSISC).
 - B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor-mounted overhead braced.
 - 1. Compartment Depth and Width: As scheduled and indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Door Width: As scheduled and indicated on the Drawings.
 - 3. Height Above Floor: <u>9 inches</u> (305 mm).
 - 4. Door/Panel Height: As scheduled and indicated on the Drawings.
 - 5. Pilaster Height: As scheduled and indicated on Drawings.
 - C. Urinal-Screen Style: Floor-mounted, overhead braced with continuous wall brackets.
 - D. Door, Panel, Screen, and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, seamless, with eased edges, "no-sightline system" and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material.
 - 1. Material Thicknesses:
 - a. Doors, Pilasters, Panels and Screens: 1 inch.
 - 1) Edge condition: Eased edges, except shiplap at latch stile of door to pilaster to eliminate sightline into toilet compartment.
 - b. Panels: Not less than 1 inch.
 - c. Compartments shall incorporate a lap joint at latch stile of doors and adjacent pilaster, and continuous hinges at hinge stile of door and adjacent pilaster to eliminate sightlines into stalls.
 - 2. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum or stainless-steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-plastic components to hinder malicious combustion.
 - 3. Pilaster shoes shall be 3 inches (76 mm) high, one-piece molded HDPE secured to the pilaster with a stainless-steel tamper resistant Torx head sex bolt.
 - 4. Color and Pattern: One color, pattern and texture in each room.
 - a. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - E. Brackets (Fittings):
 - 1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; extruded aluminum or stainless steel.

2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard design, heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories.
 1. Material: Clear-anodized aluminum or stainless steel.
 - Hinges: Provide 8-inch, "wrap-around" hinges fabricated from aluminum in a bright anodized finish. Hinges shall have field adjustment capability. Hinge shall be self-closing to within 15 degrees of opening. Mount with through-bolts.
 - 3. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
 - a. Coordinate design of door and latch to provide "no-sight line" configuration.
 - b. Type 1 Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard stainless-steel surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Intent is to match existing.
 - c. Type 2 Latch: Manufacturer's standard stainless-steel occupancy indicator latch. Latch to be mounted to the pilaster with integrated function as keeper for in-swinging doors. Latch will provide emergency access through an accessible slotted center pin in the external indicator.
 - 4. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent inswinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
 - 5. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
 - 6. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel or chrome-plated steel or brass, finished to match the items they are securing, with vandal-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- D. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.
- E. High density polyethylene (HPDE), fabricated from polymer resins compounded under high pressure, forming single thickness panel.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Floor-Mounted Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
 - 1. Each pilaster over 3 inches wide shall be anchored to floor with a minimum of two (2) anchors to prevent twisting.
 - 2. Overhead Bracing shall not be installed over open stall areas. At areas where additional overhead support is necessary, consult with architect to provide alternate means of support.

C. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

2.

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
 - 1. Maximum Clearances:
 - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1 inch.
 - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
 - Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with continuous brackets.
 - a. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
 - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Urinal Screens: Attach screens to pilasters and walls with continuous brackets and anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces of compartment systems using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer and provide protection as necessary to prevent damage during remainder of construction period.

3.4 FINAL PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions the ensure toilet compartments and screens are without damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. If any damage occurs, replace unit(s), unless repairs acceptable to Architect can be made.
- C. Should damage occur to partition, door or pilaster in shipping, those damaged items shall be replaced within 30 days.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 102123 - CUBICLE CURTAINS AND TRACK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 1. Curtain tracks, carriers and cubicle curtains (102123.A01)
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for supplementary wood framing and blocking for mounting items requiring anchorage.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include durability, laundry temperature limits, fade resistance, applied curtain treatment and fire-test response characteristics for curtain fabric.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show layout of cubicles, sizes of curtains, number of carriers, anchorage details, and accessories.
 - 2. Include details on blocking above ceiling
- C. Samples for Verification: For curtain fabric, mesh top and curtain carrier.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below.
 - 1. Curtain Carriers and Track End Caps: Provide one set of end caps and one full set of curtain carriers.
 - 2. Curtains: Provide one additional curtain.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Curtains: Provide curtain fabrics with the following characteristics:
 - 1. Launderable to a temperature of not less than 160 deg F.
 - 2. Flame resistant and identical to those that have passed NFPA 701 when tested by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Identify fabrics with appropriate markings of a qualified testing agency.

2.2 CURTAIN SUPPORT-SYSTEM MANUFACTURERS

- A. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include:
 - 1. ADC Hospital Equipment; Division of Automatic Devices Company.
 - 2. C/S General Cubicle.
 - 3. Imperial Fastener Company, Inc.
 - 4. InPro Corporation.
 - 5. Spect-Tex, Inc.

2.3 CURTAIN SUPPORT SYSTEMS

- A. Extruded-Aluminum Curtain Track: Not less than 1-1/4 inches wide by 3/4 inch high; with manufacturer's standard wall thickness.
 - 1. Curved Track: Factory-fabricated, 12 inch radius bends.
 - 2. Finish: Clear anodized.
- B. Curtain Track Accessories: Fabricate from same material and with same finish as track with non-removable end stops.
- C. Curtain Carriers: Two nylon rollers and nylon axle with chrome-plated steel hook.
- D. Exposed Fasteners: Stainless steel.

2.4 CURTAINS

- A. Cubicle Curtain Fabric (102123.A01 <u>F2</u>): Curtain manufacturer's standard, inherently and permanently flame resistant, stain resistant, and antimicrobial.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Maharam "Moderate 2 No. 511519" or comparable product from other manufacturers submitted to and accepted by architect prior to bidding.
 - 2. Pattern and Color: 009 Calming
 - 3. Repeat: 55.25 inch vertical, 18.5 inch horizontal
 - 4. Railroaded.Repeat: 18.5 inch vertical, 55.25 inch horizontal
 - 5. Content: 73% Polyester (flame retardant), 27% Post-consumer Recycled Polyester (flame retardant).
 - 6. Backing: None.
 - 7. Width: 72 inches
 - 8. wWWeight: Not less than 12.7 oz/ly.
- B. Curtain Grommets: Nickel-plated brass; spaced not more than 6 inches o.c; machined into top hem.
- C. Mesh Top: Not less than 20 inch high mesh top of No. 50 nylon mesh
- D. Fabricate curtains as follows:
 - 1. Width: Equal to track length from which curtain is hung plus 10 percent added fullness, but not less than 12 inches added fullness.
 - 2. Length: Equal to floor-to-ceiling height, minus depth of track and carrier at top, and minus clearance above the finished floor as follows:
 - a. Cubicle Curtains: 12 inches.
- E. Seams: Vertical Seams: Not less than 1/2 inch wide, double turned and double stitched.
- F. Bottom Hem: Not less than 1 inch and not more than 1-1/2 inches wide, double thickness and double lockstitched.
- G. Mesh Top: Top hem of mesh not less than 1 inch and not more than 1-1/2 inches wide, triple thickness, reinforced with integral web, and double lock-stitched. Double lockstitch bottom of mesh directly to 1/2 inch triple thickness, top hem of curtain fabric.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install tracks level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Up to 20 feet in length, provide track fabricated from single continuous length.
 - a. Curtain Track Mounting: Surface.
- B. Surface-Track Mounting: Fasten tracks to ceilings at intervals recommended by manufacturer. Fasten tracks to structure at each splice and tangent point of each corner. Center fasteners in track to ensure unencumbered

carrier operation.

- 1. Track Accessories: Install splices, end caps, connectors, end stops, coupling and joining sleeves, and other accessories as required for a secure and operational installation.
- C. Curtains and Curtain Carriers: Provide curtain carriers adequate for 6 inch spacing along full length of curtain plus an additional carrier.
 - 1. Curtains: Hang curtains on each curtain track.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Corner Guards (102600.A03).
 - 2. Impact-Resistant Wall Coverings (102600.A04 WC1)

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for corner trim included in gypsum board installation.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include fire ratings of units recessed in fire-rated walls and listings for door-protection items attached to fire-rated doors.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors available for each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated.
 - 1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.
 - 2. Digital Protective Wallcovering submit a sample of each wall graphic type in the form of small-scale color proofs for each graphic or mural.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below. 1. Corner Guards: 12 inches long.
 - Custom Printed Wall Graphic on Abuse Resistant Wall coverings: Provide sample of wallcovering containing printed graphic using artwork provided by Architect. Before printing, prepare full-color proofs which include a full-scale sample, as well as a reduced sample of the entire graphic for each wall graphic for the Architet's approval. Approved proof will set quality standards for graphic and aesthetic effect.
 - a. Sample size to be no leas that 2'-0" to 4'-0" square or as otherwise indicated.
 - b. Sample area as indicated by Architect during proofs.
 - c. When wall graphic is divided into separate sections, provide separate proof of each section.
 - d. Samples to show color, texture, pattern, and thickness.
 - e. Sample of each product specified.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each impact-resistant wall protection unit to include in maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining optimum condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to plastic finishes and performance.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Include mounting and accessory components. Replacement materials shall be from same production run as installed units.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain impact-resistant wall protection units from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of impact-resistant wall protection units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."
 - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 MOCKUPS

- A. Mockups/Field Samples: Build mockups/field samples, to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Field Samples: Build field sample/mockup of typical wall areas as shown on Drawings.
 - a. Note: Mockup shall be a field sample of corner guard, baseboard, and adjacent areas in Project. Architect and manufacturer's representative will observe installation of first corner guard installation at Architect's selected location.
- B. Field testing shall be performed on field sample areas according to requirements in "Field Quality Control" Article.
- C. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store impact-resistant wall protection units in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
 - 1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F during the period plastic materials are stored.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install impact-resistant wall protection units until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature at 70 deg F for not less than 72 hours before beginning installation and for the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- 2.2 CORNER GUARDS
 - A. Surface-Mounted, Opaque Plastic Corner Guards (102600.A03 <u>CG1</u>): Fabricated from colored polycarbonate plastic sheet; with formed edges, installed with mechanical fasteners to wall construction; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn as necessary to match wall condition. Fabricate in continuous lengths.

- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Construction Specialties; "Acrovyn LG-200", or comparable product from one of the following:
 - 1. Arden Architectural Specialties, Inc.
 - 2. Balco, Inc.
 - 3. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - 4. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
 - 5. Pawling Corporation.
 - 6. Inpro Corporation.
- C. Product Characteristics:
 - 1. Material: Impact resistant Clear Polycarbonate of 16 ft. lbs/inch testeded per ASTM D-256.
 - 2. Length of legs: 2 1/2 inch.
 - 3. 1/32 inch (1.0 mm) radius cover.
 - 4. Height: From top of base to ceiling unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
- 2.3 IMPACT-RESISTANT WALLCOVERINGS (102600.A04 WC1)
 - A. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Sheets Protective Wall Covering" by Korogard or a comparable product with the following criteria proposed to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding.
 - 1. Product Code: WC-40.
 - 2. Material: Engineered PETG (Polyethylene Terephthalate Glycol.
 - 3. Thickness: 0.040" (1.02 mm).
 - 4. Adhesive type: Manufacturer's standard releasable pressure sensitive adhesive.
 - 5. Texture: Suede.
 - 6. Colors: As indicated on the Material Finish Legend.
 - 7. Fire Performance Characteristics: Class A, ASTM E-84.
 - a. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke developed: 450 or less.
 - 8. Impact strength: Provide wall protection components that have been tested in accordance with the applicable provisions of ASTM F476,
 - 9. Size: as indicated on drawings.
 - 10. Accessories:
 - a. Trim Options; as selected from manufacturers full range.
 - b. Silicone sealant for butt joint, per manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 11. Chemical and stain resistance: Provide wall protection system components with chemical and stain resistance in accordance with ASTM D543.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Nonmagnetic stainless-steel metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- B. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- C. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- D. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.
- E. PVC Plastic: ASTM D 1784, Class 1, textured, chemical and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant PVC or acrylicmodified vinyl plastic with integral color throughout.
 - 1. Impact Resistance: Minimum 25.4 ft-lbf/in. of notch when tested according to ASTM D 256, Test Method A.
 - 2. Chemical and Stain Resistance: Tested according to ASTM D 543 and ASTM D 1308.
 - 3. Self-extinguishing when tested according to ASTM D 635.
 - 4. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 5. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

- F. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, but with not less than strength and durability properties specified in ASTM B 221 for Alloy 6063-T5.
- G. PETG (Polyethylene Terephthalate Glycol:
 - 1. Impact Resistance: Minimum 10 kj.m2 when tested according to ISO 180.
 - 2. Chemical and Stain Resistance: Tested in accordance with ASTM D543.
 - 3. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 4. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- H. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 33, unless another grade is required by design loads.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate impact-resistant wall protection units to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
 - Provide surfaces free of chips, dents, and other imperfections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing impact-resistant wall protection system components. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

3.3 INSTALLATION AND CLEANING

- A. General: Install impact-resistant wall protection units plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
 - 1. Install wall protection units in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
 - Provide mounting hardware, anchors, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
 a. Provide anchoring devices to withstand imposed loads.
- B. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories as recommended by corner guard manufacturer.
- C. Impact-Resistant Wall Covering: Install top and edge moldings, corners, and divider bars as required for a complete installation.
 - Install wall protection units in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
 a. Install sheets maintaining continuity of design.
 - 2. Provide mounting hardware, anchors, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
 - a. Provide anchoring devices to withstand imposed loads.
 - b. Install accessories per manufacturers written instructions; edges to be flush, mitered, free of burrs and scratches.
 - 3. Install Protective Wallcovering to walls in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - a. Allow Protective Wallcovering and adhesive to precondition for a minimum of 48 hours at a temperature between 65 F and 75 F before installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Public-use washroom accessories.
 - a. Toilet Tissue Dispenser (102800.A01).
 - b. Paper Towel Dispenser (102800.A02).
 - c. Soap Dispenser (102800.A05).
 - d. Grab Bar (102800.A06).
 - e. Sanitary Napkin Receptor Unit (SNR) (102800.A08).
 - f. Mirror Unit (102800.A10).
 - g. Coat Hook (102800.A15).
- 2. Accessories:
 - a. Under Lavatory guards (102800.A21).
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking required behind fixtures and accessories.
 - 2. Section 102113 "Toilet Compartments".
 - 3. Division 26 for electrical requirements for illuminated mirror units and warm air dryers.
- C. Owner will furnish, and contractor install the following accessories:
 - 1. Toilet tissue dispensers.
 - 2. Paper towel dispensers.
 - 3. Soap dispensers.
- D. Owner will furnish and install the following accessories:
 - 1. Waste receptacles.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
 - 1. Construction details and dimensions.
 - 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
 - 3. Material and finish descriptions.
 - 4. Features that will be included for Project.
 - 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
 - 6. Include electrical characteristics.
- B. Samples: Full size, for each accessory item to verify design, operation, and finish requirements.
 1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
- C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
 - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
 - 2. Identify products using designations indicated.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
 - 1. Where cutouts are required in other work, provide templates, substrate preparation instructions, and directions for preparing cutouts and for installation of anchorage devices.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153/A, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.
- I. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

2.3 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products specified from Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc. or comparable products by one of the following:

- 1. American Specialties, Inc.
- 2. Bradley Corporation.
- B. Toilet Tissue Dispenser (102800.A01 TTD) Provided by Owner, Installed by Contractor.
- C. Paper Towel Dispenser (102800.A02 PTD) Provided by Owner, Installed by Contractor.
- D. Soap Dispenser (102800.A05 SD) Provided by Owner, Installed by Contractor.
- E. Grab Bars GB, VGB, FGB (102800.A06):
 - 1. Bobrick:
 - a. B-6806.99; 36" 42" & 18" at Accessible Toilet Stalls.
 - b. B-6806.99; 18" & B-5861.99 at Shower.
 - c. B-6806.99; Series Wall-to-Floor Bar w/ bottom rail at DFs w/out Alcove.
 - d. FGB: B-4998.99 at Accessible Toilet and Shower Stall.
 - e. B-819298 Drinking Fountain Grab Bar; 33" height, projects 18" from the wall.
 - 2. Bradley:
 - a. 832-2 Series; 36" 42" & 18" at Accessible Toilet Stalls.
 - b. 832-2 Series; 18" & 16"x30" Horizontal Two-Wall Bar at Shower Stall.
 - c. 832-2 Series; Wall-to-Floor Bar w/ bottom rail at DFs w/out Alcove.
 - d. FGB: 8370-107-2 at Accessible Toilet and Shower Stall.
 - 3. ASI:
 - a. 3800-P Series; Type 01 36" 42" & 18" at Accessible Toilet Stalls.
 - b. 3800-P Series; Type 01 18" & Type 60 at Shower Stall.
 - c. 3800-P Series; Type 75 at Drinking Fountains without Alcove.
 - d. FGB: 3413-P at Accessible Toilet and Shower Stall.
- F. Sanitary-Napkin Receptor Unit (102800.A08 SNR):
 - 1. Basis of Design Products:
 - a. Bradley: Model 4721-15 & 4722-15.
 - b. ASI: Model 0473-1A & 0472-1.
 - 2. Mounting: Surface.
 - 3. Door or Cover: Self-closing, disposal-opening cover and hinged face panel with tumbler lockset.
 - 4. Receptacle: Removable.
 - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- G. Mirror Unit (102800.A10 <u>M1, M3</u>):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Products:
 - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.; B-290 Series.
 - b. ASI: Model 0600.
 - 2. Types:
 - a. M1 Shall be 24-inches wide x 36-inches height.
 - b. M3 Shall be 72-inches wide x 36-inches height.
 - 3. Frame Stainless-steel channel, in No.4 satin finish.
 - 4. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
 - a. Concealed wall hanger bracket of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devices requiring a special tool to remove.
 - b. One-piece, galvanized-steel, wall-hanger device with spring-action locking mechanism to hold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
 - 5. Glazing: Provide polished tempered glass mirror in locker rooms and gym facilities. Provide polished nontempered glass mirror in other locations unless noted otherwise.
 - 6. Sizes: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Coat Hook (102800.A15 CH):
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.; B-542 Series.
 - 2. Description: Single hook pin model with concealed mounting. Unit shall be 1-15/16 inch in diameter.
 - 3. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).

2.4 UNDER-LAVATORY GUARDS

A. Under-lavatory Guard (102800.A21):

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: a. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
 - b. Truebro by IPS Corporation.
- 2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
- 3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf when tested according to ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 105613 - METAL STORAGE SHELVING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:1. Four-Post Metal Storage Shelving (105613.A02).

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance for Metal Storage Shelving: Capable of withstanding the loads indicated according to MH 28.1.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For customized metal storage shelving. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Include installation details of connectors, lateral bracing, and special bracing.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Floor Anchors: Galvanized-steel, post-installed expansion anchors. Provide number per unit recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Wall Anchors: Manufacturer's standard, galvanized-steel anchors designed to secure metal storage shelving to adjacent wall. Provide one per shelving unit for each shelving unit adjacent to a wall.

2.2 FOUR-POST METAL STORAGE SHELVING SYSTEM

- A. Open Four-Post Metal Storage Shelving (105613.A02): Factory-formed, field-assembled, freestanding system, designed for shelves to span between and be supported by corner posts, with shelves adjustable over the height of shelving unit. Fabricate initial shelving unit with a post at each corner. Fabricate additional shelving units as add-on units, designed to share two corner posts with initial shelving unit. Provide fixed top and bottom shelves, adjustable intermediate shelves, and accessories indicated.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Tennsco Manufacturing; or equivalent substitute meeting specified requirements.
 - 2. Load-Carrying Capacity per Shelf: Not less than 800 lbs per shelf.
 - 3. Posts: Fabricated from hot-rolled steel of thickness required for load-carrying capacity per shelf and number of shelves. Fabricate in manufacturer's standard hollow T-shapes and angle shapes; with perforations at 1-1/2 inches o.c. to receive shelf-to-post connectors. No holes allowed on face of posts.
 - Add-On Shelf Posts: Fabricated from hot-rolled steel, T-shape; perforated to match main posts and of same thickness.
 - b. Post Base: Adjustable steel floor plate, drilled for floor anchors.

- 4. Bracing: Manufacturer's standard, diagonal cross bracing at back; as required for stability, load-carrying capacity of shelves, and number of shelves.
- 5. Solid-Type Shelves: Fabricated from steel sheet of thickness required for load-carrying capacity per shelf and as follows:
 - a. Fabricate fronts, backs and sides of shelves with 1-7/32 inch high channel formation with return flange over-bent to 120 degrees, with corners lapped and welded.
- 6. Shelf-to-Post Connectors: Provide formed 14 gauge, hot-rolled, pickled steel, 11/16 inch high with flat ears at both ends. Semi-tubular rivets with 7/16 inch diameter heads staked onto ears; double riveted supports. Furnish at least two supports per shelf to meet shelf load carrying specified.
- 7. Unit Dimensions and Number of Shelves: Not less than 36 inches wide by 24 inches deep by 88-1/4 inches high.
- 8. Accessories:
- 9. Finish: Powder coat.
 - a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Shop Fabrication: Prefabricate shelving components in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field fabrication.
- B. Fabricate metal storage shelving square and rigid, with posts plumb and true and shelves flat and free of dents or distortion. Fabricate connections to form a rigid structure, free of buckling and warping.
 - 1. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
 - 2. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications to receive hardware, fasteners, and similar items.
- C. Form metal in maximum lengths to minimize joints.
- D. Form edges and corners free of sharp edges or rough areas. Remove burrs.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to develop strength, minimize distortion, and maintain the corrosion resistance of base metals. At exposed locations, finish welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface. Weld before finishing components to greatest extent possible.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine walls to which metal storage shelving will be attached for properly located blocking, grounds, or other solid backing for attachment of support fasteners.
- B. Install metal storage shelving level, plumb, square, rigid, true, and with shelves flat and free of dents or distortion. Make connections to form a rigid structure, free of buckling and warping.
 - 1. Install exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible.
 - 2. Install braces, straps, plates, brackets, and other reinforcements as needed to support shelf loading and as required for stability.
 - 3. Adjust post-base bolt leveler to achieve level and plumb installation.
 - 4. Anchor shelving units to floor with floor anchors through floor plate. Shim floor plate to achieve level and plumb installation.
 - 5. Connect side-to-side and back-to-back shelving units together.
 - Install shelves in each shelving unit at spacing indicated on Drawings or, if not indicated, at equal spacing.
 a. Four-Post Metal Storage Shelving: Install four clips, one at each post, for support of each shelf; with clips fully engaged in post perforations.

3.2 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erect metal storage shelving to a maximum tolerance from vertical of 1/2 inch in up to 10 feet of height, not exceeding 1 inch for heights taller than 10 feet.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust metal storage shelving so that connectors and other components engage accurately and securely.
- B. Replace metal storage shelving that has been damaged or has deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 122113 - HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 1. Horizontal louver blinds with aluminum slats.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include styles, material descriptions, special feature descriptions and operating instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for horizontal louver blinds, including: elevations, sections, details and dimensions not sown in Product Data. Show installation details, mountings, attachments to other work/adjacent construction and operational clearances.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of horizontal louver blind indicated.
 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For horizontal louver blinds to include in maintenance manuals. Include precautions for cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain horizontal louver blinds through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide horizontal louver blinds with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Flame-Resistance Ratings: Passes NFPA 701.
- C. Product Standard: Provide horizontal louver blinds complying with WCSC A 100.1.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver horizontal louver blinds in factory packages, marked with manufacturer and product name, lead-free designation, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings and in a window treatment schedule.
- B. Store materials off ground in dry enclosed space and under cover.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install horizontal louver blinds until construction and wet and dirty finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

- B. Field Measurements: Where horizontal louver blinds are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operable glazed units' operation hardware throughout the entire operating range. Notify Architect of discrepancies. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- 1.7 WARRANTY
 - A. Submit written guarantee for louver blinds covering workmanship and materials, signed jointly by manufacturer and installer.
 - 1. Louver blind shall have a Life Time warranty.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.1 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS, ALUMINUM SLATS (122113.A01)
 - A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Levolor; Custom Mark 1 Metal Blinds, or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Hunter Douglas.
 - 2. Other manufacturers meeting specified requirements.
 - B. Slats: Aluminum; alloy and temper recommended by producer for type of use and finish indicated; with crowned profile and radiused corners.
 - 1. Width: 1 inch.
 - a. Spacing: 21 mm.
 - 2. Thickness: Not less than 0.008 inch.
 - 3. Finish: One color, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full color offering of standard and custom colors.
 - a. Ionized Coating: Antistatic, dust-repellent, baked polyester finish.
 - C. Headrail: Head rail shall be 1 inch high by 1-1/2 inch wide by 0.025 inches thick u shaped, formed steel or extruded aluminum; long edges returned or rolled; fully enclosing operating mechanisms on three sides and end plugs and the following:
 - 1. Capacity: One blind per headrail.
 - D. Bottom Rail: Formed-steel or extruded-aluminum tube, with plastic or metal capped ends top contoured to match crowned shape of slat; with enclosed ladders and tapes to prevent contact with sill.
 - E. Ladders: Evenly spaced to prevent long-term slat sag.
 - 1. For Blinds with Nominal Slat Width 1 Inch or Less: Braided string.
 - 2. Ladders shall be dyed to match slat color or be a complimentary color acceptable to Architect.
 - F. Lift Cords: Manufacturer's standard.
 - G. Tilt Control: Enclosed worm-gear mechanism, slip clutch or detachable wand preventing over-rotation, and linkage rod, and the following:
 - 1. Tilt Operation: Manual with clear plastic wand.
 - 2. Length of Tilt Control: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 3. Tilt: Full.
 - H. Lift Operation: Manual, with low-friction cord locking mechanism. Mechanism shall be "crash-proof" type and shall lock automatically upon release of cord.
 - 1. Provide blinds with cord control so that blinds can have variable positions.
 - 2. Provide blinds with "ring pulls" in lieu of tassels. Provide with cord of adequate length so that bottom of ring pull is 5'-4" above finished floor. Where headrail is below 6'-0" above finished floor, provide 4" cord length.
 - I. Tilt-Control and Cord-Lock Position: Right and left side of headrail, respectively, unless otherwise indicated.
 - J. Valance: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 1. Finish Color Characteristics: Match color, texture, pattern, and gloss of slats.

- K. Mounting: Wall mounting between jambs, permitting easy removal and replacement without damaging blind or adjacent surfaces and finishes; with spacers and shims required for blind placement and alignment indicated.
 - 1. Provide intermediate support brackets if end support spacing exceeds spacing recommended by manufacturer for weight and size of blind. Mounting brackets and accessories shall be colored to match headrail/valance.
 - 2. Provide receiver clip on bottom of blinds to secure bottom of blind to sill substrate.
- L. Colors, Textures, Patterns, and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLIND FABRICATION

- A. Concealed Components: Non-corrodible or corrosion-resistant-coated materials.
 1. Lift-and-Tilt Mechanisms: With permanently lubricated moving parts.
- B. Unit Sizes: Obtain units fabricated in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 - Blind Units Installed between (inside) Jambs: Width equal to 1/4 inch per side or 1/2 inch total, plus or minus 1/8 inch, less than jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which each blind is installed. Length equal to 1/4 inch, plus or minus 1/8 inch, less than head-to-sill dimension of opening in which each blind is installed.
 - 2. Blind Units Installed outside Jambs: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between blinds of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- C. Installation Brackets: Designed for easy removal and reinstallation of blind, for supporting headrail, valance, and operating hardware, and for hardware position and blind mounting method indicated.
- D. Installation Fasteners: No fewer than two fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal noncorrosive to blind hardware and adjoining construction; type designed for securing to supporting substrate; and supporting blinds and accessories under conditions of normal use.
- E. Color-Coated Finish:
 - 1. Metal: For components exposed to view, apply manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.
- F. Component Color: Provide rails, cords, ladders, and exposed-to-view metal and plastic matching or coordinating with slat color, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install horizontal louver blinds level and plumb and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions, and located so exterior slat edges in any position are not closer than 2 inches to interior face of glass. Install intermediate support as required to prevent deflection in headrail. Allow clearances between adjacent blinds and for operating glazed opening's operation hardware if any.
- B. Jamb Mounted: Install headrail recessed into opening to within 1/2 inch of window frame and flush to head of opening.

3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Adjust horizontal louver blinds to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free of binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.
- B. Clean horizontal louver blind surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that horizontal louver blinds are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- D. Replace damaged horizontal louver blinds that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of roller shades:
 - 1. Manually operated roller shades with single rollers (122413.A01).
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.
 - 2. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing the perimeters of installation accessories for light-blocking shades with a sealant.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations. Show location and type of each roller shade.
 - 1. Include elevations, sections details, and dimensions not shown in Product Data.
 - 2. Include operational clearances, attachments to and relationship to adjoining work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of shadeband material.
 - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.
 - 2. Include 4 inch square, actual samples of each type of shadeband material for Architect's selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of roller shade.
 - 1. Shadeband Material: Not less than 10 inches square. Mark interior face of material if applicable.
 - 2. Roller Shade: Full-size operating unit, not less than 16 inches wide by 36 inches long for each type of roller shade indicated.
 - 3. Installation Accessories: Full-size unit, not less than 10 inches long.
- E. Product Schedule: For roller shades. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of shadeband material.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each type of shadeband material, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods for maintaining roller shades and finishes.
 - 2. Precautions about cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to fabrics, finishes, and performance.
 - 3. Operating hardware.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades through one source from a single manufacturer.
- Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide roller shade band materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 Flame-Resistance Ratings: Passes NFPA 701.
- D. Product Standard: Provide roller shades complying with WCMA A 100.1.
- E. Anti-Microbial Characteristics: 'No Growth' per ASTM G21 results for fungi ATCC9642, ATCC9644 AND ATCC9645.
- F. Field Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer and product name, lead-free designation, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and wet and dirty finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operable glazed units' operation hardware throughout the entire operating range. Notify Architect of discrepancies. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Roller Shades: Full-size units equal to 2 percent of quantity installed for each size, color, and shadeband material indicated, but not fewer than two units.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product for Manually Operated Roller Shades: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide MechoShade Systems, Inc.; "Mecho/5X" or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Draper Inc.
 - 2. Nysan Solar Control Systems.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 MANUALLY OPERATED SHADES WITH SINGLE ROLLERS (122413.A01)

- A. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
 - Bead Chains: Stainless steel with Shock Absorber System.
 - a. Loop Length: Full length of roller shade.
 - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.
 - 1) Provide limit stops with Shock Absorber System reducing chain stress, consisting of a ³/₄" rubber sleeve, 3/8 inch stop beads and washers to prevent shade from being raised or lowered too far.
 - 2) Clutch mechanism: Fabricated from POM thermoplastic with welded 0.354 inch (9 mm) primary steel post with rotational bearing, overrunning design, and positive mechanical engagement of drive mechanism to tube. White or Black color as selected by Architect. Center bead chain placement for right or left hand operation and accommodates side channel with no adjustment of chain location.
 - c. Chain-Retainer Type: Chain tensioner, jamb mounted.
 - 2. Spring Lift-Assist Mechanisms: When recommended by roller shade manufacturer for proper operation of shade, provide manufacturer's standard for balancing roller-shade weight and lifting heavy roller shades.
 - a. Provide for shade bands that weigh more than 10 lb or for shades as recommended by manufacturer, whichever criteria are more stringent.
- B. Rollers: Corrosion-resistant steel or extruded-aluminum tubes of diameters and wall thicknesses required to accommodate operating mechanisms and weights and widths of shade bands indicated without deflection. Provide with permanently lubricated drive-end assemblies and idle-end assemblies designed to facilitate removal of shade bands for service.
 - 1. Roller Drive-End Location: Right side of inside face of shade or left side of inside face of shade as determined by Architect.
 - 2. Direction of Shadeband Roll: Regular, from back of roller.
 - 3. Shadeband-to-Roller Attachment: Manufacturer's standard method.
- C. Mounting Hardware: Brackets or endcaps, corrosion resistant and compatible with roller assembly, operating mechanism, installation accessories, and mounting location and conditions indicated.
- D. Roller-Coupling Assemblies: Coordinated with operating mechanism and designed to join up to three inline rollers into a multiband shade that is operated by one roller drive-end assembly.
- E. Shadebands:

1.

- 1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric.
 - a. Types:
 - 1) Type 1 Light-blocking (blackout) shades: Exposed with endcaps or exposed with endcaps and integral light seal at bottom where it meets the sill of window opening.
- 2. Shadeband Bottom (Hem) Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum.
 - a. Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Installation Accessories:
 - 1. Front Fascia: Aluminum extrusion that conceals front and underside of roller and operating mechanism and attaches to roller endcaps without exposed fasteners.
 - a. Shape: L-shaped.
 - b. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to conceal roller and shadeband when shade is fully open.
 - 2. Exposed Headbox:
 - a. Description: Rectangular, extruded-aluminum enclosure including the following:
 - 1) Front fascia with integral bottom closure.
 - 2) Top and back covers.
 - 3) Endcaps.
 - 4) Removable bottom closure.
 - b. Height: Manufacturer's standard height required to enclose roller and shadeband when shade is fully open, but not less than 3 inches, and not more than 8 inches.
 - 3. Endcap Covers: As required by manufacturer, provide to cover exposed endcaps.
 - 4. Side Channels: With light seals and designed to eliminate light gaps at sides of shades as shades are drawn down. Provide side channels with shadeband guides or other means of aligning shadebands with channels at tops.

- 5. Bottom (Sill) Channel or Angle: With light seals and designed to eliminate light gaps at bottoms of shades when shades are closed.
- 6. Installation Accessories Color and Finish: As selected from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

- A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- B. Light-Blocking Fabric: Opaque fabric, stain and fade resistant.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide MechoSystems; "Equinox 0100 Series", Room Darkening (PVC Free) Shadecloth with Opaque Acrylic Backing or comparable product from other manufacturers meeting specified requirements.
 - 2. Type: Acrylic-coated fiberglass.
 - 3. Thickness: Not less than 0.008 inches.
 - 4. Weight: 0.94 lbs. per square yard.
 - 5. Roll Width: manufacturer's standard widths to suit opening.
 - 6. Orientation on Shadeband: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 7. Features: Washable and with antistatic treatment.
 - 8. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.4 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Description: Roller shade consisting of a roller, a means of supporting the roller, a flexible sheet or band of material carried by the roller, a means of attaching the material to the roller, a bottom bar, and an operating mechanism that lifts and lowers the shade.
- B. Concealed Components: Non-corrodible or corrosion-resistant-coated materials.
 - 1. Lifting Mechanism: With permanently lubricated moving parts.
- C. Unit Sizes: Obtain units fabricated in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 1. Shade Units Installed Outside Jambs: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- D. Installation Brackets: Designed for easy removal and reinstallation of shade, for supporting headbox, roller, and operating hardware and for hardware position and shade mounting method indicated.
- E. Installation Fasteners: No fewer than two fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal noncorrosive to shade hardware and adjoining construction; type designed for securing to supporting substrate; and supporting shades and accessories under conditions of normal use.
- F. Color-Coated Finish: For metal components exposed to view, apply manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.
- G. Colors of Metal and Plastic Components Exposed to View: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Product Safety Standard: Fabricate roller shades to comply with WCMA A 100.1, including requirements for flexible, chain-loop devices; lead content of components; and warning labels.
- I. Unit Sizes: Fabricate units in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 - 1. Between (Inside) Jamb Installation: Width equal to jamb-to-jamb dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch per side or 1/2-inch total, plus or minus 1/8 inch. Length equal to head-to-sill or -floor dimension of opening in which shade is installed less 1/4 inch, plus or minus 1/8 inch.
PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, accurate locations of connections to building electrical system, and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Blocking at roller shade locations shall be confirmed to be 3/4 inch wood blocking or greater prior to installation.
 - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions and located so shade band is not closer than 4 inches to interior face of glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.
 - 1. Opaque Shadebands: Located so shadeband is not closer than 2 inches to interior face of glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.
 - 2. For room darkening (blackout) roller shades, install side channels and bottom hem bar with integral light seal in accordance with roller shade manufacturer's written instructions and as acceptable to Architect.
- B. Roller Shade Locations: Refer to Drawings.

3.3 ADJUSTING, CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.
- B. Clean roller shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- D. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain motor-operated roller shades.

END OF SECTION

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 123200 - MANUFACTURED WOOD CASEWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Plastic-laminate-faced wood cabinets of stock design.
- 2. Base Cabinet (123200.A01).
- 3. File Drawer (123200.A05).
- 4. Sink Base (123200.A10).
- 5. Tall Cabinet (123200.A21).
- 6. Wardrobe (12.3200.A25).
- 7. Wall Cabinet (123200.A31).
- 8. Filler (123200.A81).
- 9. Finished End (123200.A82).
- 10. End Panel (123200.A83).
- 11. Cabinet Locks (123200.A91).
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 012300 "Alternates" for those alternates effecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring manufactured wood casework.
 - 3. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for custom plastic-laminate-clad casework, countertop brackets.
 - 4. Section 092116 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for reinforcements in metal-framed partitions for anchoring casework.
 - 5. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient base applied to manufactured wood casework.
 - 6. Section 123666 "Solid Surfacing Countertops".

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in the AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" apply to the work of this Section.
- Balanced Construction: Where exposed face of a panel is surfaced with high pressure plastic laminate and the opposite (back) surface shall receive a balanced product equal in thickness to the face of the panel.
 Note: Color for interior is not required to match color and pattern of exterior face laminate.
- C. Casework: Modular casework of this Section is that which is pre-manufactured to standard dimensions or sizes. Casework fabricated as part of Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" is that which is custom fabricated to suit a particular project.
- D. Concealed Portions of Cabinets: Surfaces not usually visible after installation, including sleepers, web frames, dust panels, and ends and backs that are placed directly against walls or other cabinets.
- E. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.
- F. Hardwood Plywood: A panel product composed of layers or plies of veneer, or of veneers in combination with lumber core, hardboard core, MDF core, or particleboard core, joined with adhesive, and faced both front and back with hardwood veneers.
- G. Exposed Portions of Cabinets: Surfaces visible when doors and drawers are closed, including bottoms of cabinets more than 48 inches above floor, and surfaces visible in open cabinets and behind glass doors.
 1. Ends of cabinets installed directly against walls or other cabinets shall not be considered as exposed.
- H. Semi-exposed Portions of Cabinets: Surfaces behind opaque doors, such as interiors of cabinets, shelves, dividers, interiors and sides of drawers, and interior faces of doors. Tops of cases 78 inches or more above floor are defined as semi-exposed.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, submit data describing materials, fabrication, hardware accessories, and installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Indicate types, sizes and finishes of cabinets and countertops.
 - 2. Indicate types and locations of hardware.
 - 3. Indicate locations and types of service fittings.
 - 4. Show fabrication details; including locations and sizes for cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures, science equipment and other items installed in casework.
 - 5. Indicate locations of blocking and reinforcements required for installing casework.
 - 6. Include details of utility spaces showing supports for conduits and piping.
 - 7. Show installation details, including field joints and filler panels.
 - 8. Indicate locations of and clearances from adjacent walls, doors, windows, and other building components.
 - 9. As applicable, indicate manufacturer's catalog numbers for casework.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For cabinet finishes and for each type of top material indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: 8-by-10-inch Samples for each type of finish, including top material.
 1. Exposed hardware, one unit for each type.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer. Furnish qualification data for Installer, if different from manufacturer.
- B. Keying Schedule: Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique designations that are coordinated with the Contract Documents.
- C. Certifications: Submit documentation verifying use of "No added formaldehyde" and "marine grade plywood" were incorporated into the work of this Section, as acceptable to and when requested by Architect.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer with not less than seven years of successful experience, under the current company name, in producing manufactured casework similar to that required for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- C. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- D. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project. Installer must have completed projects of similar size and scope to this project in the last 5 years.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain manufactured wood casework from single source from single manufacturer.
- F. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the AWI's and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of casework indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
 - 1. Grade: Custom.
 - Contract Documents contain selections chosen from options in quality standard and additional requirements beyond those of quality standard. Comply with those selections and requirements in addition to quality standard.
- G. Product Designations: Drawings indicate sizes, configurations, and finish material of manufactured wood casework. Other manufacturers' casework of similar sizes and door and drawer configurations, of same finish

material, and complying with the Specifications may be considered as noted below. Refer to Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" and Section 016000 "Product Requirements." 1. Other manufacturers proposing comparable products shall submit the following for Architect's verification

- Other manufacturers proposing comparable products shall submit the following for Architect's verification: a. One full-size finished base cabinet complete with hardware, doors, and drawers.
 - b. One full-size finished wall cabinet complete with hardware, doors, and adjustable shelves.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver manufactured wood casework only after painting, utility roughing-in, and similar operations that could damage, soil, or deteriorate casework have been completed in installation areas. If casework must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions meet requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.
- B. Keep finished surfaces covered with polyethylene film or other protective covering during handling and installation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install manufactured wood casework until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with manufactured wood casework by field measurements before fabrication.
 - 1. Casework manufacturer is responsible for details and dimensions not controlled by job conditions. Show all required field measurements beyond manufacturer's control on shop drawings.
 - 2. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support casework by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of framing and reinforcements in walls and partitions for support of manufactured wood casework.
- B. Coordinate installation of laboratory casework with installation of fume hoods and other laboratory equipment.
- C. Coordinate layout and installation of work of this Section with electrical and plumbing contractors. Coordinate installation so as not to interfere with plumbing and electrical work associated with casework.
- D. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying requirements.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of manufactured wood casework that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Delamination of components or other failures of glue bond.
 - b. Warping of components.
 - c. Failure of operating hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of finishes.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.1 PLASTIC LAMINATE FACED CASEWORK MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers for Plastic-Laminate-Faced Manufactured Casework: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Casework as manufactured by Stevens Industries; Stevens Advantage.
 - 2. Other Manufacturers: Manufacturers list below are required to meet requirements set forth in this Section. Manufacturing procedures may need to be modified for compliance and technical data on casework construction must be submitted for verification. Other manufactures include, but are not limited to:
 - a. TMI Systems Design Corporation.
 - b. Case Systems.
 - c. LSI
 - d. Precision Craft.

2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD CASEWORK

- A. Drawings indicate sizes, configurations, and finish material of manufactured wood casework from Stevens Industries. Models selected include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Base Cabinet (123200.A01): Provide casework
 - a. #10421 Drawer/Door Single RH Base.
 - b. #10422 Drawer/Door Single LH Base.
 - c. #10432 2 Drawer, 2 Door Base Cab. Base.
 - d. #10370 4 Drawer Base.
 - 2. File Drawer (123200.A05):
 - a. File Base Cabinet (12 32 00.A09): Premanufactured unit fabricated to sizes and onfiguration indicated. Unit shall be plastic laminate clad and consist of two letter sized file drawers. Letter file drawers are designed for front-to-back filing. Reference drawings for units to be lockable
 - 1) Basis of Design: Steven's Advantage model #10316.
 - 2) Dimensions: Refer to the drawings.
 - 3. Sink Base (123200.A10).
 - a. #10479 False Front, 2 Door Base Cab. Base.
 - b. #10478 False Front, 1 Door LH Cab. Base
 - 4. ADA Sink Base (123200.A11).
 - a. #10678 ADA Sink Base Casework.
 - 5. Tall Cabinet (123200.A21).
 - a. Tall Cabinet with Adjustable Shelves(123200.A21): Premanufactured unit fabricated to sizes indicated. Unit shall be plastic laminate clad with five shelves, one of which is fixed and the other four adjustable.
 - 1) #25129 2 Door Tall Cabinet
 - 2) #25121 1 Door LH Tall Cabinet
 - 6. Wardrobe (123200.A25).
 - a. Unit is plastic laminate clad with two doors with lock, one fixed shelf and clothes rod (approximately 1/2 width of unit with center divider) five shelves on remaining 1/2 of unit one of which is fixed the other four are adjustable. An 8 inch by 10 inch mirror with pin tray shall be provided on back of door.
 1) #25617 Two Door Cabinet.
 - 7. Wall Cabinet (123200.A31).
 - a. #15121 1 Door Cab LH Adjustable Shelves
 - b. #15129– 2 Door Wall Cab. Adjustable Shelves
 - 8. Wall Shelf (123200.A37).
 - a. Plastic-laminate-clad both faces. Edges to receive 3mm PVC edge banding. Fabricate to configurations indicated. Shelves shall be 1-inch particleboard core with plastic laminate finish and edge banding on all edges. Wall mounted vertical standards and shelf brackets are 12-gauge steel with powder coated factory finish. Standards to allow for 2-inch vertical shelf adjustments. Shelf brackets to have integral cam lock lever for securing to standards.
 - b. Basis of Design: Steven's Advantage model #15402.
 - 9. Filler (123200.A81).
 - a. #10803.
 - b. #10805.

- c. #15803.
- 10. Finished End (123200.A82).
- 11. End Panel (123200.A83).
 - a. #10954.
- 12. Cabinet Locks (123200.A91).
 - a. Drawer and Hinged Door Locks: Provide cam-type locks by COMPX Timberline.
 - b. Provide a minimum of two keys per lock and six master keys.
 - c. Provide locks on all doors and drawers.
 - d. Inactive door shall receive barrel bolt and strike plate.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain plastic-laminate-faced cabinets from single manufacturer.

2.3 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Certified Wood: Wood products shall be certified as "FSC Pure" or "FSC Mixed Credit" according to FSC STD-01-001 and FSC STD-40-004.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made using ultra-low-emitting formaldehyde resins as defined in the California Air Resources Board's "Airborne Toxic Control Measure to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products" or shall be made with no added formaldehyde.
- C. Maximum Moisture Content for Lumber: 7 percent for hardwood and 12 percent for softwood.
- D. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, with no added formaldehyde (NAUF).
- E. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, with no added formaldehyde (NAUF).
 - 1. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- F. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130, with no added formaldehyde (NAUF).
 - 1. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- G. Plastic Laminate: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with NEMA LD 3.
 1. Colors: Refer to Material Finish Legend on drawings for basis of design products.
- H. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.
- I. Edge Banding for Plastic Laminate: Rigid PVC extrusions, through color with satin finish, 3 mm thick at doors, drawer fronts and laminate countertops, 1 mm thick elsewhere.
 - 1. 3mm edge banding shall be machine-applied and set with hot-melt glue.
 - 2. Edge banding colors shall match a solid color of adjacent laminate surface, unless noted otherwise, as determined by Architect. Colors shall not be limited to casework manufacturer's standard stocked colors, but will be selected by Architect from any color group offered by Canplast, Rehau and Doellken-Woodtape.
- J. Edgebanding for Thermoset Decorative Panels: Unless otherwise specified, provide PVC or polyester edge banding complying with LMA EDG-1 and matching thermoset decorative panels.
- K. Adhesives: Use adhesives that meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 CABINET MATERIALS

- A. Exposed Cabinet Materials:
 - 1. Plastic Laminate: Grade HGS for horizontal surfaces and VGS for vertical surfaces.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide specified edge banding on all exposed edges.
- B. Semiexposed Cabinet Materials:
 - 1. Plastic Laminate: Grade VGS.

- a. Provide plastic laminate for semi-exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1) Color for backs of doors and drawers shall match a solid color of that of cabinet box interior, as determined by Architect. Facings shall be balanced as required by AWI construction guidelines for grade level indicated.
- 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide specified edge banding on all semi-exposed edges.
- C. Concealed Cabinet Materials:
 - 1. Thermoset decorative panels.

2.5 DESIGN, COLOR, AND FINISH

- A. Design: Provide manufactured wood casework of the following design:1. Flush overlay.
- B. Thermoset Decorative Panel Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As selected by Architect from casework manufacturer's full range.
- C. Plastic-Laminate Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on Drawings.
- D. PVC Edgebanding Color: As selected from casework manufacturer's full range, including pre-formulated colors.
- E. Solid Surfacing: As noted on drawings. Where not specifically indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 CABINET FABRICATION

- A. Plastic-Laminate-Faced Cabinet Construction: As required by referenced quality standard, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Assembly method for cabinets shall utilize "European" assembly screws (threaded steel dowel pins), similar to Hafele "Confirmat". At manufacturer's option, alternate doweled assembly methods may be used if in accordance with AWI guidelines and requirements for grade level indicated.
 - 2. Cabinets boxes below sinks shall be fabricated from plywood and shall receive white plastic laminate on the interior.
 - 3. Bottoms and Ends of Cabinets, and Tops of Wall Cabinets and Tall Cabinets: 3/4-inch particleboard, plastic-laminate faced on exposed surfaces, thermoset decorative panels on semi-exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Shelves: Thermoset decorative panels; 3/4-inch thick for spans up to 32 inches and 1-inch thick for spans up to 48 inches.
 - 5. Open Shelves: 3/4-inch particleboard, plastic-laminate faced on exposed surfaces for spans up to 32 inches and 1-inch thick for spans up to 48 inches.
 - 6. Backs of Cabinets: 1/2-inch particleboard or 1/4-inch MDF, plastic-laminate faced on exposed surfaces, thermoset decorative panels on semi-exposed surfaces. Backs shall be captured in a 1/2-inch dado and set back 3/4-inch to accommodate 3/4-inch thick nailers.
 - 7. Drawer Fronts: 3/4-inch particleboard, plastic-laminate faced exposed face and balanced backer.
 - 8. Drawer Sub-fronts, Sides and Backs:
 - a. 1/2-inch single-species solid-wood or veneer-core hardwood (Birch) plywood, with glued dovetail or multiple dowel joints.
 - b. 1/2-inch, high density fiberboard, 55 pcf density minimum. All parts glued and mechanically fastened using thermosetting fasteners.
 - c. 1/2-inch, high density melamine composite panels. All parts glued and mechanically fastened using thermosetting fasteners.
 - d. Fabricate file drawers and lateral file drawers of width and depth necessary to accommodate hanging file rack system.
 - 9. Drawer Bottoms: 1/4-inch thermoset decorative panels glued and dadoed into front, back, and sides of drawers. Use 1/2-inch material for drawers more than 24 inches wide.
 - 10. Doors: 3/4-inch particleboard or MDF, plastic-laminate faced.
 - 11. Removable Backs: Provide backs that can be removed from within cabinets at utility spaces.
 - 12. Cabinets Bases: Bases shall be fabricated separate from cabinets (not integral). Fabricate from ³/₄-inch exterior marine grade plywood or preservative-treated 2x4's with marine-grade plywood face. Fabricate in a ladder configuration with plywood fronts and back running continuous for the length of the cabinet. Provide ends, and provide additional runners centered in all cabinets greater than 24 inches wide.

B. Filler Strips: Provide as needed to close spaces between cabinets and walls, between cabinets and floors, ceilings, and indicated equipment. Fabricate from same material and with same finish as cabinets.
 1. Provide top and bottom fillers and corner panels to close gaps and openings.

2.7 CASEWORK HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware, General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard satin-finish, commercialquality, heavy-duty hardware.
 - 1. Use threaded metal or plastic inserts with machine screws for fastening to particleboard except where hardware is through-bolted from back side.
 - 2. Provide caps on fasteners at cabinet interiors in color to match adjacent cabinet finish color.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): 120 degrees of opening, self-closing. Provide two hinges for doors less than 48 inches high, and provide three hinges for doors more than 48 inches high.
 - 1. Basis-of-Design: Blum #71T5580 hinges and Blum hinge plate #174H7100E.
- C. Pulls:

1

- 1. Solid aluminum or chrome-plated wire pulls, fastened from back with two screws. Provide 2 pulls for drawers more than 24 inches wide.
 - a. Basis of Design: Provide Hafele "116.05.931" matt aluminum handle.
 - 1) Diameter: 128mm.
- D. Door Catches: Zinc-plated, dual, self-aligning, permanent magnet catch. Provide 2 catches on doors more than 48 inches high.
- E. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, Type B05091.
 - Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100): Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated, steel ball-bearing slides. Provide with manufacturer's standard metal rear brackets as applicable.
 - a. Basis-of-Design: GSlide Corporation/Knape & Vogt Mgf. Co.; #GS4200.
- F. Hanging File Rails: Manufacturer's standard hanging file rail system. Provide integral system at all base cabinet drawers with dimensions that will accommodate hanging files.
 - 1. At 36" wide base file cabinets, provide rails on front and back for standard legal side filing. Provide two (2) removable crossbars per drawer for optional letter/legal front-to-back filing.
- G. Adjustable Shelf Supports: 2-pin locking plastic shelf rests complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B04013.

PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
 - A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of framing and reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of manufactured wood casework.
 - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 CASEWORK INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install cabinets to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Install level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims. Where manufactured wood casework abuts other finished work, apply filler strips and scribe for accurate fit, with fasteners concealed where practical.
- C. Base Cabinets: Set cabinets straight, level, and plumb. Adjust subtops within 1/16 inch of a single plane. Fasten cabinets to masonry or framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in walls and partitions with fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c. Bolt adjacent cabinets together with joints flush, tight, and uniform. Align similar adjoining doors and drawers to a tolerance of 1/16 inch.
 - 1. Where base cabinets are not installed adjacent to walls, fasten to floor at toe space with fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c. Secure sides of cabinets to floor, where they do not adjoin other cabinets, with not less than

two fasteners.

- D. Wall Cabinets: Hang cabinets straight, level, and plumb. Adjust fronts and bottoms within 1/16 inch of a single plane. Fasten to hanging strips, masonry, or framing, blocking, or reinforcements in walls or partitions. Align similar adjoining doors to a tolerance of 1/16 inch.
 - 1. Fasten through back, near top and bottom, at ends, and not more than 16 inches o.c.
 - 2. Use toggle bolts at hollow masonry.
 - 3. Use expansion anchors at solid masonry.
 - 4. Use No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch penetration at wood hanging strips.
 - 5. Use No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch penetration into wood blocking.
 - 6. Use No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish at metal-framed partitions.
- E. Fasten cabinets to adjacent cabinets and to masonry, framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in walls and partitions to comply with the AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
- F. Install hardware uniformly and precisely. Set hinges snug and flat in mortises unless otherwise indicated. Adjust and align hardware so moving parts operate freely and contact points meet accurately. Allow for final adjustment after installation.
- G. Adjust casework and hardware so doors and drawers operate smoothly without warp or bind. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SHELVING

- A. Securely fasten shelf standards to masonry, partition framing, wood blocking, or reinforcements in partitions.
 - 1. Fasten shelf standards at ends and not more than 12 inches () o.c.
 - 2. Use toggle bolts at hollow masonry.
 - 3. Use expansion anchors at solid masonry.
 - 4. Use self-tapping sheet metal screws in metal framing or metal backing at metal-framed partitions. Do not use wall anchors in gypsum board.
 - 5. Use wood screws sized for 1-inch () penetration into wood blocking.
 - 6. Use toggle bolts at plaster on metal lath.
- B. Install shelf standards plumb and at heights to align shelf brackets for level shelves. Space standards not more than 36 inches o.c.
- C. Install shelving level and straight, closely fitted to other work where indicated.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective work as directed on completion of installation.
- B. Clean finished surfaces, touch up as required, and remove or refinish damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish, as approved by Architect.
- C. Protection: Provide 6-mil plastic or other suitable water-resistant covering over countertop surfaces. Tape to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches o.c. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 123666 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid surface material countertops (123666.A01).
- 2. Solid surface material transaction counters (123666.A02).
- 3. Solid surface material backsplashes and end splashes (123666.A03).
- 4. Solid surface material sills (123666.A05).
- 5. Solid surface material wall caps (123666.A09).
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 012100 "Allowances" for those allowances affecting work of this Section.
 - 2. Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for unit prices affecting work of this Section.
 - 3. Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking as required.
 - 4. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for conceal bracket.
 - 5. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for custom casework.
 - 6. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for countertop sealants.
 - 7. Section 123200 "Manufactured Wood Casework" for premanufactured casework.
 - 8. Division 22 "Plumbing" for non-integral sinks, sinks, and plumbing fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, submit data describing materials, fabrication, hardware accessories, and installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures, as applicable.
 - 1. Show locations and details of joints.
 - 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop with not less than seven years of experience, under the current company name, that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products or manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project. Installer must have completed 7 projects of similar size

and scope to this project in the last 5 years.

- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical countertop, transaction counter, sill and wall cap as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect solid surfacing during transit, delivery, storage and handling to prevent damage, soiling and deterioration.
- B. Do not deliver solid surfacing, until painting, wet work, grinding and similar operations which could damage, soil or deteriorate solid surfacing which have been completed in installation areas

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Where work of this Section is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work. Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication is complete.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support casework by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Solid surfacing subcontractor shall coordinate with the mechanical & electrical contractors to assure proper working clearances, receptacle/fixture locations, and all connection/fittings necessary to function properly.
- B. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops[,transaction counters] or backsplashes.
- C. Coordinate layout and installation of framing and reinforcements in walls and partitions for support of work of this Section.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ICPA SS-1.
 - 1. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
 - 2. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on Material Finish Legend.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, except at countertops with sinks, provide Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.
- D. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Corian Solid Surface or comparable product from an available manufacturer submitted to and accepted by Architect prior to bidding:

2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Configuration:
 - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.

- 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
- 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash, as applicable.
- 4. Sills: Straight, slightly eased at top.
- C. Countertops: 1/2-inch- thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Backsplashes: 1/2-inch- thick, solid surface material.
- E. Fabricate in one piece, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surfacing-material manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
- F. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
 - 2. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in the shop. Ease edge or chamfer edge at sink to countertop connection.
- G. Joints: Fabricate countertops (up to 10 feet in length) without joints.
- H. Joints: Fabricate countertops (greather than 10 feet in length) in sections for joining in field.
 - 1. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.
 - Splined Joints: Where narrow strips of solid surface material between joints occur to form large openings, provide splined joints. Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit.
- I. Cutouts and Holes:
 - 1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop, to best extent possible, using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
 - b. Provide vertical edges, rounded to 3/8-inch radius at juncture of cutout edges with top surface of countertop, slightly eased at bottom, and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
 - c. Provide 3/4-inch full bullnose edges projecting 3/8 inch into fixture opening.
 - 2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for countermounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
 - 3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.
 - 4. Counter-Mounted Cooktops: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for cooktops. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wire-Management Grommets (123666.A11): Circular, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
 - 1. Cable Passage through Grommet for Countertops: 2-1/2-inch OD, molded-plastic grommet with flip top matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage. Color as selected by Architect.
 - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Doug Mockett and Company, Inc.; Model EDP3.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- C. Fasteners: Provide non-corrosive fasteners as required for complete installation of components and assemblies. Type and size shall be as required for conditions, materials and superimposed loads involved.
- D. Accessories: Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for hardware, non-corrosive fasteners, adhesives, sealers, fabrication and finishing.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- C. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- D. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints as specified. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
 - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- E. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- F. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
 - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard and plywood subtops by saturating with varnish.
- H. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 5. Sleeves.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. Plumbing demolition.
 - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 10. Painting and finishing.
 - 11. Concrete bases.
 - 12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
 - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
 - 4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
 - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
 - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Transition fittings.
 - 2. Dielectric fittings.
 - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation with all other trades. Refer to section 230500 'Common Work Results for HVAC', paragraphs 1.3 and 1.4 for specific requirements regarding coordination procedures required.
- B. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.
- C. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- D. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.

- b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
 - 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
 - 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - f. Viking Johnson.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
 - 3. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
 - 4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
 - B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
 - C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
 - D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solventcement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - E. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company.
 - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

1.

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Plastic, carbon steel, or stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw. 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.
- 2.9 GROUT
 - A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.

- 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLUMBING DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following: 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.

- e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
- f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
- g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
- h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
- i. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - . Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.
- 3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION
 - A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.

- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copperphosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
 - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.7 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases a minimum of 4 inches and a maximum of 6 inches deep, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" or "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.9 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.10 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.

- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 220500

SECTION 220523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Bronze angle valves.
- 2. Bronze ball valves.
- 3. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
- 4. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
- 5. Bronze swing check valves.
- 6. Iron swing check valves.
- 7. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
- 8. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
- 9. Iron, center-guided check valves.
- 10. Bronze gate valves.
- 11. Bronze globe valves.
- 12. Iron globe valves.
- 13. Polypropylene valves.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
- 2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
- 3. Division 33 water distribution piping Sections for general-duty and specialty valves for site construction piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
 - B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES
 - A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
 - B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
 - C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
 - D. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
 - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
 - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
 - 4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 10 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
 - 5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.
 - E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
 - 1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
 - 2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
 - F. Valve-End Connections:
 - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
 - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
 - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
 - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

1.

2.

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. NIBCO INC. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - 2. Description:

1.

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Stem: Bronze.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Reduced.

2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - f. DeZurik Water Controls.
 - g. Flo Fab Inc.
 - h. Hammond Valve.
 - i. Kitz Corporation.
 - j. Legend Valve.
 - k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - I. NIBCO INC.
 - m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
 - n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
 - p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: EPDM.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.5 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
 - b. Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - c. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.

1.

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

- d. Victaulic Company.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
 - c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
 - d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
 - e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
 - f. Seal: EPDM.

2.6 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

1

- A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.7 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - 2. Description:

1.

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Composition.
- g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
- h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
- i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- j. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- 2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL
 - A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: a. NIBCO INC.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

2.9 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Resilient Seat:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International, Inc.
 - b. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
 - c. Crispin Valve.
 - d. DFT Inc.
 - e. GA Industries, Inc.
 - f. Hammond Valve.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
 - j. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
 - d. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Seat: EPDM.

2.10 BRONZE GATE VALVES

- A. Class 125, RS Bronze Gate Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Kitz Corporation.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Powell Valves.
 - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.11 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

1.

- A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
 - e. Stem: Bronze.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - g. Packing: Asbestos free.

h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.12 IRON GLOBE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Powell Valves.
 - i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Flanged.
 - e. Trim: Bronze.
 - f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
 - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 - 3. Throttling Service: Globe, ball, or butterfly valves.
 - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with nonmetallic disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, resilient-seat check valves.
 - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 7. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.
- 3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE
 - A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
 - 1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends. Solder joint ball valves allowed up to NPS 3.
 - 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
 - 3. Ball Valves: One piece, reduced port, bronze with bronze trim.
 - 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
 - 5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, RS.
 - 6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic disc.
 - B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
 - 1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
 - 3. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
 - 4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, nonmetallic-to-metal seats.
 - 5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
 - 6. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.
 - 7. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, resilient seat.
 - 8. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION 220523

SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for plumbing system piping and equipment:
 - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
 - 4. Metal framing systems.
 - 5. Fiberglass strut systems.
 - 6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 7. Fastener systems.
 - 8. Pipe stands.
 - 9. Pipe positioning systems.
 - 10. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
- 2. Division 21 Section "Water-Based Fire-Suppression Systems" for pipe hangers for fire-suppression piping.
- 3. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
- 4. Division 22 Section "Vibration for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
 - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 4. Powder-actuated fastener systems.
 - 5. Pipe positioning systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers. Include Product Data for components.
 - 2. Metal framing systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 3. Fiberglass strut systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 4. Pipe stands. Include Product Data for components.
 - 5. Equipment supports.

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- Α. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code-Steel;" AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel;" and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following: Β.
 - 1.
 - 2.
 - AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel." AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum." AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel." 3.
 - ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX. 4.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- Α. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers 1 specified.
- 2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
 - Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Α. Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
 - Β. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc. 1.
 - Bergen-Power Pipe Supports. 2.
 - 3. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 4. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 - 5. Empire Industries. Inc.
 - 6. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - 7. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.
 - 8. Grinnell Corp.
 - GS Metals Corp. 9.
 - National Pipe Hanger Corporation. 10.
 - PHD Manufacturing, Inc. 11.
 - PHS Industries, Inc. 12.
 - 13. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
 - 14. Tolco Inc.
 - 15. Pre-approved equal.
 - C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

Α. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- Α. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.
- Β. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries. 1.

- 2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; ERISTRUT Div.
- 3. GS Metals Corp.
- 4. Power-Strut Div.; Tyco International, Ltd.
- 5. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- 6. Tolco Inc.
- 7. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
- 8. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
- 2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS
 - A. Description: 100-psig-minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 - 2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - 3. PHS Industries, Inc.
 - 4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
 - 5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - 6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
 - 7. Pre-approved equal.
 - C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.
 - D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.
 - E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
 - F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
 - G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
 - e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - f. Powers Fasteners.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS
- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.
- 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
 - A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.

2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS
 - A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
 - B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
 - C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
 - D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
 - E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
 - F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - 10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
 - 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 - 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 - 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 - 16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 - 17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 - 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 - 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 - 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 - 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 - 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 - 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 - 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 - 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 - 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 - 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 - 11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 - 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 - 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 - 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 - 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 - 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 - 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
 - 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 - 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 - 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 - 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.

- 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.
- 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION
 - A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
 - B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
 - C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on fieldassembled metal framing systems.
 - D. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - E. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
 - F. Pipe Positioning System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for plumbing fixtures.
 - G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
 - H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
 - I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
 - J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
 - K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- N. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:

1

- Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches ong and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
- 6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
- 7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 220529

SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Equipment labels.
- 2. Warning signs and labels.
- 3. Pipe labels.
- 4. Stencils.
- 5. Valve tags.
- 6. Warning tags.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch; stainless steel, 0.025-inch; aluminum, 0.032-inch; or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: White.
 - 3. Background Color: Black.

- 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (.
- 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Red.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch; stainless steel, 0.025-inch; aluminum, 0.032-inch; or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.

- 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.
 - 2. Provide framed ready-to-hang water valve shut-off location directory.

2.5 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire or reinforced grommet and wire or string.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.
- 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION
 - A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
 - B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 2 inches, round.
 - b. Hot Water: 2 inches, round.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Natural or green.
 - b. Hot Water: Natural or green.
 - 3. Letter Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Black or white.
 - b. Hot Water: Black or white.

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties.
 - 3. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
 - 4. Detail application of field-applied jackets and fitting covers.
- C. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content and chemical components.
 - Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that product complies with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.6 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on piping segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS
 - A. Comply with requirements in "Plumbing Piping Insulation Schedule" for where insulating materials shall be applied.
 - B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
 - C. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - b. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL.
 - D. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MASTICS

1

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use.
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

- a. Childers Brand; CP-50 AHV2.
- b. Foster Brand; 30-36.
- c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
- d. Pre-approved equal.
- 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
- 5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Joint Sealants for Flexible Elastomeric Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-76.
 - b. Foster Brand; 30-45.
 - c. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
 - 5. Color: White or gray.
 - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 - 4. Color: White.
 - 5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 3. Color: White.
 - 4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

- a. ABI; 428 AWF ASJ.
- b. Avery Dennison Corporation; Fasson 0836.
- c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
- d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
- e. Pre-approved equal.
- Width: 3 inches.

2.

1.

- 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
- 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
- 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
- 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
- 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Width: 2 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

A. Staples for Hot Service Only: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

2.10 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
 - b. Plumberex.
 - c. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
 - A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, no penetrations of the insulation shall occur at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections. Seal joints and seams with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.

- 3. Nameplates and data plates.
- 4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION
 - A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
 - B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 - 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 - 8. For services, except for flexible elastomeric, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 - 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
 - C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
 - D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

- 1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
- 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
- 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
- 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
- 5. Finish exposed surfaces with a PVC jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
 - 4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
 - 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 - 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
 - A. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
- 2. Encasement for piping.
- 3. Specialty valves.
- 4. Flexible connectors.
- 5. Escutcheons.
- 6. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
- 7. Wall penetration systems.

B. Related Section:

1. Division 22 Section "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.

C. Reference Documents:

- 1. ASTM F 2389-06 Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems.
- 2. CSA B137.11 Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications.
- 3. NSF/ANSI 14 Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials.
- 4. NSF/ANSI 61 Drinking Water Systems Components Health Effects.

D. Definitions:

1. Definitions shall be in accordance with local plumbing codes and ASTM F 2389.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following products:
 - 1. Specialty valves.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Flexible connectors.
 - 5. Backflow preventers and vacuum breakers.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
 - 8. Water penetration systems.
 - 9. Piping.
- B. Water Samples: Specified in "Cleaning" Article.
- C. Coordination Drawings: For piping in equipment rooms and other congested areas, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Fire-suppression-water piping.
 - 2. Domestic water piping.
 - 3. Compressed air piping.
 - 4. HVAC hydronic piping.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.
- C. Material shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
- D. Material shall comply with manufacturers specifications.
- E. Special Engineered products shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, or Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of water service without Architect's, Construction Manager's, or Owner's written permission.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

6.

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
 - 1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
 - 2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
 - 3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
 - 4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
 - 5. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
 - 2) NIBCO INC.
 - 3) Viega; Plumbing and Heating Systems.
 - 4) Pre-approved equal.
 - b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end.

c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber O-ring seal in each end. Copper-Tube Extruded-Tee Connections:

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) T-DRILL Industries Inc.
 - 2) Pre-approved equal.
- b. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.
- 7. Grooved-Joint Copper-Tube Appurtenances:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Anvil International.
 - 2) Shurjoint Piping Products.
 - 3) Victaulic Company.
 - 4) Pre-approved equal.
 - b. Copper Grooved-End Fittings: ASTM B 75 copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.
 - c. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water, and bolts and nuts.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
 1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 1. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
 - 2. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
 - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 1. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
 - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
 - 2. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron. a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- D. Color: Black or natural.

2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty metal valves.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves, drain valves, backflow preventers, and vacuum breakers.

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
- b. Dresser, Inc.; Dresser Piping Specialties.
- c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
- d. JCM Industries.
- e. Romac Industries, Inc.
- f. Smith-Blair, Inc; a Sensus company.
- g. Viking Johnson; c/o Mueller Co.
- h. Pre-approved equal.

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

B. Dielectric Unions:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
 - d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
 - b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1

- Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
 - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
- E. Dielectric Couplings:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corporation.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Galvanized-steel coupling.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Female threaded.

- d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.
- F. Dielectric Nipples:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
 - d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 - 2. Flexicraft Industries.
 - 3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
 - 4. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 - 5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 - 6. Mercer Rubber Co.
 - 7. Metraflex, Inc.
 - 8. Proco Products, Inc.
 - 9. Tozen Corporation.
 - 10. Unaflex, Inc.
 - 11. Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company.
 - 12. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
 - 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 - 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
 - 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

2.10 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
- B. One Piece, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with setscrews.
- C. One Piece, Deep Pattern: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
- D. One Piece, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with setscrew.
- E. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- F. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with concealed hinge, setscrew.
- G. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- H. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

2.11 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Fabricated of cast iron, and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- F. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.
- G. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.12 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Calpico, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex, Inc.
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, used to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or stainless steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, or stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.13 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EARTHWORK
 - A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
- H. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- I. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- N. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- O. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- P. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- Q. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- R. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- S. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
- T. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
- U. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

- E. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- F. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- G. Copper-Tubing Grooved Joints: Roll groove end of tube. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join copper tube and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for roll-grooved joints.
- H. Ductile-Iron-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join ductile-iron pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe, cut-grooved joints.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- J. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 - 1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
 - 2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.
- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.
- E. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for calibrated balancing valves.

3.5 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

3.6 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.7 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump and in suction and discharge manifold connections to each domestic water booster pump.
- B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.

3.8 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Install vinyl-coated hangers for PEX piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: 32 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
- G. Install hangers for vertical PEX piping every 48 inches
- H. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
 - 2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for connection sizes.
 - 4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.10 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- B. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
 - 2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chromeplated finish.
 - 3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece or split casting, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - 4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - 5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, cast brass.
 - 6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

3.11 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
- F. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
- G. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants.
- H. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals specified in this Section.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
- J. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
 - 1. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Molded PE, molded PVC, or steel pipe.
 - 2. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Steel pipe or stack sleeve fittings.
 - a. Extend sleeves 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - b. For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 3. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Molded PE, molded PVC, or steel pipe.
 - 4. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
 - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Cast-iron wall pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
 - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
 - d. Do not use sleeves when wall penetration systems are used.
 - 5. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
 - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.

- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestop materials and installations.
- 3.12 SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION
 - A. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
 - B. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.13 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall penetration systems in new, exterior concrete walls.
- B. Assemble wall penetration system components with sleeve pipe. Install so that end of sleeve pipe and face of housing are flush with wall. Adjust locking devices to secure sleeve pipe in housing.

3.14 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Piping Inspections:
 - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Piping Tests:

- 1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
- 2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- 3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- 4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
- 6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.16 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 - 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 - 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 - 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.17 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 - 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 - 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.18 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K or ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:

- 1. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.
- 2. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- or compact-pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- G. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- H. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 5 to NPS 8, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed or soldered joints.
 - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

3.19 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated memory-stop balancing valves.
 - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 221116

SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
 - 1. Vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Backflow preventers.
 - 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 4. Balancing valves.
 - 5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
 - 6. Strainers.
 - 7. Outlet boxes.
 - 8. Hose bibbs.
 - 9. Wall hydrants.
 - 10. Drain valves.
 - 11. Water hammer arresters.
 - 12. Air vents.
 - 13. Trap-seal primer valves.
 - 14. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
 - 2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
 - 3. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Filtration Equipment" for water filters in domestic water piping.
 - 4. Division 22 Section "Healthcare Plumbing Fixtures" for thermostatic mixing valves for sitz baths, thermostatic mixing-valve assemblies for hydrotherapy equipment, and outlet boxes for dialysis equipment.
 - 5. Division 22 Section "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
 - 6. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains and Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. NSF Compliance:

- 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
- 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

1

2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
 - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - i. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 - 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
 - 4. Body: Bronze.
 - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 - 6. Finish: Rough bronze or chrome plated where in public view.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Legend Valve.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Prier Products, Inc.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - k. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
 - 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
 - 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 - 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated or rough bronze where in public view.
- C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 - 5. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.
- D. Laboratory-Faucet Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1035.

- 3. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8 matching faucet size.
- 4. Body: Bronze.
- 5. End Connections: Threaded.
- 6. Finish: Chrome plated.
- E. Spill-Resistant Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1056.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1012.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Body: Bronze.
 - 5. End Connections: Union, solder joint.
 - 6. Finish: Rough bronze.
- B. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 - 5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through; vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet; or vertical where space constraints require, flow.
 - 8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.
- C. Double-Check Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 - 5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

- 7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
- 8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Beverage-Dispensing-Equipment Backflow Preventers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1022.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
 - 5. Body: Stainless steel.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- E. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1024.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Body: Bronze with union inlet.
- F. Carbonated-Beverage-Dispenser, Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Lancer Corporation.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1032.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
 - 5. Body: Stainless steel.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- G. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1048 and FMG approved or UL listed.
 - 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
 - 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 - 5. Body: Cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved.
 - 6. End Connections: Flanged.
 - 7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through; vertical inlet, horizontal center section, and vertical outlet; or vertical flow where space constraints require.
 - 8. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
 - b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.
- H. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

1.

- c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
- d. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1052.
- 3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
- 4. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
- 5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.
- I. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Flomatic Corporation.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.3 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

- A. Water Regulators:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div. for 4" valves and larger, no exceptions allowed.
 - b. Wilkins, Cla-Val, Febco, or Conbraco for valves smaller than 4", no other manufacturer's allowed. Standard: ASSE 1003.
 - Standard: ASSE 1003.
 Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
 - 4. Body: Bronze with chrome-plated finish for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
 - 5. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
 - 6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
- B. Water Control Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CLA-VAL Automatic Control Valves.
 - b. Flomatic Corporation.
 - c. OCV Control Valves.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Ames Fluid Control Systems.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Watts ACV.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description: Pilot-operation, diaphragm-type, single-seated main water control valve.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig minimum with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating. Include small pilot-control valve, restrictor device, specialty fittings, and sensor piping.
 - Main Valve Body: Cast- or ductile-iron body with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating; or stainless-steel body.
 - a. Pattern: Angle- or globe-valve design.
 - b. Trim: Stainless steel.
 - 5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

2.4 BALANCING VALVES

1.

- A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
 - d. TAC Americas.
 - e. Taco, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory setting indicator.
 - 3. Body: Brass or bronze.

- 4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
- 5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Flo Fab Inc.
 - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. TAC Americas.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2.
- C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
 - i. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
 - 4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
 - 5. Body: Copper alloy.
 - 6. Port: Standard or full port.
 - 7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
 - 9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
 - 10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.5 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

- A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDAapproved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.020 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.045 inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.10 inch.
 - 6. Drain: Pipe plug.

2.6 OUTLET BOXES

- A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. IPS Corporation.
 - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Oatey.
 - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - g. Symmons Industries, Inc.
- h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
- j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
- k. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Mounting: Recessed.
- 3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
- 4. Faucet: Combination, valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water, valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
- 5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
- 6. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
- 7. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
- 8. Drain Hose: One 48-inch-long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. IPS Corporation.
 - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Oatey.
 - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Mounting: Recessed.
- 3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
- 4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
- 5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.7 HOSE BIBBS

- A. Hose Bibbs:
 - 1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
 - 2. Body Material: Bronze.
 - 3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
 - 4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
 - 5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 - 6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
 - 8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
 - 9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze or chrome or nickel plated.
 - 10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
 - 11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
 - 12. Operation for Service Areas: Operating key.
 - 13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
 - 14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
 - 15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.8 WALL HYDRANTS

- A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Prier Products, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.

- 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 4. Operation: Loose key.
- 5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
- 6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
- 7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
- 9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- 10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- 12. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.
- B. Vacuum Breaker Wall Hydrants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 - b. Mansfield Plumbing Products LLC.
 - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Prier Products, Inc.
 - e. Smith, Jay. R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1019, Type A or Type B.
 - 3. Type: Freeze-resistant, automatic draining with integral air-inlet valve.
 - 4. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
 - 5. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
 - 6. Operation: Loose key.
 - 7. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
 - 8. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 - 9. Outlet: Exposed with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

2.9 POST HYDRANTS

- A. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Post Hydrants:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - b. Prier Products, Inc.
 - c. Simmons Manufacturing Co.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
 - 3. Type: Nonfreeze, exposed-outlet post hydrant.
 - 4. Operation: Loose key.
 - 5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
 - 6. Casing: Bronze with casing guard.
 - 7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
 - 8. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
 - 9. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
 - 10. Vacuum Breaker: Nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
 - 11. Operating Key(s): Two with each loose-key-operation wall hydrant.

2.10 DRAIN VALVES

- A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:
 - 1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.

- 3. Size: NPS 3/4.
- 4. Body: Copper alloy.
- 5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- 6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
- 7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
- 8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
- 9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.11 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

- A. Water Hammer Arresters:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. PPP Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
 - 3. Type: Metal bellows or copper tube with piston.
 - 4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.12 AIR VENTS

- A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:
 - 1. Body: Bronze.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 125-psig minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F.
 - 3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
 - 4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
 - 5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
 - 6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.
- B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:
 - 1. Body: Stainless steel.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig minimum pressure rating.
 - 3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
 - 4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
 - 5. Size: NPS 3/8 minimum inlet.
 - 6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
 - 4. Install backflow preventer between 12" above floor and 60" above floor so it is easily accessible without the use of a ladder.

- C. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install water control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with globe valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- E. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- F. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 - 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
 - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- G. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- H. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- I. Install hose stations with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with thermometer on outlet.
 - 1. Install shutoff valve on outlet if specified.
 - 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified. Install 2-by-4-inch fireretardant-treated-wood blocking wall reinforcement between studs. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
- J. Install ground hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.
- K. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. of concrete block at grade.
- L. Install nonfreeze, nondraining-type post hydrants set in concrete or pavement.
- M. Install freeze-resistant yard hydrants with riser pipe set in concrete or pavement. Do not encase canister in concrete.
- N. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- O. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
 - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
 - 4. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
 - 5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
 - 6. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
 - 7. Reduced-pressure-detector, fire-protection backflow-preventer assemblies.
 - 8. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.

- 9. Water pressure-reducing valves.
- 10. Calibrated balancing valves.
- 11. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
- 12. Manifold, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
- 13. Photographic-process, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
- 14. Primary water tempering valves.
- 15. Outlet boxes.
- 16. Hose stations.
- 17. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
- 18. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
 - A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, double-check backflow-prevention assembly and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
 - B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, and vent piping inside the building:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Special pipe fittings.
- B. Related Sections include the following:1. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
 - 2. Sanitary Sewer, Force-Main Piping: 150 psig.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 1. Sovent Drainage System: Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
- C. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute and shall be listed by NSF International.
- C. CISPI Hubless Couplings (CISPI 310) shall be marked with NSF International.

- D. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSFtubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- PART 2 PRODUCTS
- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
 - A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.
- 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS
 - A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- 2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS
 - A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class; manufactured by AB&I, Charolotte, or Tyler.
 - B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.
- 2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS
 - A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301. manufactured by AB&I, Charolotte, or Tyler.
 - B. Sovent Stack Fittings: ASME B16.45 or ASSE 1043, hubless, cast-iron aerator and deaerator drainage fittings.
 - C. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
 - 1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) ANACO.
 - 2) Mission Rubber Co.
 - 3) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
 - 4) Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) ANACO/Husky SD 4000.
 - 2) Clamp-All Corp.-125.
 - 3) Pre-approved equal.
 - 3. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) MG Piping Products Co.
 - 2) Pre-approved equal.

2.5 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Standard Weight or Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
- B. Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, threaded, cast-iron drainage pattern.
- C. Pressure Fittings:
 - 1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.

- 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
- 3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, standard pattern.
- 4. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- 5. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125, galvanized.
- D. Grooved-Joint Systems:

1

- Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Anvil International.
 - b. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.
 - c. Victaulic Company.
 - d. Ward Manufacturing, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Fittings: ASTM A 47/A 47M, galvanized, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106, galvanized-steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, galvanized, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
- 3. Grooved-End, Steel-Piping Couplings: AWWA C606, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for water, and bolts and nuts.

2.6 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
 1. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, drawn temper.
 - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 - 2. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 - 3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- 2.7 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS
 - A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
 1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, socket type, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
 - B. Solvent Cement and Adhesive Primer:
 - 1. Use PVC solvent cement that has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Use adhesive primer that has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.8 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Flexible, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - d. Mission Rubber Co.
 - e. NDS, Inc.
 - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Sleeve Materials:
 - a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - b. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
 - c. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- B. Expansion Joints: Two or three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve(s) with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and

assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - b. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - c. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Wall-Penetration Fittings: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and flexing sections for up to 20-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. SIGMA Corp.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.

2.9 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008inch minimum thickness.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXCAVATION
 - A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping shall be the following:
 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
- D. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 15 and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- E. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, Type L; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
- F. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.
 - 2. Grooved-end steel pipe, grooved-joint system fittings and couplings, and grooved joints.
- 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION
 - A. Sanitary sewer piping outside the building is specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Sanitary Sewers."
 - B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."

- C. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- D. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary force-main piping.
- E. Install underground, steel, force-main piping. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- F. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600. Install buried piping inside the building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to sanitary sewer piping outside the building with restrained joints. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
 Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- G. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- H. Install underground, ductile-iron, special pipe fittings according to AWWA C600.
 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- I. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- J. Install wall-penetration fitting at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
- K. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- L. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and longsweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- M. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- N. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- O. Install engineered soil and waste drainage and vent piping systems as follows:
 - 1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Sovent Drainage System: Comply with ASSE 1043 and sovent fitting manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 3. Reduced-Size Venting: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- P. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- Q. Install ABS soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2661.
- R. Install PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- S. Install underground ABS and PVC soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.

T. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- C. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
- D. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- E. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Grooved Joints: Assemble joint with keyed coupling, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
 - 1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping NPS 2 and smaller.
 - 2. Install gate valve for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.
- D. Backwater Valves: Install backwater valves in piping subject to sewage backflow.
 - 1. Horizontal Piping: Horizontal backwater valves. Use normally closed type, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Floor Drains: Drain outlet backwater valves, unless drain has integral backwater valve.
 - 3. Install backwater valves in accessible locations.
 - 4. Backwater valve are specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 6: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- G. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 7. NPS 6: 12 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 8. NPS 8 to NPS 12: 12 feet with 7/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- I. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 2: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 96 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- J. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 10 feet.
- K. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- L. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- M. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
 - 1. Sanitary Sewer: To exterior force main or sanitary manhole.
 - 2. Sewage Pumps: To sewage pump discharge.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221316

SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sanitary drainage piping specialties:
 - 1. Backwater valves.
 - 2. Cleanouts.
 - 3. Floor drains.
 - 4. Trench drains.
 - 5. Channel drainage systems.
 - 6. Roof flashing assemblies.
 - 7. Through-penetration firestop assemblies.
 - 8. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
 - 9. Flashing materials.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
 - 1. Grease interceptors.
 - 2. Grease removal devices.
 - 3. Oil interceptors.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for frost-resistant vent terminals.
 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.

1.

1

2.1 BACKWATER VALVES

- A. Horizontal, Cast-Iron Backwater Valves:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - Standard: ASME A112.14.1.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected piping.
 - 4. Body: Cast iron.
 - 5. Cover: Cast iron with bolted or threaded access check valve.
 - 6. End Connections: Hub and spigot or hubless.
 - 7. Type Check Valve: Removable, bronze, swing check, factory assembled or field modified to hang closed or open for airflow unless subject to backflow condition.
 - 8. Extension: ASTM A 74, Service class; full-size, cast-iron, soil-pipe extension to field-installed cleanout at floor; replaces backwater valve cover.

B. Drain-Outlet Backwater Valves:

- Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfr. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - c. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet.
- 3. Body: Cast iron or bronze made for vertical installation in bottom outlet of floor drain.
- 4. Check Valve: Removable ball float.
- 5. Inlet: Threaded.
- 6. Outlet: Threaded or spigot.
- C. Horizontal, Plastic Backwater Valves:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Canplas LLC.
 - b. IPS Corporation.

SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- c. NDS Inc.
- d. Oatey.
- e. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
- f. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
- h. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Size: Same as connected piping.
- 3. Body: ABS or PVC.
- 4. Cover: Same material as body with threaded access to check valve.
- 5. Check Valve: Removable swing check.
- 6. End Connections: Socket type.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

- A. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
 - 4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
 - 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head plug.
 - 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
 - 7. Closure: Stainless-steel plug with seal.
- B. Metal Floor Cleanouts:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. Oatey.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - h. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - i. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - j. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast-iron soil pipe with cast-iron ferrule; heavy-duty, adjustable housing; or threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
 - 4. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
 - 5. Outlet Connection: Threaded
 - 6. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket; or brass plug with tapered threads.
 - 7. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads, set-screws or other device.
 - 8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
 - 9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round or square in tiled areas.
 - 10. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy in Service, Equipment and Warehouse Areas or Medium Duty.
 - 11. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy in Service, Equipment and Warehouse Areas or Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
 - 12. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.
 - 13. Size: Same as connected branch.
 - 14. Housing: Stainless steel.
 - 15. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
 - 16. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.
- C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.

SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
- d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
- e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
- f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
- g. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
- 4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head; drilled-and-threaded, brass, or cast-iron plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
- 7. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with countersunk screw.

2.3 FLOOR DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: a. Josam Company: Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB. Inc.
 - c. Prier Products. Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

- A. Trench Drains:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
 - 3. Material: Ductile or gray iron.
 - 4. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.5 CHANNEL DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Stainless-Steel Channel Drainage Systems:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.
 - b. MultiDrain Systems.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Flo-Thru Operation.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Type: Modular system of stainless-steel channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.3.1, for trench drains.
 - b. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, stainless-steel with level invert.
 - 1) Dimensions: 5.8 inches wide. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - c. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy or medium duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels.
 - 1) Material: Stainless steel
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - d. Covers: Solid stainless steel, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channels, and of lengths indicated.
 - e. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.

- f. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
- 3. See Schedule on Drawings.
- B. Polymer-Concrete Channel Drainage Systems:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company; Mea-Josam Div.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Type: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with built-in invert slope of 0.6 percent and with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated. Include extension sections necessary for required depth.
 - 1) Dimensions: 4-inch inside width. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - 2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
 - b. Grates: Manufacturer's designation "heavy duty," with slots or perforations, and of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
 - 1) Material: Ductile iron
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
 - d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 - e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
 - f. Channel Sections: Narrow, interlocking-joint, precast, polymer-concrete modular units with end caps. Include rounded bottom, with level invert and with NPS 4 outlets in number and locations indicated.
 - 1) Dimensions: 5-inch inside width and 9-3/4 inches deep. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - 2) Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grates.
 - 3. See Schedule on Drawings.
- C. Polymer-Concrete Sediment Interceptor:
 - 1. Description: 27-inch-square, precast, polymer-concrete body, with outlets in number and sizes indicated. Include 24-inch-square, gray-iron slotted grate.
 - 2. Frame: Gray-iron or galvanized steel for grate.
- D. FRP Channel Drainage Systems:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACO Polymer Products, Inc.
 - b. Aquaduct, Inc.; an ACO Polymer Products, Inc. Company.
 - c. Josam Company; Mea-Josam Div.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Flo-Thru Operation.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Description: Modular system of channel sections, grates, and appurtenances; designed so grates fit into channel recesses without rocking or rattling.
 - a. Channel Sections: Interlocking-joint, sloped-invert, FRP modular units, with end caps. Include flat, rounded, or inclined inside bottom, with outlets in number, sizes, and locations indicated.
 - 1) Dimensions: 4 or 6 inches wide. Include number of units required to form total lengths indicated.
 - 2) Frame: Manufacturer's standard metal for grates.
 - b. Grates: With slots or perforations and widths and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections.
 - 1) Material: Fiberglass, galvanized steel, or gray iron.
 - 2) Locking Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard device for securing grates to channel sections.
 - c. Covers: Solid ductile or gray iron, of width and thickness that fit recesses in channel sections, and of lengths indicated.
 - d. Supports, Anchors, and Setting Devices: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
 - e. Channel-Section Joining and Fastening Materials: As recommended by system manufacturer.
 - f. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.6 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1

- Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
 - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch-thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 8 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
 - 1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
 - 2. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
 - 3. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.

2.7 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP ASSEMBLIES

- A. Through-Penetration Firestop Assemblies:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ProSet Systems Inc.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. 3M, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Standard: UL 1479 assembly of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
 - 3. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent stack.
 - 4. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - 5. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye branch with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
 - 6. Special Coating: Corrosion resistant on interior of fittings.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Open Drains:
 - 1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
 - 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Deep-Seal Traps:

- 1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
- 2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
 - a. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.

C. Air-Gap Fittings:

- 1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
- 2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
- 3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
- 4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
- 5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
- D. Sleeve Flashing Device:
 - 1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device, that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 2 inches above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
 - 2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.
- E. Stack Flashing Fittings:
 - 1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.

SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

2.9 FLASHING MATERIALS

- Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless Α. otherwise indicated:
 - General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness. 1.
 - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sg. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.
 - 3. Burning: 6-lb/sg. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness.
- Β. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated: General Applications: 12 oz./sg. ft.
 - 1.
 - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sg. ft.
- C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068. flexible, chlorinated polvethylene, 40-mil minimum thickness.
- E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12. solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- Α. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- Β. Install backwater valves in building drain piping. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing.
- C. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated. 1. 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping. 3.
 - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- D. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- E. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- F. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance. 1
 - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression. a.
 - Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope. b.
 - Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression. C.

- 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
- 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Assemble and install ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage systems according to ASME A112.3.1. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with surface.
- I. Assemble non-ASME A112.3.1, stainless-steel channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- J. Assemble FRP channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- K. Assemble plastic channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- L. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- M. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- N. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies in plastic conductors and stacks at floor penetrations.
- O. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.
- P. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.
- Q. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- R. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- S. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
 - 1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
 - 3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
 - 4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
- T. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- U. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.
- V. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.
- D. Oil Interceptors: Connect inlet, outlet, vent, and gravity drawoff piping to unit; flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping; and gravity drawoff and suction piping to oil storage tank.

- E. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- F. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
 - 2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
 - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
 - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
 - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

SECTION 224000 - PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following conventional plumbing fixtures and related components:
 - 1. Faucets for lavatories, bathtubs, bathtub/showers, showers and sinks.
 - 2. Fittings for bathtubs, bathtub/showers and showers.
 - 3. Flushometers.
 - 4. Toilet seats.
 - 5. Protective shielding guards.
 - 6. Fixture supports.
 - 7. Interceptors.
 - 8. Shower receptors.
 - 9. Disposers.
 - 10. Water closets.
 - 11. Urinals.
 - 12. Lavatories.
 - 13. Commercial sinks.
 - 14. Bathtubs.
 - 15. Individual shower enclosures.
 - 16. Group showers.
 - 17. Kitchen sinks.
 - 18. Service sinks and Janitor's sinks.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 10 Section "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories."
 - 2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers, floor drains, and specialty fixtures not included in this Section.
 - 3. Division 22 Section "Drinking Fountains/Water Coolers."
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
 - A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
 - B. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
 - C. Cast Polymer: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material. This material includes cultured-marble and solid-surface materials.
 - D. Cultured Marble: Cast-filled-polymer-plastic material with surface coating.
 - E. Fitting: Device that controls the flow of water into or out of the plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.
 - F. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
 - G. PMMA: Polymethyl methacrylate (acrylic) plastic.
 - H. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

- I. Solid Surface: Nonporous, homogeneous, cast-polymer-plastic material with heat-, impact-, scratch-, and stain-resistance qualities.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
 - A. Product Data: For each type of plumbing fixture indicated. Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports. Indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates.
 - B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
 - C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include operation and maintenance manuals.
 - D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- F. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- G. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
 - 1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
 - 2. Plastic Laundry Trays: ANSI Z124.6.
 - 3. Plastic Mop-Service Basins: ANSI Z124.6.
 - 4. Plastic Shower Enclosures: ANSI Z124.2.
 - 5. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
 - 6. Slip-Resistant Bathing Surfaces: ASTM F 462.
 - 7. Solid-Surface-Material Lavatories and Sinks: ANSI/ICPA SS-1.
 - 8. Stainless-Steel Commercial, Handwash Sinks: NSF 2 construction.
 - 9. Stainless-Steel Residential Sinks: ASME A112.19.3.
 - 10. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
 - 11. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
 - 12. Water-Closet, Flushometer Tank Trim: ASSE 1037.
 - 13. Whirlpool Bathtub Fittings: ASME A112.19.8M.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
 - 1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
 - 2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
 - 3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
 - 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 5. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
 - 6. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 - 7. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 - 8. NSF Potable-Water Materials: NSF 61.
 - 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.

- 10. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
- 11. Supply Fittings: ASME A112.18.1.
- 12. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for bathtub, bathtub/shower and shower faucets:
 - 1. Backflow Protection Devices for Hand-Held Showers: ASME A112.18.3M.
 - 2. Combination, Pressure-Equalizing and Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASSE 1016.
 - 3. Deck-Mounted Bath/Shower Transfer Valves: ASME 18.7.
 - 4. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 5. Hand-Held Showers: ASSE 1014.
 - 6. High-Temperature-Limit Controls for Thermal-Shock-Preventing Devices: ASTM F 445.
 - 7. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 - 8. Manual-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444.
 - 9. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 - 10. Pressure-Equalizing-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
 - 11. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
 - 12. Thermostatic-Control Antiscald Faucets: ASTM F 444 and ASSE 1016.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
 - 1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 - 2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1.
 - 3. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
 - 4. Plastic Tubular Fittings: ASTM F 409.
 - 5. Brass Waste Fittings: ASME A112.18.2.
 - 6. Sensor-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037 and UL 1951.
- K. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
 - 2. Flexible Water Connectors: ASME A112.18.6.
 - 3. Floor Drains: ASME A112.6.3.
 - 4. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 - 5. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
 - 6. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 - 7. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
 - 8. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of whirlpools that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures of unit shell.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls, blowers, pumps, heaters, and timers.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Commercial Applications: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount, but no fewer than 2, of each type and size installed.
 - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount, but no fewer than 2, of each type and size installed.
 - 3. Flushometer Valve, Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 of each type.
 - 4. Provide hinged-top wood or metal box, or individual metal boxes, with separate compartments for each type and size of extra materials listed above.
 - 5. Flushometer Tank, Repair Kits: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 of each type.
 - 6. Water-Closet Tank, Repair Kits: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 2 of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FAUCETS

Α. Lavatory Faucets:

1.

2.

1.

- Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Chicago Faucets. a.
 - b. Kohler Co
 - T&S Brass C.
 - Pre-approved equal. d.
- See Schedule on Drawings.

2.2 **FLUSHOMETERS**

- Α. Flushometers: Manually operated.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Sloan Valve Company. a.
 - Toto. b.
 - Pre-approved equal. C.
 - 2. Description: Flushometer for urinal or water-closet-type fixture. Include brass body with corrosion-resistant internal components, non-hold-open feature, control stop with check valve, vacuum breaker, copper or brass tubing, and polished chrome-plated finish on exposed parts.
 - Internal Design: Diaphragm operation. a.
 - Style: Exposed. b.
 - Inlet Size: NPS 1 or NPS 1-1/4. C.
 - Trip Mechanism: Oscillating, lever-handle actuator. d.
 - 3. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.3 TOILET SEATS

Α. Toilet Seats:

- Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1.
 - a. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
 - Church Seats. b.
 - C. Eljer.
 - Kohler Co. d.
 - Olsonite Corp. e.
 - f. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description: Toilet seat for water-closet-type fixture shall incorporate the following unless indicated otherwise:
 - Material: Molded, solid plastic with antimicrobial agent. a.
 - Configuration: Open front without cover. b.
 - Size: Elongated. C.
 - d. Hinge Type: SS, self-sustaining, check.
 - e. Class: Heavy-duty commercial.
 - Color: White. f.

2.4 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- Α. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers: Where indicated or scheduled.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Insul-Tect Products Co. a.
 - McGuire Manufacturing Co., Inc. b.
 - Plumberex Specialty Products Inc. C.
 - TRUEBRO, Inc. d.
 - Zurn Plumbing Products Group. e.
 - Pre-approved equal. f.
 - Description: Manufactured PVC plastic pipe covers over pipe insulation or insulation wraps for covering plumbing fixture 2. hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- Β. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures: Where indicated or scheduled.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1.

PLUMBING FIXTURES

- a. TRUEBRO, Inc.
- b. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for concealing plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

2.5 FIXTURE SUPPORTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Josam Company.
 - 2. Jay R. Smith.
 - 3. Wade.
 - 4. Watts.
 - 5. Zurn.
 - 6. Pre-approved equal.

B. Water-Closet Supports:

- 1. Description: Combination carrier designed for accessible or standard mounting height of wall-mounted, water-closet-type fixture. Include single or double, vertical or horizontal, hub-and-spigot or hubless waste fitting as required for piping arrangement; 4" waste and 2" vent; faceplates; couplings with gaskets; feet; and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.
 - a. Wade 310 Series.
- C. Urinal Supports:
 - 1. Description: Type II, urinal carrier with hanger and bearing plates for wall-mounting, urinal-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
 - a. Wade 400-AM11 or pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights.
 - a. Wade 400-AM11-M36 or pre-approved equal.
- D. Wall-Hung Lavatory Supports:
 - 1. Description: Type II, lavatory carrier with concealed arms and tie rod for wall-mounting, lavatory-type fixture. Include steel uprights with feet.
 - a. Wade 520 or pre-approved equal.
 - Accessible-Fixture Support: Include rectangular steel uprights with feet.
 - a. Wade 520-M36 or pre-approved equal.

2.6 INTERCEPTORS

2.

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Josam Company.
 - 2. MIFAB Manufacturing Inc.
 - 3. Jay R. Smith.
 - 4. Wade.
 - 5. Watts.
 - 6. Zurn.
 - 7. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Hair Interceptors:

1.

1.

- Description: Manufactured unit with removable screen or strainer and removable cover; designed to trap and retain hair.
 - a. Material: Brass or stainless-steel body.
 - b. Pipe Connections: NPS 1-1/4 or NPS 1-1/2.
- C. Sediment Interceptors:
 - Description: Manufactured unit with removable screens or strainer and removable cover; designed to trap and retain waste material.
 - a. Material: Cast-iron or steel body with acid-resistant lining and coating or stainless-steel.
 - b. Pipe Connections: NPS 1-1/2 or NPS 2.
- 2.7 SHOWER RECEPTORS
 - A. Shower Receptors:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Fiat Products. a.
 - American Standard Companies, Inc. b.
 - Kohler Co. C.
 - d. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
 - Pre-approved equal. e.
 - See Schedule on Drawings.

2.8 DISPOSERS

2.

- Α. Disposers:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1.
 - In-Sink-Erator. a.
 - b. KitchenAid.
 - Maytag Co. C.
 - Pre-approved equal. d.
 - 2. See schedule on drawings.

2.9 WATER CLOSETS

- Α. Water Closets:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1.
 - American Standard. а.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - TOTO USA, Inc. C.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.10 URINALS

- Α. Urinals:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1.
 - American Standard. a.
 - Kohler Co. b.
 - TOTO USA, Inc. C.
 - Pre-approved equal. d.
 - See Schedule on Drawings.

2.11 LAVATORIES

2.

- Α. I avatories:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1.
 - American Standard. a.
 - b. Kohler Co.
 - TOTO USA, Inc. C.
 - Pre-approved equal. d.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.12 COMMERCIAL SINKS

- Commercial Sinks: Stainless steel. A.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1.
 - Advance Tabco. a.
 - Elkay Manufacturing Co. b.
 - Kohler. C.
 - d. Pre-approved equal. 2.
 - See Schedule on Drawings.

2.13 WASH FOUNTAINS

- Α. Wash Fountains:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1.

- a. Bradley Corporation.
- b. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.14 BATHTUBS

A. Bathtubs:

- Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kohler Co.
 - b. American Standard.
 - c. TOTO, Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.15 INDIVIDUAL SHOWERS ENCLOSURES

- A. Shower Enclosures:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Aquatic.
 - b. Aqua Glass Corporation.
 - c. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - d. LASCO Bathware.
 - e. Fiat Products.
 - f. Kohler Co.
 - g. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.16 GROUP SHOWERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Bradley Corporation.
 - 2. Pre-approved equal.
- B. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.17 KITCHEN SINKS

- A. Sinks:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Kohler Co.
 - b. Elkay.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

2.18 SERVICE SINKS/JANITOR'S SINKS

- A. Service Sinks/Janitor's Sinks:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fiat Products.
 - b. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
 - c. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. See Schedule on Drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Examine cabinets, counters, floors, and walls for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble plumbing fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install off-floor supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounting fixtures.
 - 1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
 - 2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
 - 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-mounting fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install floor-mounting fixtures on closet flanges or other attachments to piping or building substrate.
- E. Install wall-mounted fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- F. Install floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets attached to building floor substrate and wall bracket and onto waste fitting seals.
- G. Install counter-mounted fixtures in and attached to casework.
- H. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- I. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball valves if supply stops are not specified with fixture. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- J. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- K. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- L. Install flushometer valves for accessible water closets and urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- M. Install tanks for accessible, tank-type water closets with lever handle mounted on wide side of compartment.
- N. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- O. Install trap-seal liquid in dry urinals.
- P. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- Q. Install water-supply flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- R. Install faucet flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- S. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- T. Install traps on fixture outlets.
 - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
 - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- U. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.

- V. Install escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deeppattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Escutcheons shall be chrome plated.
- W. Set bathtubs, shower receptors and service sink basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
- X. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and countertops using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed plumbing fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that plumbing fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed plumbing fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Operate and adjust disposers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning units and controls.
- C. Adjust water pressure at faucets and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- D. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.
- E. Install fresh batteries in sensor-operated mechanisms.

3.6 CLEANING

- Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
 Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
 - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- B. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished fixtures, faucets, and fittings, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

B. Do not allow use of plumbing fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 230500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Coordination procedures.
 - 2. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 3. Transition fittings.
 - 4. Dielectric fittings.
 - 5. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 6. Sleeves.
 - 7. Escutcheons.
 - 8. Grout.
 - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 10. Painting and finishing.
 - 11. Concrete bases.
 - 12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
 - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Construction Manager and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 - 5. Progress meetings.
 - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 - 7. Project closeout activities.
 - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
 - 1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

1.4 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
 - 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
 - 1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 - 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 - 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 - 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 - 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 - 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
 - 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
 - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
 - 8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
 - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
 - 9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
 - 10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 2. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
 - 3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
 - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
 - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Transition fittings.
 - 2. Dielectric fittings.
 - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 4. Escutcheons.
- B. Welding certificates.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 - B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
 - C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.
 - D. A single contractor shall perform all mechanical system installations for this project. the contractor installing the VRF system, including VRF refrigerant piping, shall not be different than the general mechanical system installer or the DOAS, exhaust fans, and VAV installer. All of these systems shall be installed by a single contractor.
 - The VRF installer shall be certified to install the manufacturer's equipment being installed. A minimum of two certified installers shall be present on the site at all times during construction to provide supervision and quality assurance inspection of all joints, fittings, and pressure testing. The VRF installer shall be certified for installing the manufacturers equipment being installed. The certified training shall have been completed within 6 months of the construction start date.
 - 2. Pre-approved contractor for the VRF system include the following:

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

- a. Martin Mechanical.
- b. Edwards McDowell.
- c. CJ Industries.
- d. Alexander.
- e. Vazquez.
- f. Rand.
- g. Pro Mechanical.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493. 1.
 - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

1.

1.

1

- Α. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Eslon Thermoplastics. a.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
- Β. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
 - b. Pre-approved equal.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solventcement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - NIBCO INC. a.
 - b. NIBCO. Inc.: Chemtrol Div.
 - C. Pre-approved equal.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- Α. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- Β. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1
 - Capitol Manufacturing Co. a.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - Eclipse, Inc. C.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - Hart Industries, International, Inc. e.
 - Watts Industries. Inc.: Water Products Div. f.
 - Zurn Industries. Inc.: Wilkins Div. g.
 - h. Pre-approved equal.
- Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150 or 300-psig minimum working pressure D. as required to suit system pressures.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1
 - Capitol Manufacturing Co. a.
 - Central Plastics Company. b.
 - C. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - Pre-approved equal. е
- F. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers. 1.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Advance Products & Systems, Inc. a.
 - Calpico, Inc. b.

- c. Central Plastics Company.
- d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150 or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.

- Β. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw. 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw. Finish: Polished chrome-plated 1
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- Η. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- Α. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi 28-day compressive strength.
 - Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged. 3.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 **PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS**

- Α. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- Β. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following: L. 1.
 - New Piping:
 - Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type. a.
 - Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish. b.
 - Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips. C.
 - Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with d. polished chrome-plated finish.

- e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
- f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
- g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
- h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
- i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and screw or spring clips
- j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
- k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
- I. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 - 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copperphosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
- 3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION COMMON REQUIREMENTS
 - A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases a minimum of 4 inches and a maximum of 6 inches deep, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified

3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.

- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION 230500

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS
 - A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
- 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS
 - A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
 - B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
 - C. Service Factor: 1.15.
 - D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
 - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
 - E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
 - F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
 - G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
 - H. Insulation: Class F.
 - Code Letter Designation:
 Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
 - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 - 2. Split phase.
 - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
- 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
- 4. Fastener systems.
- 5. Equipment supports.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Equipment supports.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.

2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbonsteel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- D. Fastener System Installation:

- 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
- 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- G. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- H. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.

- 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
- 4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
- 5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
- 6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
- 7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
- 8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
- 9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
 - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 - 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 - 7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 - 8. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 - 9. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 - 2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 - 3. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 230553 - HVAC SYSTEM IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following mechanical identification materials and their installation:
 - 1. Equipment nameplates.
 - 2. Equipment markers.
 - 3. Equipment signs.
 - 4. Access panel and door markers.
 - 5. Pipe markers.
 - 6. Duct markers.
 - 7. Valve tags.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE
 - A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Equipment Nameplates: Metal, with data engraved or stamped, for permanent attachment on equipment.
 1. Data:
 - a. Manufacturer, product name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Capacity, operating and power characteristics, and essential data.
 - c. Labels of tested compliances.
 - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
 - 3. Fasteners: As required to mount on equipment.
- B. Equipment Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.
 - 1. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible.
 - 2. Data:
 - a. Name and plan number.
 - b. Equipment service.
 - c. Design capacity.
 - d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.
 - 3. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4-1/2 by 6 inches for equipment.
- C. Equipment Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine subcore, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
 - 1. Data: Instructions for operation of equipment and for safety procedures.
 - 2. Engraving: Manufacturer's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
 - 3. Thickness: 1/16 inch, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.
- D. Access Panel and Door Markers: 1/16-inch-thick, engraved laminated plastic, with abbreviated terms and numbers corresponding to identification. Provide 1/8-inch center hole for attachment.
 - 1. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.

2.2 PIPING IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

A. Manufactured Pipe Markers, General: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing direction of flow.

- 1. Colors: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
- 3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers extending 360 deg rees around pipe at each location.
- 4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
- 5. Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions; or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Markers: Precoiled semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without adhesive.
- C. Shaped Pipe Markers: Preformed semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe with mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate insulation vapor barrier.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Markers: Plastic with pressure-sensitive, permanent-type, self-adhesive back.
- E. Plastic Tape: Continuously printed, vinyl tape at least 3 mils thick with pressure-sensitive, permanent-type, selfadhesive back.
 - 1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: 3/4 inch minimum.
 - 2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches or Larger: 1-1/2 inches minimum.

2.3 DUCT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

A. Duct Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include direction of airflow and duct service (such as supply, return, and exhaust). Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers, with numbering scheme. Provide 5/32-inch hole for fastener.
 - 1. Material: 0.032-inch-thick brass.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other Sections. If more than single-type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

3.2 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install and permanently fasten equipment nameplates on each major item of mechanical equipment that does not have nameplate or has nameplate that is damaged or located where not easily visible. Locate nameplates where accessible and visible. Include nameplates for the following general categories of equipment:
 - 1. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
 - 2. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
 - 3. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
 - 4. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
 - 5. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
- B. Install equipment markers with permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Data required for markers may be included on signs, and markers may be omitted if both are indicated.
 - 1. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 2. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
 - 3. Locate markers where accessible and visible. Include markers for the following general categories of equipment:
 - a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.

- b. Meters, gages, thermometers, and similar units.
- c. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
- d. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
- e. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
- f. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
- g. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
- h. Tanks and pressure vessels.
- i. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- C. Install equipment signs with screws or permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Locate signs where accessible and visible.
 - 1. Identify mechanical equipment with equipment markers in the following color codes:
 - a. Green: For cooling equipment and components.
 - b. Yellow: For heating equipment and components.
 - c. Orange: For combination cooling and heating equipment and components.
 - d. Brown: For energy-reclamation equipment and components.
 - 2. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 3. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
 - 4. Include signs for the following general categories of equipment:
 - a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
 - b. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
 - c. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
 - d. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
 - e. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
 - f. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
 - g. Tanks and pressure vessels.
 - h. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- D. Install access panel markers with screws on equipment access panels.

3.3 PIPING IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install manufactured pipe markers indicating service on each piping system. Install with flow indication arrows showing direction of flow.
 - 1. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Pretensioned pipe markers. Use size to ensure a tight fit.
 - Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Self-adhesive pipe markers. Use color-coded, self-adhesive plastic tape, 1-1/2 inches wide, lapped at least 1-1/2 inches at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
 - 3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Shaped pipe markers. Use size to match pipe and secure with fasteners.
 - 4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Self-adhesive pipe markers. Use color-coded, self-adhesive plastic tape, at least 1-1/2 inches wide, lapped at least 3 inches at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
- B. Locate pipe markers and color bands where piping is exposed in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior nonconcealed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and nonaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced markers.

3.4 DUCT IDENTIFICATION

A. Install duct markers with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:

- 1. Green: For cold-air supply ducts.
- 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
- 3. Blue: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
- 4. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- B. Locate markers near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; plumbing fixture supply stops; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - c. Gas: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - d. Steam: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Blue.
 - b. Hot Water: Red.
 - c. Gas: Yellow.
 - 3. Letter Color:
 - a. Cold Water: White.
 - b. Hot Water: White.
 - c. Gas: White.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work.
- B. Clean faces of mechanical identification devices and glass frames of valve schedules.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
 - Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Variable-flow hydronic systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

2.

- A. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- B. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- C. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.
- 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
 - B. Certified TAB reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by NEBB or AABC.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by NEBB or AABC.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by NEBB or AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
 - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Owner and Commissioning Authority.
- D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- E. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 "Air Balancing."
- F. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 "System Balancing."
- PART 2 PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
 - A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- H. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- I. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- J. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- K. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- L. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- M. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- N. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- O. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
 - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
 - 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 - 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 - 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 - 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
 - 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.

- 1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.
- 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS
 - A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
 - B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
 - C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
 - D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
 - E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supplyfan discharge and mixing dampers.
 - F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
 - G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 - H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
 - I. Check for airflow blockages.
 - J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
 - K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
 - L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts."
- 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS
 - A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.

- 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
- 6. Obtain approval from Architect for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
- 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- Β. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances. 1
 - Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements. a. measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 - 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 - 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
 - 1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
 - Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise 1. levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
 - 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
- Β. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
 - 1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
 - 2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 - 3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
 - Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use 4. terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - 5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum a. airflow.
 - 6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air a. systems.
 - 7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
 - 8. Record final fan-performance data.

- C. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
 - 1. Balance variable-air-volume systems the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - 2. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.
 - 3. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constantvolume air systems.
 - 4. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
 - 5. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
 - 6. Set supply fan at minimum airflow if minimum airflow is indicated. Measure static pressure to verify that it is being maintained by the controller.
 - 7. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
 - 8. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
- D. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
 - 1. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
 - 2. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
 - 3. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
 - 4. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - 5. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
 - 6. Measure static pressure at the sensor.
 - 7. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
 - 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
 - 2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 - 3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
 - 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
 - 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
 - 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
 - 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
 - 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 - 3. Motor rpm.
 - 4. Efficiency rating.
 - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 - 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

- A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
 - 1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 - 2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
 - 3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.
 - 4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 - 5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
 - 6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.
 - 7. For air-cooled chillers, verify condenser-fan rotation and record fan and motor data including number of fans and entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

- A. Shut off makeup water for the duration of the test, and verify that makeup and blowdown systems are fully operational after tests and before leaving the equipment. Perform the following tests and record the results:
 - 1. Measure condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
 - Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
 - Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
 - Measure wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
 - 5. Measure condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
 - Measure cooling-tower spray pump discharge pressure.
 - 7. Adjust water level and feed rate of makeup water system.
 - 8. Measure flow through bypass.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

A. Hydronic Boilers: Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
 - 1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 - 2. Water flow rate.
 - 3. Water pressure drop.
 - 4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
 - 6. Airflow.
 - 7. Air pressure drop.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
 - 1. Nameplate data.
 - 2. Airflow.

- 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
- 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
- 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
- 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
 - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 3. Airflow.
 - 4. Air pressure drop.
 - 5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
 - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
 - 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
 - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
 - 4. Check the condition of filters.
 - 5. Check the condition of coils.
 - 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
 - 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
 - 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
 - 1. New filters are installed.
 - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
 - 3. Drain pans are clean.
 - 4. Fans are clean.
 - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
 - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
 - 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
 - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
 - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
 - 4. Balance each air outlet.

3.15 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

3.16 REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare weekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.17 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.
 - 2. Fan curves.
 - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.
 - 6. Engineer's name and address.
 - 7. Contractor's name and address.
 - 8. Report date.
 - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 - 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 - 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 - 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
 - 1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 - 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 - 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 - 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 - 5. Terminal units.
 - 6. Balancing stations.
 - 7. Position of balancing devices.

3.18 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for ductwork with lining.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets or covering.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after any required ductwork pressure testing is complete. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS
 - Α. Comply with requirements in Duct Insulation Schedule for where insulating materials shall be applied.
 - Β. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
 - C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
 - D. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article. 1.
 - Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following: CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - a.
 - Johns Manville: Microlite. b.
 - Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap. C.
 - d. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
 - Pre-approved equal. е
 - Ε. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
 - Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas. b.
 - Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board. C.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
 - Pre-approved equal. e.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- Α. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F. Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Super Firetemp M.
 - b. Pabco.
 - C. Pre-approved equal.
- Β. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1 Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - CertainTeed Corp.: FlameChek. а
 - b. Johns Manville: Firetemp Wrap.
 - 3M: Fire Barrier Wrap Products. C.
 - d. Morgan Thermal Ceramics.
 - Pre-approved equal. e.

2.3 ADHESIVES

1

- Α. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- Β. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges; 225.
 - C. Foster Brand; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - Pre-approved equal. e.

- 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

1.

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
 - d. Pre-approved equal.
 - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
 - 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK Sealants: 1. Produ

- Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

- 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
- 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
- 5. Color: Aluminum.
- 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS
 - A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
- 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS
 - A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
 - B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

2.9 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Width: 3 inches.
 - 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 - 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

- A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
 - 1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- E. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- F. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- G. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations. No penetration in insulation is permitted at hangers, supports, and other projections.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and supports.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- I. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive sealing tape.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- J. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- K. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- L. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - 1. Firestopping materials and fire-resistive joint sealers applicable for the installation.
- C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.

2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- Blanket or Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins. A.
 - Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum 1 surfaces.
 - 2 Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions. 3.
 - Install capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - On duct sides or bottom with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 a. inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides or bottom with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums. C.
 - Do not overcompress insulation during installation. d.
 - Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers. е
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 - 4. For ducts and plenums, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vaporbarrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal. a.
 - Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of b. vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches
 - 5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 - 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.6 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- Β. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Α. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Low pressure rectangular ducts and fittings.
- 2. Low pressure ductwork.
- 3. Medium pressure ductwork.
- 4. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
- 5. Single-wall round ductwork.
- 6. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
- 7. Double-wall round ductwork.
- 8. Sheet metal materials.
- 9. Duct liner.
- 10. Sealants and gaskets.
- 11. Hangers and supports.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
 - 1. Liners and adhesives.
 - 2. Sealants and gaskets.

B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
- 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
- 3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
- 4. Elevation of bottom of ducts.
- 5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
- 6. Fittings.
- 7. Reinforcement and spacing.
- 8. Seam and joint construction.
- 9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
- 10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
- 11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
- 12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. LEED Submittals:

- 1. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that duct systems comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 "Systems and Equipment."
- 2. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that duct systems comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
- 3. Leakage Test Report for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation of work performed for compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4.2.2 "Duct Leakage Tests."
- 4. Duct-Cleaning Test Report for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation of work performed for compliance with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.4 "Ventilation System Start-up."

- 5. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- 6. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 - 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 "Construction and System Start-up."
- B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60.
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Duct materials other than the above is specified in the particular ductwork description.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be as indicated in the Duct Schedule.
- E. Carbon-Steel Sheets: ASTM A 366/A 366M, cold-rolled sheets; commercial quality; with oiled, exposed matte finish.
- 2.2 LOW PRESSURE RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS
 - A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995" based on 2" w.g. static-pressure class, Table 1-5.
 - B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Tables 1-10 through 1-13, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for 2" w.g. staticpressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."

- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards -Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Figure 1-5, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for 2" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for 2" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."
 - 1. All elbows or offsets in rectangular ductwork under positive pressure shall contain turning vanes. Turning vanes in low pressure ductwork shall be single wall.
 - 2. All rectangular branch takeoffs in supply ductwork shall be of the 45 deg. entry design with a manual damper. Round take-offs in supply ductwork shall use rectangular to round transition with 45 degree entry design and a manual damper in the round, Sheet Metal Connectors H.E.T. (Hi-Efficiency Take-Off) or equal.

2.3 MEDIUM PRESSURE RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995" based on 4" w.g. static-pressure class, Table 1-5.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for 4" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards -Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for 4" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Chapter 2, "Fittings and Other Construction," for 4" w.g. static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995."
 - 1. All elbows or offsets in rectangular ductwork that exceed 33 degrees shall contain turning vanes. Turning vanes in medium pressure ductwork shall be double wall.
 - 2. Rectangular branch take-offs shall be of the 45 deg. entry design as detailed in SMACNA "HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Second Edition-1995," Figure 2-6. Round branch take-offs or taps shall be of the conical or bellmouth design or 45 deg. rectangular to round entry design with sealer and mechanical fasteners used at tap connection. Round take-offs larger than duct height shall be of the 45 deg. entry design with a rectangular to round branch connections. The rectangular area shall be a minimum of 1-1/2 times the round branch area. Sealer shall be used at the branch connection.

2.4 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Low pressure round ducts shall be constructed per SMACNA HVAC Construction Standards, Table 3-2, 2" w.g. (pos.), Second Edition, 1995 with Addendum No. 1, for galvanized steel with grooved longitudinal seam and sleeved type transverse joint, pipe riveted. Hangers shall be 2" band, attached at duct joints with draw bands. Spiral duct and fittings per paragraph below may be used as an option.
- B. Round ducts in medium pressure systems and ahead of terminal boxes shall be of the continuous weld or continuous lock seam construction from ASTM A-527-67 galvanized steel. All round fittings shall be manufactured from galvanized steel with continuous welds or locked seams. Gasketed self-sealing spiral duct and fittings installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions may be used. All round ducts and fittings shall be equal constructed to the gauges called for in SMACNA HVAC Round Duct Construction Standards, Table 3-2, for spiral lock seam duct, 10" w.g., Second Edition, 1995 with Addendum No. 1.
- C. All exposed round ducts regardless of system pressure, shall be constructed as described in paragraph B above.
- D. All round ducts shall be sealed per SMACNA seal classification "B" requirements.

2.5 DUCT LINER

4.

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Minimum Thermal Conductivity:
 - a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 - 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
 - B. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
 - 1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 - 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 - 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 - 5. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
 - 6. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
 - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
 - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 - 2. Type: S.
 - 3. Grade: NS.
 - 4. Class: 25.
 - 5. Use: O.
 - For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
 - 1. Seal shall provide maximum 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Table 4-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 4-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- E. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a minimum clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.
- 3.3 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMERCIAL KITCHEN HOOD EXHAUST DUCT
 - A. Install commercial kitchen hood exhaust ducts without dips and traps that may hold grease, and sloped a minimum of 2 percent to drain grease back to the hood.
 - B. Install fire-rated access panel assemblies at each change in direction and at maximum intervals of 20 feet in horizontal ducts, and at every floor for vertical ducts, or as indicated on Drawings. Locate access panel on top or sides of duct a minimum of 1-1/2 inches from bottom of duct.
 - C. Do not penetrate fire-rated assemblies except as allowed by applicable building codes and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - D. All elbow or offsets exceeding 33 degrees shall utilize sweep/radius elbows with a centerline radius equal to or greater than the duct width.

3.4 ADDITIONAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS FOR DISHWASHER EXHAUST DUCT

A. Solder ducts water tight. Install stainless steel damper with locking quadrant in the drops to the dishwasher. Ductwork shall be sloped to drain to the connection at the dirty dish end of the dishwasher.

3.5 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in ductwork schedule on drawings.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995," Chapter 4, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.

- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible, Second Edition-1995" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.8 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
 - 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
 - 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If staticpressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
 - 6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
 - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

3.10 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 - 4. Coils and related components.
 - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
 - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
 - 7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
 - 1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
 - 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
 - 3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
 - 4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
 - 5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
 - 6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
 - 7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.
- 3.11 START UP
 - A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.12 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows.
- B. Refer to ductwork schedule on drawings.

SECTION 233300 - DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Volume dampers.
 - 3. Fire dampers.
 - 4. Smoke dampers.
 - 5. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
 - 6. Turning vanes.
 - 7. Duct-mounting access doors.
 - 8. Flexible connectors.
 - 9. Flexible ducts.
 - 10. Duct accessory hardware.
 - 11. Duct silencers.
 - B. See "Fire Alarm" for duct-mounting fire and smoke detectors.
 - C. See Division 23 Section "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls" for electric and pneumatic damper actuators.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Backdraft dampers.
 - 2. Volume dampers.
 - 3. Fire dampers.
 - 4. Ceiling fire dampers.
 - 5. Smoke dampers.
 - 6. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
 - 7. Turning vanes.
 - 8. Duct-mounting access doors.
 - 9. Flexible connectors.
 - 10. Flexible ducts.
 - 11. Duct Silencers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Special fittings.
 - 2. Manual-volume damper installations.
 - 3. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, and combination fire- and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves and duct-mounting access doors.
 - 4. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
 - A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G90 coating designation; ducts shall have millphosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 480/A 480M.
- D. Aluminum Sheets: ASTM B 209, alloy 3003, temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221, alloy 6063, temper T6.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
 - 3. CESCO Products.
 - 4. Duro Dyne Corp.
 - 5. Greenheck.
 - 6. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
 - 7. Prefco Products, Inc.
 - 8. Ruskin Company.
 - 9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 - 10. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Description: Multiple-blade, parallel action gravity balanced, with center-pivoted blades of maximum 6-inch width, with sealed edges, assembled in rattle-free manner with 90-degree stop, steel ball bearings, and axles; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
- C. Frame: 0.052-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners and mounting flange.
- D. Blades: 0.050-inch-thick aluminum sheet.
- E. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- F. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- 2.4 VOLUME DAMPERS
 - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
 - 3. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - 5. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.

- 8. Ruskin Company.
- 9. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- 10. Greenheck Fan Corporation
- 11. Pre-approved equal.
- B. General Description: Factory fabricated, with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
- C. Standard Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064 inch thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
 - 2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - 3. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze.
 - 5. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- D. Jackshaft: 1-inch-diameter, galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
 - 1. Length and Number of Mountings: Appropriate to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- E. Damper Hardware: Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
 - 2. CESCO Products.
 - 3. Greenheck.
 - 4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - 5. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 6. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
 - 8. Prefco Products, Inc.
 - 9. Ruskin Company.
 - 10. Vent Products Company, Inc.
 - 11. Ward Industries, Inc.
 - 12. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Fire dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours for dampers in walls rated 2-hours or less. 3 hour rating for dampers in walls rated greater than 2-hours.
- D. Frame: Low pressure applications (2" wg and less): curtain type with blades inside airstream; for ductwork constructed in higher pressure applications (above 2" wg): curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.138 inch thick and of length to suit application.
 - 2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame complies with sleeve requirements.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

- Η. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- I. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.
- 2.6 SMOKE OR COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS
 - Α. Manufacturers:
 - Air Balance, Inc. 1
 - 2. **CESCO** Products.
 - 3. Greenheck.
 - 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 5. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
 - 6. Ruskin Company.
 - 7. Pre-approved equal
 - Β. General Description: Labeled according to UL 555S. Combination fire and smoke dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555 for 1-1/2-hour rating.
 - C. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 165 deg F rated.
 - D. Frame and Blades: 0.064-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.052-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
 - F. Damper Motors: Modulating and two-position action.
 - Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains. 1.
 - Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable 2. housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
 - 3. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outside-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
 - 4. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
 - 5. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.
- 2.7 TURNING VANES
 - Α. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for vanes and vane runners. Vane runners shall automatically align vanes.
 - Β. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate 1-1/2-inch-wide, double-vane, curved blades of galvanized sheet steel set 3/4 inch o.c.; support with bars perpendicular to blades set 2 inches o.c.; and set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: 1
 - Ductmate Industries, Inc. a.
 - Duro Dyne Corp. b.
 - METALAIRE, Inc. C.
 - d. Ward Industries, Inc.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.
 - C. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- 2.8 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS
 - General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class. Α.
 - Β. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and rectangular; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches. 1.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - American Warming and Ventilating. a.
 - CESCO Products. h

- c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
- d. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
- e. Greenheck.
- f. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
- g. Nailor Industries Inc.
- h. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- i. Ward Industries, Inc.
- j. Elgen Manufacturing
- k. Pre-approved equal.
- 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
- 3. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
 - a. Less Than 12 Inches Square: Secure with two sash locks.
 - b. Up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
 - d. Sizes 24 by 48 Inches and Larger: One additional hinge.
- C. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and round; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and 1-inch thickness. Include cam latches.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - b. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - c. Pre-approved equal.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with spin-in notched frame.
- D. Seal around frame attachment to duct and door to frame with neoprene or foam rubber.
- E. Insulation: 1-inch-thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Duro Dyne Corp.
 - 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 - 4. Ward Industries, Inc.
 - 5. Pre-approved equal.
- B. General Description: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

2.10 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 - 2. Thermaflex.
 - 3. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
 - 4. Pre-approved equal.
- B. Insulated-Duct Connectors: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
- C. Flexible Duct Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action, in sizes 3 through 18 inches to suit duct size.

2.11 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.12 DUCT SILENCERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Industrial Acoustics Company.
 - 2. Vibroacoustics.
 - 3. Pre-approved equal.

B. General Requirements:

1. Furnish and install "Quiet-Duct" (rectangular) silencers of the types and sizes shown on the plans and/or listed in the schedule. Silencers shall be the product of Industrial Acoustics Company. Any specification change must be submitted in writing and approved by the Architect/Engineer, in writing, at least 10 days prior to the bid due-date.

C. Materials:

- 1. Outer casings of rectangular silencers shall be made of 22 gauge type #G-90 lock-former-quality galvanized steel.
- 2. Interior partitions for rectangular silencers shall be not less than 26 gauge type #G-90 galvanized lock-former-quality perforated steel.
- 3. Filler material shall be inorganic glass fiber of a proper density to obtain the specified acoustic performance and be packed under not less than 5% compression to eliminate voids due to vibration and settling. Material shall be inert, vermin- and moisture-proof.
- 4. Combustion ratings for the silencer acoustic fill shall be not greater than the following when tested to ASTM E 84, NFPA Standard 255, or UL No. 723:
 - a. Flamespread Classification: 20.
 - b. Smoke Development Rating: 20.

D. Construction:

- 1. Units shall be constructed in accordance with the ASHRAE Guide recommendations for high pressure duct work. Seams shall be lock formed and mastic filled. Rectangular casing seams shall be in the corners of the silencer shell to provide maximum unit strength and rigidity. Interior partitions shall be fabricated from single-piece, margin-perforated sheets and shall have die-formed entrance and exit shapes so as to provide the maximum aerodynamic efficiency and minimum self-noise characteristics in the sound attenuator. Blunt noses or squared off partitions will not be accepted.
- 2. Attachment of the interior partitions to the casing shall be by means of an interlocking track assembly. Tracks shall be solid galvanized steel and shall be welded to the outer casing. Attachment of the interior partitions to the tracks shall be such that a minimum of 4 thicknesses of metal exist at this location. The track assembly shall stiffen the exterior casing, provide a reinforced attachment detail for the interior partitions, and shall maintain a uniform airspace width along the length of the silencer for consistent aerodynamic and acoustic performance. Interior partitions shall be additionally secured to the outer casing with welded nose clips at both ends of the sound attenuator.
- 3. Sound attenuating units shall not fail structurally when subjected to a differential air pressure of 8 inches water gauge from inside to outside the casing. Airtight construction shall be provided by use of a duct sealing compound on the job-site material and labor furnished by the contractor.
- E. Acoustic Performance:
 - 1. All silencer ratings shall be determined in a duct-to-reverberant room test facility which provides for airflow in both directions through the test silencer in accordance with ASTM Specification E477-99. The test facility shall be NVLAP accredited for the ASTM E477-99 test standard. Data from a non-accredited laboratory will not be acceptable. The test set-up and procedure shall be such that all effects due to end reflection, directivity, flanking transmission, standing waves and test chamber sound absorption are eliminated. Acoustic ratings shall include Dynamic Insertion Loss (DIL) and Self-Noise (SN) Power Levels both for FORWARD FLOW (air and noise in same direction) and REVERSE FLOW (air and noise in opposite directions) with airflow of at least 2000 fpm entering face velocity. Data for rectangular and tubular type silencers shall be presented for tests conducted using silencers no smaller than the following cross-sections:
 - a. Rectangular, inch: 24x24, 24x30, or 24x36.

b. Tubular, inch: 12, 24, 36, and 48.

F. Aerodynamic Performance:

1. Static pressure loss of silencers shall not exceed 0.05" wg. Airflow measurements shall be made in accordance with ASTM specification E477-99 and applicable portions of ASME, AMCA, and ADC airflow test codes. Tests shall be reported on the identical units for which acoustic data is presented.

G. Certification:

1. With submittals, the manufacturer shall supply certified test data on Dynamic Insertion Loss, Self-Noise Power Levels, and Aerodynamic Performance for Reverse and Forward Flow test conditions. Test data shall be for a standard product. All rating tests shall be conducted in the same facility, shall utilize the same silencer, and shall be open to inspection upon request from the Architect/Engineer.

H. Duct Transitions:

1. When transitions are required to adapt silencer dimensions to connecting duct work they shall be furnished by the installing contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers in ducts with liner; avoid damage to and erosion of duct liner.
- E. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches lead from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install at a minimum of two duct widths from branch takeoff.
- F. Provide test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers, with fusible links, according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.
- H. Install duct access doors to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units as follows:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Downstream from volume dampers and equipment.
 - 3. Adjacent to fire or smoke dampers, providing access to reset or reinstall fusible links.
 - 4. To interior of ducts for cleaning; before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50-foot spacing.
 - 5. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
- I. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, rectangular access doors:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 - 6. Body Plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, round access doors:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 10 inches in diameter.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 12 inches in diameter.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 18 inches in diameter.
 - 5. Body Access: 24 inches in diameter.

- K. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "HVAC System Identification."
- L. Install flexible connectors immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment supported by vibration isolators.
- M. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to low pressure ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- O. Install duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.
- B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.
- C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing."

SECTION 233713 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. This Section includes ceiling, wall and floor-mounted diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate Drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 GRILLES, DIFFUSERS AND REGISTERS

- A. See schedule on the drawings.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Krueger.
 - b. Nailor Industries of Texas Inc.
 - c. Price Industries.
 - d. Titus.
 - e. Pre-approved equal.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

SECTION 260010 - SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Supplemental requirements generally applicable to the Work specified in Division 26. This Section is also referenced by related Work specified in other Divisions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Construction Manager's written permission.
- B. Arrange to provide temporary electrical power in accordance with requirements specified in Division 01.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Substitution requests for electrical equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:
 - 1. Substitution requests may be submitted for consideration prior to the Electrical Preconstruction Conference if accompanied by value analysis data indicating that substitution will comply with Project performance requirements while significantly increasing value for Owner throughout life of facility.
 - 2. Substitution requests may be submitted for consideration concurrently with submission of power system study reports when those reports indicate that substitution is necessary for safety of maintenance personnel and facility occupants.
 - 3. Contractor is responsible for sequencing and scheduling power system studies and electrical equipment procurement. After the Electrical Preconstruction Conference, insufficient lead time for electrical equipment delivery will not be considered a valid reason for substitution.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL WORK

A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 1 for installation of Work specified in Division 26. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

3.2 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

A. Training:

- 1. With assistance from factory-authorized service representatives, train Owner's maintenance personnel on the following topics:
 - a. How to adjust, operate, and maintain equipment specified in Section 263213.13 "Diesel-Engine-Driven Generator Sets."
- 2. Provide video recordings of training sessions to Owner.

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
 - 2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
 - 3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
 - 4. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
 - 5. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
 - B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, gualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.
 - 3. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE
 - A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Alpha Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
 - 2. Belden Inc.
 - 3. Cerro Wire LLC.
 - 4. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 5. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 6. Okonite Company (The).
 - 7. Service Wire Co.
 - 8. Southwire Company, LLC.
 - 9. WESCO.

C. Standards:

- 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 3. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 4. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Alpha Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
 - 2. Belden Inc.
 - 3. Cerro Wire LLC.
 - 4. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 5. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 6. Okonite Company (The).
 - 7. Southwire Company, LLC.
 - 8. WESCO.

C. Standards:

- 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- 2. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B800 and ASTM B801.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type USE-2 and Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 3. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 4. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- 2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC
 - A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
 - B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems; Atkore International.
 - 2. Alpha Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
 - 3. Belden Inc.
 - 4. Encore Wire Corporation.
 - 5. General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 6. Okonite Company (The).
 - 7. Southwire Company, LLC.
 - 8. WESCO.

C. Standards:

- 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- 2. Comply with UL 1569.
- 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Circuits:

- 1. Single circuit.
- 2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.
- E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B8 for stranded conductors.
- F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
- G. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

- H. Armor: Aluminum, interlocked.
- I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.
- 2.4 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE
 - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
 - 2. CommScope, Inc.
 - 3. Comtran Corporation.
 - 4. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - 5. PYROTENAX; brand of nVent Electrical plc.
 - 6. Prysmian Cables and Systems; Prysmian Group North America.
 - 7. Radix Wire.
 - 8. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corp.
 - 9. Superior Essex Inc.; subsidiary of LS Corp.
 - 10. West Penn Wire; brand of Belden, Inc.
 - B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
 - C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.
 - 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited firealarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a twohour rating.
 - D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600 V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
 - 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 - 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.

2.5 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- C. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
 - 1. Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
 - 2. Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors must be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits:
 - 1. Copper, Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
 - 2. Copper, Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- C. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.
- 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS
 - A. Service Entrance: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
 - A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
 - B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
 - C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
 - D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
 - E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
 - F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE
 - A. Comply with NFPA 72.
 - B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 280528 "Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security."
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system must be installed in a dedicated pathway system.
 - a. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with firealarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
 - 3. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
 - C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
 - D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
 - E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits

differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

- F. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- G. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1 inch conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material.
 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inch of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. UTP cabling.
 - 2. RS-232 cabling.
 - 3. RS-485 cabling.
 - 4. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 5. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 6. Identification products.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- B. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of an NRTL.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
- B. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
 - 1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
 - 2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
 - 3. Straps and other devices.
- B. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
 - 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

CONTROL VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

2.2 BACKBOARDS

A. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 UTP CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Belden CDT Inc.; Electronics Division.
 - 2. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
 - 3. CommScope, Inc.
 - 4. Draka USA.
 - 5. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - 6. KRONE Incorporated.
 - 7. Mohawk; a division of Belden CDT.
 - 8. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
 - 9. Superior Essex Inc.
 - 10. SYSTIMAX Solutions; a CommScope, Inc. brand.
 - 11. 3M.
 - 12. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.
- B. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP.
 - 1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
 - 2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
 - 3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6.
 - 4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262.

2.4 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Dynacom Corporation.
 - 3. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
 - 4. KRONE Incorporated.
 - 5. Leviton Voice & Data Division.
 - 6. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
 - 7. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
 - 8. Panduit Corp.
 - 9. Siemon Co. (The).
 - 10. Tyco Electronics/AMP Netconnect; Tyco International Ltd.
- B. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.

2.5 RS-232 CABLE

- A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
 - 1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. Polypropylene insulation.
 - 3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
 - PVC jacket.
 - 5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
 - 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. Plastic insulation.
 - 3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
 - 4. Plastic jacket.
 - 5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned-copper drain wire.
 - 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.6 RS-485 CABLE

- A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.
 - 1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.
- 2.7 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE
 - A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
 - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
 - B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
 - C. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
 - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
 - D. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned-copper conductors.
 - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. Plastic jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

2.8 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, complying with UL 83.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway, complying with UL 83.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or Type TF, complying with UL 83.

2.9 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation.
 - 2. HellermannTyton.
 - 3. Kroy LLC.
 - 4. Panduit Corp.

- B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS
 - A. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
 - B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
 - C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
 - D. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
 - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 - 3. Secure conduits to backboard if entering room from overhead.
 - 4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
 - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
 - E. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gapfree corners and joints.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
 - A. Comply with NECA 1.
 - B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
 - 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 - 4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 - 5. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 - 6. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 - 7. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
 - 8. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
 - C. UTP Cable Installation:
 - 1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
 - 2. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
 - D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:
 - 1. Install wiring in raceways. Comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 - E. Open-Cable Installation:
 - 1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
 - 2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.

- 3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- F. Separation from EMI Sources:
 - 1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
 - 2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
 - 3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
 - 4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
 - 5. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
 - 6. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.3 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables.

3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
 - 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No 14 AWG.
 - 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
 - 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits, No 12 AWG.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. For data communications wiring, comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.

- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect UTP cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 - 3. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not after cross connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- D. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Α. Section Includes:

- Grounding and bonding conductors. 1.
- Grounding and bonding connectors. 2.
- 3. Intersystem bonding bridge grounding connector.
- 4. Grounding and bonding busbars.
- Grounding (earthing) electrodes. 5.

Β. **Related Requirements:**

- Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, 1. qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
- 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- Α. Product Data:
 - For each type of product indicated. 1.
- Β. Shop Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features described in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - Test wells. 1.
 - 2. Rod electrodes.
 - 3. Ring electrodes.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 - 5.
- C. Field Quality-Control Submittals: 1.
 - Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

1.

GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS 2.1

- Α. Equipment Grounding Conductor:
 - General Characteristics: 600 V, [THHN/THWN-2] [or] [THWN-2], [copper] [or] [tinned-copper] wire or cable, 1 green color, in accordance with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- Β. ASTM - Bare Copper Grounding and Bonding Conductor:
 - Referenced Standards: Complying with one or more of the following:
 - Soft or Annealed Copper Wire: ASTM B3 a.
 - Concentric-Lay Stranded Copper Conductor: ASTM B8. b.
 - Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire: ASTM B33. c.
 - d. 19-Wire Combination Unilay-Stranded Copper Conductor: ASTM B787/B787M.

2.2 GROUNDING AND BONDING CLAMPS

- Description: Clamps suitable for attachment of grounding and bonding conductors to grounding electrodes, pipes, Α. tubing, and rebar. Grounding and bonding clamps specified in this article are also suitable for use with communications applications; see Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems," for selection and installation auidelines.
- Β. Performance Criteria:
 - 1 **Regulatory Requirements:**

a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 INTERSYSTEM BONDING BRIDGE GROUNDING CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Devices that provide means for connecting communications systems grounding and bonding conductors at service equipment or at disconnecting means for buildings or structures.
- B. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria:
 - a. Grounding and Bonding Equipment for Communications: UL CCN KDSH; including UL 467.

2.4 GROUNDING AND BONDING BUSBARS

A. Description: Miscellaneous grounding and bonding device that serves as common connection for multiple grounding and bonding conductors.

2.5 GROUNDING (EARTHING) ELECTRODES

A. Description: Grounding electrodes include rod electrodes, ring electrodes, metal underground water pipes, metal building frames, concrete-encased electrodes, and pipe and plate electrodes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine facility's grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of electrical system.
- B. Inspect test results of grounding system measured at point of electrical service equipment connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of electrical service equipment only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SELECTION OF BUSBARS

- A. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inch minimum from wall, 6 inch above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.3 SELECTION OF GROUNDING AND BONDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Custom-Length Insulated Equipment Bonding Jumpers: 6 AWG, 19-strand, Type THHN.
- C. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
- D. Bonding Conductor: 4 AWG or 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
- E. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.
F. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inch wide and 1/16 inch thick.

3.4 SELECTION OF CONNECTORS

- A. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 - 1. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
 - 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Techniques:
 - 1. Conductors:
 - a. Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
 - 2. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
 - a. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 - b. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 - c. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless steel separators and mechanical clamps.
 - d. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
 - e. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
 - f. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1) Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate adjacent parts.
 - 2) Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3) Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if disconnect-type connection is required, use bolted clamp.
 - g. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
 - 1) Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use bolted clamp connector or bolt lug-type connector to pipe flange by using one of lug bolts of flange. Where dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 - 2) Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with bolted connector.
 - h. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
 - 3. Electrodes:
 - a. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inch below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1) Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.

- 2) Use exothermic welds for below-grade connections.
- b. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to service grounding electrode conductor.
- c. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and must be at least 12 inch deep, with cover.
 - Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- 4. Grounding at Service:
 - a. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors must be connected to ground bus. Install main bonding jumper between neutral and ground buses.
- 5. Grounding Separately Derived Systems:
 - a. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at generator location. Electrode must be connected to equipment grounding conductor and to frame of generator.
- 6. Equipment Grounding:
 - a. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with feeders and branch circuits.
 - b. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1) Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2) Lighting circuits.
 - 3) Receptacle circuits.
 - 4) Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5) Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6) Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7) Armored and metal-clad cable runs.

SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Conduit and cable support devices.
 - 2. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
 - 3. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
 - B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - C. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32 inch diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inch on center in at least one surface.
 - 1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Plain steel.
 - 3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 6. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs must have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body must be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A36/A36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

- 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
- 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
- 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325.
- 6. Toggle Bolts: [All] [Stainless] steel springhead type.
- 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Comply with requirements for raceways specified in Section 260533.13 "Conduits for Electrical Systems."
- C. Comply with requirements for boxes specified in Section 260533.16 "Boxes and Covers for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and ERMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size must be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2 inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with NECA NEIS 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA NEIS 1, EMT or IMC may be supported by openings through structure members, in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination must be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inch thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inch thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slottedchannel racks attached to substrate[by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements].
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M. Submit welding certificates.

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
- 2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
- 3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
- 4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
- 5. Surface raceways.
- 6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
- 7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
 - 2. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.
 - 3. Section 280528 "Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security" for conduits, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, and faceplate adapters serving electronic safety and security.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS
 - A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
 - B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS
 - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - 2. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - 3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
 - 4. Calconduit.

- 5. Electri-Flex Company.
- 6. FSR Inc.
- 7. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network, Inc (OMNI).
- 8. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
- 9. Picoma Industries, Inc.
- 10. Republic Conduit.
- 11. Robroy Industries.
- 12. Southwire Company.
- 13. Thomas & Betts Corporation, A Member of the ABB Group.
- 14. Topaz Lighting Corp.
- 15. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
- 16. Wheatland Tube Company.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- D. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- E. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
 - PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.

F.

- 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.
- G. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- H. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel or aluminum.
- I. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- J. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
 - 2. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: Setscrew or compression.
 - 3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 - 4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- K. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - 2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
 - 3. Arnco Corporation.
 - 4. CANTEX INC.
 - 5. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - 6. Condux International, Inc.
 - 7. Electri-Flex Company.
 - 8. Kraloy.
 - 9. Lamson & Sessions.
 - 10. Niedax Inc.
 - 11. RACO; Hubbell.
 - 12. Thomas & Betts Corporation, A Member of the ABB Group.

- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
- E. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
- F. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651B.
- G. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
- H. RTRC: Comply with UL 1684A and NEMA TC 14.
- I. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- J. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
- K. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Adalet.
 - 2. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
 - 3. EGS/Appleton Electric.
 - 4. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
 - 5. FSR Inc.
 - 6. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
 - 7. Hubbell Incorporated.
 - 8. Kraloy.
 - 9. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
 - 10. MonoSystems, Inc.
 - 11. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
 - 12. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - 13. RACO; Hubbell.
 - 14. Robroy Industries.
 - 15. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
 - 16. Stahlin Non-Metallic Enclosures.
 - 17. Thomas & Betts Corporation, A Member of the ABB Group.
 - 18. Wiremold / Legrand.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy or aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
 - 1. Material: Cast metal.
 - 2. Type: Fully adjustable.
 - 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 - 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box. J.
- K. Device Box Dimensions: minimum 4 inches square by 1-1/2 inches deep.
- L. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- M. Provide (1) spare floorbox cover for each floorbox within project scope. Turn over to owner for added stock.

2.4 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

- Α. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:
 - Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, 1. for intended location and application.
 - Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, 2. and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. Refer to Specification 270000 "Cabled Telecommunications Infrastructure Project Manual" for telecommunication handhole requirements.
- Β. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two. 1
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Armorcast Products Company. a.
 - Carson Industries LLC. b.
 - NewBasis. c.
 - d. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
 - Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc. е
 - f. Synertech Moulded Products.
 - Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. 2.
 - Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated. 3.
 - Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent 4 with enclosure and handhole location.
 - 5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - 6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC.".
 - 7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 - Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons 8. installed before concrete is poured.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- Α. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

Α. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

- 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
- 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC or EMT.
- 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
- 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
- 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated on plan:
 - 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 - 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
 - a. Mechanical rooms.
 - b. Gymnasiums.
 - Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 - 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 - 6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
 - 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size, unless indicated otherwise on plan.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
 - 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.

- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs: shall not be allowed
- J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- O. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- P. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- Q. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- S. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- T. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- U. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- V. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
 - Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
 - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
 d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
 - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and

contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.

- 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
- 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- W. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
 - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- X. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- Y. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- Z. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- AA. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- BB. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- CC. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- DD. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- EE. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
 - 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
 - 2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
 - 5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 - 6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
 - 7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, 36 inches below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS
 - A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Labels.
 - 2. Signs.
 - 3. Miscellaneous identification products.
 - B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
 - A. Comply with ASME A13.1.
 - B. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 for color identification of hazards; 29 CFR 1910.145 for danger, caution, warning, and safety instruction signs and tags; and the following:
 - C. Signs, labels, and tags required for personnel safety must comply with the following standards:
 - 1. Safety Colors: NEMA Z535.1.
 - 2. Facility Safety Signs: NEMA Z535.2.
 - 3. Safety Symbols: NEMA Z535.3.
 - 4. Product Safety Signs and Labels: NEMA Z535.4.
 - 5. Safety Tags and Barricade Tapes for Temporary Hazards: NEMA Z535.5.
 - D. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
 - E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, must comply with UL 969.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 1000 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 1000 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color must be factory applied.
 - 2. Colors for 208Y/120 V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 - 3. Colors for 240 V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - 4. Colors for 480Y/277 V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 - 5. Color for Neutral: White.

- 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
- 7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with two or more yellow stripes.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
 - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on orange background.
- D. Warning labels and signs must include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
- E. Equipment Identification Labels:1. Black letters on white field.

2.3 SIGNS

- A. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
 - 1. Engraved legend.
 - 2. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to 20 sq. inch, minimum 1/16 inch thick.
 - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. inch, 1/8 inch thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
- 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS
 - A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
 - B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless steel screws or stainless steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 1000 V: Identification must completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

- I. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8 inch high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- J. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from floor.
- K. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify cover of junction and pull box of the following systems with wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends must be as follows:
 - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
 - 2. "POWER."
 - 3. "UPS."
- L. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
 - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at location with high visibility and accessibility.
 - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to location and substrate.
- M. Snap-Around Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. Install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch high letters on 1-1/2 inch high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch high.
- P. Snap-Around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- U. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's instructions.
- V. Underground Line Warning Tape:
 - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inch below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in common trench [or concrete envelope]exceeds 16 inch overall.
 - 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- W. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
 - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to location and substrate.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide single line of text with 1/2 inch high letters on 1-1/2 inch high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inch high.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.

- D. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- E. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive labels.
 - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- F. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- G. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs.
- H. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with white legend on red background with minimum 3/8 inch high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.
- I. Equipment Identification Labels:
 - 1. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive label or Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
 - 2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.

SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Electronic time switches.
- 2. Electromechanical dial-time switches.
- 3. Outdoor photoelectric switches, solid state, flexible mounting.
- 4. Lighting contactors.
- 5. Conductors and cables.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
- 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.
- 3. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 ELECTROMECHANICAL DIAL-TIME SWITCHES
 - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Intermatic, Inc.
 - 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 4. Schneider Electric USA, Inc.
 - B. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Comply with UL 917.
 - 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Contact Configuration: as indicated on plans.
 - 3. Contact Rating: 30 A inductive or resistive, 240 V(ac).
 - 4. Circuitry: Allows connection of a photoelectric relay as a substitute for the on-off function of a program.
 - 5. Astronomic time dial.
 - 6. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
 - 7. Skip-a-day mode.
 - 8. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of 16 hours.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES, SOLID STATE, FLEXIBLE MOUNTING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Intermatic, Inc.
 - 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 4. nLight; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
- B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
 - 1. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

- 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
- 3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
- 4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
- 5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with ANSI C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure from same source and manufacturer as switch.
- 6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

2.3 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF SENSORS

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WIRING

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors in accordance with conductor manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size conductors in accordance with lighting control device manufacturer's instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, device, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

SECTION 260943 - DISTRIBUTED DIGITAL LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Digital Lighting Controls
- 2. Relay Panels
- 3. Emergency Lighting Control (if applicable)

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 26 27 26 Wiring Devices
- 2. Drawings and general provision of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections apply to this Section
- 3. Electrical Sections, including wiring devices, apply to the work of this Section.

1.2 LIGHTING CONTROL APPLICATIONS

- A. Provide a minimum application of lighting controls as follows:
 - Space Control Requirements Provide occupancy/vacancy sensors with Manual-ON functionality in all spaces except toilet rooms, corridors where Automatic-ON occupancy sensors shall be provided. Provide Manual-ON occupancy/vacancy sensors for any enclosed office, conference room, meeting room, open plan offices and training rooms. Refer to Occupancy/Vacancy sensor schedule on plans for exact model requirements.
 - 2. Daylit Areas Provide daylight-responsive automatic control in Bistro area for all lighting fixtures within daylight zone. Daylight zone shall encompass all fixtures within 15ft of exterior windows.
 - a. All luminaires within defined daylight zones shall be controlled separately from luminaires outside of daylit zones.
 - b. Provide smooth and continuous daylight dimming for areas with daylight control. Daylighting control system may be designed to turn off electric lighting when daylight is at or above required lighting levels, only if system functions to turn lamps back on at dimmed level, rather than turning full-on prior to dimming.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. In addition to equipment cutsheet submittal requirements indicated in previous sections of this specification, provide the following:
 - 1. Show exact location of all digital devices, including at minimum sensors, room controllers, and switches for each area on reflected ceiling plans.
 - 2. Provide room/area details including devices and sequence of operation for the following areas, Bistro, Open Lobby Area and Board Room/Meeting Room.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer: Minimum 10 years experience in manufacture of lighting controls.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Provide a five year limited manufacturer's warranty on all room control devices.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Sequence of Operations: Input signal from field-mounted manual switches, or digital signal sources, shall open or close one or more lighting control relays in the lighting control panels. Any combination of inputs shall be programmable to any number of control relays.

- B. Surge Protective Device: Factory installed as an integral part of control components or field-mounted surge suppressors complying with UL 1449, SPD Type 2.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with 47 CFR 15, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.
- E. Comply with UL 916.
- 2.2 MANUFACTURERS
 - A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - 1. Basis of design product: WattStopper Digital Lighting Management (DLM) or subject to compliance and prior approval with specified requirements of this section, one of the following alternate manufacturers:
 - a. GreenMAX DRC Room Control System by Leviton
 - b. nLight by Acuity Brands
 - c. Or approved equal
- 2.3 LIGHTING CONTROL RELAY PANELS
 - A. Description: Standalone lighting control panel using mechanically latched relays to control lighting and appliances.
 - B. Lighting Control Panel:
 - 1. A single enclosure with incoming lighting branch circuits, control circuits, switching relays, and on-board timing and control unit.
 - 2. A vertical barrier separating branch circuits from control wiring.
 - C. Control Unit: Contain the power supply and electronic control for operating and monitoring individual relays.
 - 1. Timing Unit:
 - a. 365-day calendar, astronomical clock, and automatic adjustments for daylight savings and leap year.
 - b. Clock configurable for 12-hour (A.M./P.M.) or 24-hour format.
 - c. Four independent schedules, each having 24 time periods.
 - d. Schedule periods settable to the minute.
 - e. Day-of-week, day-of-month, day-of-year with one-time or repeating capability.
 - f. 10 special date periods.
 - 2. Sequencing Control with Override:
 - a. Automatic sequenced on and off switching of selected relays at times set at the timing unit, allowing timed overrides from external switches.
 - b. Sequencing control shall operate relays one at a time, completing the operation of all connected relays in not more than 10 seconds.
 - c. Override control shall allow any relay connected to it to be switched on or off by a field-deployed manual switch or by an automatic switch, such as an occupancy sensor.
 - d. Override control "blink warning" shall warn occupants approximately [five minutes] <Insert time> before actuating the off sequence.
 - 3. Nonvolatile memory shall retain all setup configurations. After a power failure, the controller shall automatically reboot and return to normal system operation, including accurate time of day and date.
 - D. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 277 V. Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 5 kA. Control shall be three-wire, 24-V ac.
 - E. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 120-V tungsten, 30 A at 277-V ballast, 1.5 hp at 120 V, and 3 hp at 277 V. Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 14 kA. Control shall be three-wire, 24-V ac.
 - F. Power Supply: NFPA 70, Class 2, sized for connected equipment, plus 20 percent spare capacity. Powered from a dedicated branch circuit of the panelboard that supplies power to the line side of the relays, sized to provide control power for the local panel-mounted relays, bus system, low-voltage inputs, field-installed occupancy sensors, and photo sensors.
 - G. Operator Interface:

- 1. Integral alphanumeric keypad and digital display, and intuitive drop-down menus to assist in programming.
- 2. Log and display relay on-time.
- 3. Connect relays to one or more time and sequencing schemes.

2.4 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES

- A. Push-Button Switches: Modular, momentary contact, three wire, for operating one or more relays and to override automatic controls.
 - 1. Match color and style specified in Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."
 - 2. Integral green LED pilot light to indicate when circuit is on.
 - 3. Internal white LED locator light to illuminate when circuit is off.
- B. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."
- C. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.
- 2.5 FIELD-MOUNTED SIGNAL SOURCES
 - A. Daylight Harvesting Switching Controls: Comply with Section 26 09 23 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.
 - B. Indoor Occupancy Sensors[and Extreme-Temperature Occupancy Sensors]: Comply with Section 26 09 23 "Lighting Control Devices." Control power may be taken from the lighting control panel, and signal shall be compatible with the relays.

2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than [No. 18] [No. 22] [No. 24] AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Digital and Multiplexed Signal Cables: Unshielded, twisted-pair cable with copper conductors. Comply with requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2, Category 6 for horizontal copper cable and in Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

2.7 SENSORS

- A. Sensors shall be provided with calibration and pushbutton configuration for the following variables:
 - 1. Sensitivity 0-100% in 10% increments
 - 2. Time delay 1-30 minutes in 1 minute increments
 - 3. Test mode Five second time delay
 - 4. Walk-through mode
 - 5. Load parameters including Auto/Manual-ON, blink warning, and daylight enable/disable when photosensors are included in the DLM local network.
- B. Remote programming through handheld configuration tool and control by remote personal controls shall be required.
- C. Assignment of occupancy sensor to a specific load within the room without wiring or special tools.
- D. Manual override of controlled loads.
- E. All digital parameter data programmed into an individual wall switch sensor shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the wall switch sensor itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 5 years.
- F. Multiple occupancy sensors may be installed in a room by simply connecting them to the free topology DLM local network. No additional configuration will be required.

2.8 DIGITAL WALL SWITCHES

- A. Low voltage momentary pushbutton switches in up to 8 button configurations. Wall switches shall include the following features:
 - 1. Removable buttons for field replacement with engraved buttons and/or alternate color buttons. Button replacement may be completed without removing the switch from the wall.
 - 2. Configuration LED on each switch that blinks to indicate data transmission.
 - 3. Dimming switches shall include LEDs to indicate load levels using steps.
 - 4. All digital parameter data programmed into an individual wall switch shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the wall switch itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 5 years.
- B. Multiple digital wall switches may be installed in a room by simply connecting them to the free topology DLM local network. No additional configuration shall be required to achieve multi-way switching.
- C. The following switch attributes may be changed or selected using a wireless configuration tool:
 - 1. Load and Scene button function may be reconfigured for individual buttons (from Load to Scene, and vice versa).
 - 2. Individual button function may be configured to Toggle, On only or Off only.
 - 3. Individual scenes may be locked to prevent unauthorized change.
 - 4. Switch buttons may be bound to any load on a room controller and are not load type dependant; each button may be bound to multiple loads.

2.9 DIGITAL PARTITION CONTROLS

- A. Partition controls shall enable manual coordination of lighting controls in flexible spaces with up to three moveable walls by reconfiguring the connected digital switches and occupancy sensors.
- B. Four-button low voltage pushbutton switch for manual control.
 - 1. Removable buttons for field replacement with engraved buttons and/or alternate color buttons. Button replacement may be completed without removing the switch from the wall.
 - 2. Configuration LED on each switch that blinks to indicate data transmission.
 - 3. Each button represents one wall; LED lit button indicates status.
- C. Contact closure interface for automatic control via input from limit switches on movable walls (by others).
 - 1. Operates on Class 2 power supplied by DLM local network.
 - 2. Includes 24VDC output and four input terminals for maintained third party contract closure inputs.
 - 3. Four status LEDs under hinged cover indicate if walls are open or closed.

2.10 DAYLIGHTING SENSORS

- A. Digital daylighting sensors shall work with room controllers to provide automatic switching, bi-level, or tri-level or dimming daylight harvesting capabilities for any load type connected to a room controller. Daylighting sensors shall be interchangeable without the need for rewiring.
 - 1. Closed loop sensors measure the ambient light in the space and control a single lighting zone.
- B. Digital daylighting sensors shall include the following features:
 - 1. The sensor's internal photodiode shall only measure lightwaves within the visible spectrum. The photodiode's spectral response curve shall closely match the entire photopic curve. The photodiode shall not measure energy in either the ultraviolet or infrared spectrums. The photocell shall have a sensitivity of less than 5% for any wavelengths less than 400 nanometers or greater than 700 nanometers.
 - 2. Sensor light level range shall be from 1-6,500 footcandles (fc).
 - 3. The capability of ON/OFF, bi-level or tri-level switching, or dimming, for each controlled zone, depending on the selection of room controller(s) and load binding to room controller(s).
 - 4. For switching daylight harvesting, the photosensor shall provide a field-selectable deadband, or a separation, between the "ON Setpoint" and the "OFF Setpoint" that will prevent the lights from cycling excessively after they turn off.
 - 5. For dimming daylight harvesting, the photosensor shall provide the option, when the daylight contribution is sufficient, of turning lights off or dimming lights to a field-selectable minimum level.
 - 6. Photosensors shall have a digital, independently configurable fade rate for both increasing and decreasing light level in units of percent per second.

- 7. Photosensors shall provide adjustable cut-off time. Cut-off time is defined by the number of selected minutes the load is at the minimum output before the load turns off. Selectable range between 0-240 minutes including option to never cut-off.
- 8. Optional wall switch override shall allow occupants to reduce lighting level to increase energy savings or, raise lighting levels for a selectable period of time or cycle of occupancy.
- 9. Configuration LED status light on device that blinks to indicate data transmission.
- 10. Status LED indicates test mode, override mode and load binding.
- 11. Recessed switch on device to turn controlled load(s) ON and OFF.
- 12. A choice of accessories to accommodate multiple mounting methods and building materials. The photosensors may be mounted on a ceiling tile, or backbox. Provide photosensor compatible with mounting material (up to 1.25" thick. Mounting brackets are compatible with J boxes and wall mounting.
- 13. Any load or group of loads in the room can be assigned to a daylighting zone
- 14. All digital parameter data programmed into a photosensor shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the photosensor itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 5 years.
- C. Closed loop digital photosensors shall include the following additional features:
 - 1. An internal photodiode that measures light in a 100-degree angle, cutting off the unwanted light from bright sources outside of this cone.
 - 2. Automatic self-calibration, initiated from the photosensor or a wireless configuration tool.
 - 3. Automatically establishes application-specific setpoints following self-calibration. For switching operation, an adequate deadband between the ON and OFF setpoints shall prevent the lights from cycling; for dimming operation a sliding setpoint control algorithm with separate Day and Night setpoints shall prevent abrupt ramping of loads.
- D. Open loop digital photosensors shall include the following additional features:
 - 1. An internal photodiode that measures light in a 60-degree angle cutting off the unwanted light from the interior of the room.
 - 2. Automatically establishes application-specific setpoints following manual calibration using a wireless configuration tool or a PC with appropriate software. For switching operation, an adequate deadband between the ON and OFF setpoints for each zone shall prevent the lights from cycling; for dimming operation, a proportional control algorithm shall maintain the design lighting level in each zone.
 - 3. Each of the three discrete daylight zones can include any non overlapping group of loads in the room.

2.11 ROOM CONTROLLERS

- A. Digital controllers for lighting and plug loads automatically bind the room loads to the connected devices in the space without the use of any tools. Room load controllers shall be provided to match the room lighting control requirements. The controllers will be simple to install, and will not have dip switches or potentiometers. The control units will include the following features:
 - 1. Automatic room configuration to the most energy-efficient sequence of operation based upon the devices in the room.
 - 2. Multiple room controllers connected together in a local network must automatically prioritize each room controller, without requiring any configuration or setup, so that loads are sequentially assigned using room controller device ID's from highest to lowest.
 - 3. Device Status LEDs to indicate:
 - a. Data transmission
 - b. Device has power
 - c. Status for each load
 - d. Configuration status
 - 4. Each load shall be configurable to operate in the following sequences based on occupancy:
 - a. Auto-on/Auto-off (Follow on and off)
 - b. Manual-on/Auto-off (Follow off only)
 - 5. All wiring shall be UL 2043 plenum rated
 - 6. Manual override and LED indication for each load
 - Dual voltage 120/277 VAC, 60 Hz. 120/277 volt models rated for 20A total load, derating to 16A required for some dimmed loads (forward phase dimming). Separate controllers shall be provided for 120 volt loads and 277 volt loads
 - 8. All digital parameter data programmed into an individual room controller or plug load controller shall be retained in non-volatile FLASH memory within the controller itself. Memory shall have an expected life of no less than 5 years.
- B. On/Off Room Controllers shall include:

- 1. One or two relay configuration
- 2. Efficient 150 mÅ switching power supply
- C. On/Off/Dimming enhanced Room Controllers shall include:
 - 1. Real time current monitoring
 - 2. Multiple relay configurations
 - 3. One dimming output per relay
 - a. 0-10V Dimming Where indicated, one 0-10 volt analog output per relay for control of compatible ballasts and LED drivers. The 0-10 volt output shall automatically open upon loss of power to the Room Controller to assure full light output from the controlled lighting.
 - b. Each dimming output channel shall have an independently configurable minimum and maximum calibration trim level to set the dimming range to match the true dynamic range of the connected ballast or driver.
 - c. Each dimming output channel shall have an independently configurable minimum and maximum trim level to set the dynamic range of the output within the new 0-100% dimming range defined by the minimum and maximum calibration trim.
 - d. Calibration and trim levels must be set per output channel.
 - 4. Each load shall have an independently configurable preset on level for Normal Hours and After Hours events to allow different dimmed levels to be established at the start of both Normal Hours and After Hours events.
 - 5. Fade rates for dimming loads shall be specific to bound switch buttons, and the load shall maintain a default value for any bound buttons that do not specify a unique value.
 - 6. Override button for each load provides the following functions:
 - a. Press and release for on/off control
 - b. Press and hold for dimming control
- 2.12 DLM LOCAL NETWORK (Room Network)
 - A. The DLM local network is a free topology lighting control physical connection and communication protocol designed to control a small area of a building.
 - B. Features of the DLM local network include:
 - 1. Simple replacement of any device in the network with a standard unit without requiring commissioning, configuration or setup.
 - 2. Communications for control by handheld remotes, and configuration by a handheld tool including adjusting load parameters, sensor configuration and binding, within a line of sight of up to 30 feet from a sensor, wall switch or IR receiver.
- 2.13 CONFIGURATION TOOLS
 - A. A wireless configuration tool facilitates optional customization of DLM local networks using infrared communications.
 - B. Features and functionality of the wireless configuration tool shall include but not be limited to:
 - 1. Communication with DLM IR-enabled devices within a range of approximately 30 feet.
 - 2. Must be able to read and modify parameters for room controllers, occupancy sensors, wall switches, daylighting sensors, network bridges and relay panels, and identify room devices by type and serial number.
 - 3. Save up to eight occupancy sensor setting profiles, and apply profiles to selected sensors.
 - 4. Adjust or fine-tune daylighting settings established during auto-configuration, and input light level data to complete configuration of open loop daylighting controls.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 PANEL INSTALLATION
 - A. Comply with NECA 1.
 - B. Install panels and accessories according to NECA 407.
 - C. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Mount panel cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- E. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- 3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION
 - A. Comply with NECA 1.
 - B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceways. Minimum conduit size shall be 1/2 inch.
 - 1. For power wiring comply with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables"
 - 2. For digital data transmission and low-voltage (operating at less than 50 V) remote control and signaling cables, comply with Division 26 Section "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables"
 - C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
 - D. Install field-mounting transient voltage suppressors for lighting control devices in Category A locations that do not have integral line-voltage surge protection.
 - E. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
 - F. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in terminal cabinets, equipment enclosures, and in junction, pull, and outlet boxes.
 - G. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - H. Contractor to install all room/area devices using manufacturer's factory-tested category cable with pre-terminated 8P8C connectors.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
 - A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test for circuit continuity.
 - 2. Verify that the control module features are operational.
 - 3. Check operation of local override controls.
 - 4. Test system diagnostics by simulating improper operation of several components selected by Architect.
 - C. Lighting controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.4 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION
 - A. Install and program software with initial settings of adjustable values. Make backup copies of software and usersupplied values. Provide current licenses for software.
- 3.5 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTING
 - A. System functional performance testing is part of the Commissioning Process as specified in Section 01 91 13. Functional performance testing shall be performed by the contractor and witnessed and documented by the Commissioning Authority.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting controls. See Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training." Training of the Owner's operation and maintenance personnel is required in cooperation with the Commissioning Authority. The instruction shall be scheduled in coordination with the Commissioning Authority after submission and approval of formal training plans.

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Power panelboards.
- 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
- 3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260011 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- B. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. Power panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Load centers.
 - 4. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 5. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 6. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
 - 4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 6. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for series rating of installed devices.
 - 7. Include evidence of listing, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for SPD as installed in panelboard.
 - 8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 - 9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
 - 11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of coordination curves.
- C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
 - 1. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty documentation.
- 1.5 WARRANTY
 - A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed panelboards perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
 - 1. Extended-Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS
 - A. Fabricate and test panelboards in accordance with IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 - B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing agency recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
 - D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1

- E. Enclosures: Flush or Surface-mounted as indicated on plans, dead-front cabinets.
 - Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.
 - 2. Height: 7 ft maximum.
 - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims must cover live parts and may have no exposed hardware.
- F. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
 - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
- G. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with lug on neutral bar for each pole in panelboard.
 - 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with lug on bar for each pole in panelboard.
 - 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 - 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- H. Quality-Control Label: Panelboards or load centers must be labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers must have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- I. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers must have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- J. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating:
 - 1. Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for series-connected short-circuit rating.

- 2. Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
- K. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than 36 inch high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Listing Criteria: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- 2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES
 - A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event must be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
 - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
 - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.

- 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6 mA trip).
- 6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30 mA trip).
- 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240 V, single-pole configuration.
- 8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
- 9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - g. Shunt Trip: 120 V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
 - h. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in off position.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 - 1. Panelboards: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NECA 407.
 - 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Techniques:

- 1. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- 2. Mount top of trim 7.5 ft above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- 4. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- 5. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - a. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- 6. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- 7. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- 8. Stub four 1 inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in future. Stub four 1 inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.
- E. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles must be located on interior of panelboard door.
- F. Breaker Labels: Faceplate must list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

- G. Circuit Directory:
 - 1. Provide directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
 - a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.
 - 2. Provide computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
 - a. Circuit directory must identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from other circuits.
 - 3. Create directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- C. Nonconforming Work:
 - 1. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.
- D. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports, including certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. General-use switches, dimmer switches, and fan-speed controller switches.
 - 2. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
 - 3. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
 - 4. Connectors, cords, and plugs.
 - B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for occupancy sensors, timers, control-voltage switches, and control-voltage dimmers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. General-use switches, dimmer switches, and fan-speed controller switches.
 - 2. General-grade duplex straight-blade receptacles.
 - 3. Receptacles with arc-fault and ground-fault protective devices.
 - 4. Special-purpose power outlet assemblies.
 - 5. Connectors, cords, and plugs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 GENERAL-USE SWITCHES, DIMMER SWITCHES, AND FAN-SPEED CONTROLLER SWITCHES
 - A. Toggle Switch:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
 - 2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN WMUZ and UL 20.
 - Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, 120-277 V, 20 A,.
 - 5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.
 - B. Dimmer Switch:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. GE Lighting; a Savant Company.
 - b. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
 - 2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN EOYX and UL 1472 Type I dimmer.

WIRING DEVICES

- 4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Dimming Control Style: Slide.
- 5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.

2.2 GENERAL-GRADE DUPLEX STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle: 1. Manufacturers: Subject to co
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
 - 2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
 - 4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R unless noted otherwise on plans.
 - 5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.
- B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
 - 2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
 - 4. Options:

1.

1.

- a. Device Color: White.
- b. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
- 5. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish.
- C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with USB Outlet to Power Class 2 Equipment:
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC.
 - 2. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN RTRT and UL 498.
 - 4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - b. Configuration:
 - 1) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R; two USB-A ports.
 - 2) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R; two USB-C ports.
 - 3) General-duty, NEMA 5-20R; one USB-A port; one USB-C port.

WIRING DEVICES
- 4) General-duty, smooth face, two USB-A ports.
- 5) General-duty, smooth face, four USB-A ports.
- 5. Accessories:
 - Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color а. matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish. b.

2.3 RECEPTACLES WITH ARC-FAULT AND GROUND-FAULT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. General-Grade, Weather-Resistant, Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with GFCI Device: 1.
 - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated. a.
 - Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc. b.
 - Pass & Seymour; Legrand North America, LLC. c.
 - Regulatory Requirements: 2.
 - Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized a. by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - General Characteristics: 3.
 - Reference Standards: UL CCN KCXS, UL 498, and UL 943. a.
 - 4. Options:
 - a. Device Color: White.
 - Configuration: Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-20R. b.
 - 5. Accessories:
 - Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color a. matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wallplate finish. b.

2.4 CONNECTORS, CORDS, AND PLUGS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 **EXAMINATION**

- Α. Receptacles:
 - Verify that receptacles to be procured and installed for Owner-furnished equipment are compatible with 1 mating attachment plugs on equipment.

Β. Cord Reels:

- Examine roughing-in for cord reel mounting and power connections to verify actual locations of mounts and 1. power connections before cord reel installation.
- . Examine walls, floors, and ceilings for suitable conditions where cord reel will be installed. 2.
- Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. 3

3.2 INSTALLATION OF SWITCHES

- Α. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- Β. Reference Standards:
 - Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, 1. comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
 - 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
 - 3. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Identification:
 - Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with 1 Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - Mark cover or cover plate using hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering, a. and provide durable wire markers or tags inside device box or outlet box.
 - Healthcare Facilities: Distinctively identify covers or cover plates of device boxes and outlet boxes b. that are supplied from life safety and critical branch power supplies following facility's standard practice.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 - 1. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with installation instructions in NECA NEIS 130.
 - 2. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, comply with mounting heights recommended in NECA NEIS 1.
 - 3. Receptacle Orientation: Unless otherwise indicated in Contract Documents, orient receptacle to match configuration diagram in NEMA WD 6.
 - 4. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Identification:

1. Identify cover or cover plate for device with panelboard identification and circuit number in accordance with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

SECTION 262813 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes: Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in switches and enclosed controllers.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
 - 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
 - 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
 - 4. Littelfuse, Inc.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 FUSE APPLICATIONS
 - A. Service Entrance: Class L, time delay or Class J, time delay.
 - B. Feeders: Class L, time delay or Class J, time delay.
 - C. Motor Branch Circuits: Class J, time delay.
 - D. Other Branch Circuits: Class J, time delay.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block and holder.

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Enclosures.
 - B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
- 1.2 DEFINITIONS
 - A. GFEP: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for equipment protection.
 - B. GFLS: Ground-fault circuit-interrupter for life safety.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 2. Enclosure types and details for types other than UL 50E, Type 1.
 - 3. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 - 5. Include evidence of qualified electrical testing laboratory listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 - 7. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in [PDF] [and] <Insert calculation program format> electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
 - 1. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample warranties.
- 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
 - A. Warranty documentation.
- 1.6 WARRANTY
 - A. Special Installer Extended Warranty: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed enclosed switches and circuit breakers perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components or products that fail to perform as specified within extended-warranty period.
 - 1. Extended-Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Eaton.
 - 2. Siemens Industry, Inc., Energy Management Division.
 - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric USA.
- B. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 V(ac), 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 600 V(ac), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, 600 V(ac), 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, UL 50E, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: Enclosure must be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (UL 50E Type 1).
- C. Conduit Entry: UL 50E Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures may not contain knockouts. UL 50E Types 7 and 9 enclosures must be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 SELECTION OF ENCLOSURES
 - A. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: UL 50E, Type 1.
 - B. Outdoor Locations: UL 50E, Type 3R.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Special Techniques:

- 1. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- 2. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- 3. Install fuses in fusible devices.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

SECTION 263323 - CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following central battery and power conversion equipment rated 600 V and less for emergency lighting:
 - 1. Interruptible (slow-transfer) central battery equipment.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct digital control.
- B. IBC: International Building Code.
- C. Interruptible: As used in the Section Text, an off-line, passive-standby or line-interactive, inverter-only unit, with an intentional interruption of power to the load until an internal transfer switch picks up and transfers the load to the unit's inverter and internal battery source on loss of the "normal" source, and then retransfers to the "normal" source when it is restored. Transfer time can be "slow" (up to approximately 1 second) or "fast" (2-4 ms or 40-50 ms, depending on manufacturer).
- D. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- E. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- F. NiCd: Nickel cadmium.
- G. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- H. PC: Personal computer.
- I. PWM: Pulse-width modulated.
- J. TDD: Total demand (harmonic current) distortion (also listed as "THD" in catalog data by manufacturers).
- K. THD(V): Total harmonic voltage demand.
- L. Uninterruptible: As used in the Section Text, an on-line, double-conversion (rectifier/inverter) unit, with no interruption of power to the load on interruption and restoration of the "normal" source.
- M. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- N. VRLA: Valve-regulated lead acid.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
 - A. See Section 01 3000 Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
 - B. Product Data: For each type and rating of central battery equipment unit.
 - 1. Include features, performance, electrical ratings, operating characteristics, shipping and operating weights, shipping splits, and furnished options, specialties, and accessories.
 - C. Shop Drawings: For each type and rating of central battery equipment unit.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, ventilation requirements, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

- 3. Include system one-line diagram, internal and interconnecting wiring; and diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- 4. Include elevation, details, and legends of control and indication displays.
- 5. Include -circuit current (withstand) rating of unit.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3000 Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of central battery equipment.
- C. Harmonic Analysis Study and Report: Comply with IEEE 399 and NETA Acceptance Testing Specification; identify the effects of nonlinear loads and their associated harmonic contributions on the voltages and currents throughout the electrical system. Analyze [possible] [designated] operating scenarios, including recommendations for input filtering of central battery equipment to limit TDD and THD(V) to specified levels.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For central battery equipment to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing central battery equipment.
 - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
 - c. Manufacturer's written instructions for selecting and setting field-adjustable controls and status and alarm points

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver equipment in fully enclosed vehicles.
- B. Store equipment in spaces having environments controlled within manufacturers' written instructions for ambient temperature and humidity conditions for non-operating equipment.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Less than -10 deg F or exceeding 110 deg F, with an average value exceeding 95 deg F over a 24-hour period.
 - 2. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 01 7800 Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace central battery equipment that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Special warranty, applying to batteries only, applies to materials only, on a prorated basis, for period specified.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Include the following warranty periods, from date of Substantial Completion:
 - a. Central Battery Equipment (excluding Batteries): Two year(s).
 - b. Standard VRLA Batteries:
 - 1) Full Warranty: One year.
 - 2) Pro Rata: Nine years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 INTERRUPTIBLE (SLOW-TRANSFER) CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT
 - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Chloride Systems.
 - 2. Controlled Power Company; an Emerson company.

- 3. Cooper Industries, Inc.
- 4. Crucial Power Products.
- 5. Dual-Lite.
- 6. Emergi-Lite; a Thomas & Betts brand.
- 7. Light-Alarm; a Thomas & Betts brand.
- 8. LightGuard, A Philips Group Brand.
- 9. Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
- 10. Myers Power Products, Inc.
- 11. Thomas & Betts Corporation, A Member of the ABB Group.
- 12. Substitutions: See Section 01 6000 Product Requirements, for substitution procedures.
- B. General Requirements for Interruptible (Slow-Transfer) Central Battery Equipment:
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label central battery equipment to comply with UL 924.
 - 3. Comply with the IBC, NFPA 70, and NFPA 101.
 - 4. Source Limitations: Obtain central battery equipment, including batteries, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Performance Requirements:
 - 1. Slow-Transfer Central Battery Equipment: Passive-standby (off-line) system. Automatically sense loss of normal alternating-current (ac) supply and use an electromechanical transfer switch to transfer loads. Transfer in one second or less from normal supply to battery-inverter supply.
 - 2. Automatic Operation:
 - a. Normal Conditions: Supply the load with ac power flowing from normal ac power input terminals, bypassing inverter, with battery connected in parallel via rectifier/charger output.
 - b. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal ac supply deviates from specified voltage, transfer switch operates and battery supplies constant, regulated ac power through the inverter to the load, with a momentary loss of power to the load.
 - c. If normal power fails, transfer switch operates and battery supplies constant, regulated ac power through the inverter to the load, with a momentary loss of power to the load.
 - d. If a fault occurs in system when being supplied by inverter and current flows in excess of the overload rating of inverter, inverter automatically protects itself against damage from overloads and short circuits by shutting down.
 - e. When normal ac power is restored at input supply terminals of unit, controls automatically retransfer the load back to the normal ac supply, with a momentary loss of power to the load. Rectifier/charger then recharges battery.
 - f. If normal power failure is prolonged (more than 90 minutes), integral low-voltage battery protective circuit disconnects battery and prevents battery from damage due to deep discharge.
 - g. If battery becomes discharged, and when normal ac supply is again available, rectifier/charger recharges battery. When battery is fully charged, rectifier/charger automatically shifts to float-charge mode.
 - h. If battery is disconnected, and normal ac power is available, central battery equipment continues to supply power to the load with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of output bus.
- D. Unit Operating Requirements:
 - 1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus 15 percent of central battery equipment input voltage rating.
 - 2. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of central battery equipment frequency rating.
 - 3. Minimum Off-Line Efficiency: 99 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
 - 4. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent under any load or operating condition.
 - 5. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating (Other Than Batteries): Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 158 deg F
 - 6. Ambient Storage Temperature Rating (Batteries): Not less than -10 deg F and not exceeding 110 deg F
 - 7. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
 - 8. Off-Line Overload Capability: 1.5 times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
- E. Inverter and Controls Logic: Microprocessor based, isolated from all power circuits; provides complete selfdiagnostics, periodic automatic testing and reporting; with alarms.
- F. Controls and Indication:
 - Status Indication: Door-mounted, labeled LED indicators or digital screen displaying the following conditions:
 a. Normal power available.

- b. Status of system.
- c. Battery charging status.
- d. On battery power.
- e. System fault.
- f. External fault.
- G. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
 - 1. Input transient protection by means of surge suppressors to provide protection against damage from supply voltage surges as defined in IEEE C62.45, Category B and C.
 - 2. Integral, programmable, self-diagnostic and self-test circuitry; with alarms and logging.
 - 3. Battery deep-discharge and self-discharge protection; with alarms.
 - 4. Battery self-test circuitry; with alarms and logging.
- H. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: Thermal-magnetic circuit breaker, complying with UL 489.
 1. Integrated Equipment Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: 22 kA.
- I. Inverter:
 - 1. Description: Solid-state, high-frequency, PWM type, with the following operational features:
 - a. Automatically regulate output voltage to within plus or minus 5 percent, for all load ranges and for maximum 25 percent step-load changes.
 - b. Automatically regulate output frequency to within plus or minus 1 Hz, from no load to full load, at unity power factor, over the operating range of battery voltage.
 - c. Output Voltage Waveform: Sine wave with maximum 5 percent TDD throughout battery operating-voltage range, for 100 percent linear load.
 - d. Inverter Overload Capability: 115 percent for 10 minutes; 150 percent surge for 10 seconds.
- J. Rectifier/Battery Charger:
 - 1. Description: Solid state, variable rate, temperature compensated; automatically maintains batteries in fully charged condition when normal power is available.
 - 2. Maximum Battery Recharge Time from Fully Discharged State: 24 hours.
 - Low-voltage disconnect circuit reduces battery discharge during extended power outages, monitors battery voltage, and disconnects inverter when battery voltage drops to no less than 85.7 percent of nominal voltage.
- K. Batteries:
 - 1. Description: Standard VRLA batteries.
 - a. Capable of sustaining full-capacity output of inverter unit for minimum of 90 minutes.
 - 2. Battery Disconnect and OCPD: Manufacturer's standard.
- L. Maintenance Bypass Systems:
 - 1. Maintenance Bypass Mode: Internal; manual operation only; bypasses central battery equipment power circuits (inverter and transfer switch); requires local operator selection at central battery equipment. Transfer and retransfer shall be break-before-make, with temporary disrupting power to the load.
 - 2. Bypass Overload Capability: 1.5 times the base load current.
- M. Integral Output Disconnecting Means and OCPD:
 - 1. Multiple-Output OCPDs: Thermal-magnetic circuit breakers, complying with UL 489; voltage rating matching unit output voltage rating; 20 A, single pole.

2.2 ENCLOSURES

- A. Central Battery Equipment Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
 - 1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1 steel cabinets with access to components through hinged doors with flush tumbler lock and latch.
 - 2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel finish over corrosion-resistant prime treatment.
- 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
 - A. Testing: Test and inspect central battery equipment according to UL 924.
 - B. Central battery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store central battery equipment according to NECA 411.
- B. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive central battery equipment, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, structural support, ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment will be installed, before installation begins.
- C. Examine equipment before installation. Reject equipment that is wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- D. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of central battery equipment with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install central battery equipment and accessories according to NECA 411.
- C. Wall-Mounted Central Battery Equipment: Install central battery equipment on walls with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For units not on walls, provide freestanding racks.
- D. Comply with NECA 1.
- E. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
- F. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connections: Interconnect system components. Make connections to supply and load circuits according to manufacturer's wiring diagrams unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ground equipment.
 - 1. Separately Derived Systems: Make grounding connections to grounding electrodes and bonding connections to metallic piping systems as indicated; comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Connect wiring.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify central battery equipment, components, and control wiring.
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label central battery equipment with engraved nameplates.
 - 3. Label each separate cabinet, for multicabinet units.
 - 4. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

CENTRAL BATTERY EQUIPMENT FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for central battery equipment, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of central battery equipment units.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Inspect and Test Each Component:
 - a. Inspect wiring, components, connections, and equipment installations. Test and adjust components and equipment.
 - b. Test insulation resistance for all external branch circuit, feeder, control, and alarm wiring connected to central battery equipment element and component.
 - c. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect central battery equipment, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust components and equipment.
 - 2. Test insulation resistance for all external branch circuit, feeder, control, and alarm wiring connected to central battery equipment element and component.
 - 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
 - 4. Verify that input voltages and frequencies at central battery equipment locations are within voltage and frequency limits specified in Part 2. If outside this range, notify Construction Manager before closing input OCPDs.
 - 5. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in manufacturer's written instructions and in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification, including specifically those for batteries, battery chargers, and UPS, regardless of the type of central battery equipment provided. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 6. Perform a load-duration test at rated voltage and rated output current to verify the correct functional operation of the unit under full-load stable operating conditions for the minimum time limits required by UL 924. Monitor and record ambient temperature and temperatures within the unit.
 - 7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of central battery equipment. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of central battery equipment 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Central battery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies central battery equipment and describes all test results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section includes lightning protection for structures.
- 1.2 SUBMITTALS
 - A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For lighting protection systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - C. Shop Drawings: For air terminals and mounting accessories.
 - 1. Layout of the lightning protection system, along with details of the components to be used in the installation.
 - 2. Include indications for use of raceway, data on how concealment requirements will be met, and calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of grounded and isolated metal bodies.
 - D. Field quality-control reports.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Certified by UL and LPI as a Master Installer/Designer, trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. System Certificate:
 - 1. UL Master Label.
 - 2. LPI System Certificate.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 780, "Definitions" Article.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS
 - A. Comply with UL 96 and NFPA 780.
 - B. Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: NFPA 780, Class I, aluminum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. East Coast Lightning Equipment Inc.
 - b. ERICO International Corporation.
 - c. Harger.
 - d. Heary Bros. Lightning Protection Co. Inc.
 - e. Independent Protection Co.
 - f. Preferred Lightning Protection.
 - g. Robbins Lightning, Inc.
 - h. Thompson Lightning Protection, Inc.
 - 2. Air Terminals More than 24 Inches Long: With brace attached to the terminal at not less than half the height of the terminal.
 - 3. Single-Membrane, Roof-Mounted Air Terminals: Designed specifically for single-membrane roof system materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 roofing Sections.
 - C. Main and Bonding Conductors: Aluminum.
 - D. Ground Loop Conductor: The same size and type as the main conductor except tinned.
 - E. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet long.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION
 - A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to UL 96A and NFPA 780.
 - B. Conceal the following conductors:
 - 1. System conductors.
 - 2. Down conductors.
 - 3. Interior conductors.
 - 4. Conductors within normal view of exterior locations at grade within 200 feet of building.
 - C. Cable Connections: Use crimped or bolted connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components. Use exothermic-welded connections in underground portions of the system.
 - D. Cable Connections: Use exothermic-welded connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components.
 - 1. Exception: In single-ply membrane roofing, exothermic-welded connections may be used only below the roof level.
 - E. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with roofing membrane and adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.
 - F. Bond extremities of vertical metal bodies exceeding 60 feet in length to lightning protection components.
 - G. Ground Loop: Install ground-level, potential equalization conductor and extend around the perimeter of structure.
 - 1. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building foundation.
 - 2. Bond ground terminals to the ground loop.
 - 3. Bond grounded building systems to the ground loop conductor within 12 feet of grade level.
 - H. Bond lightning protection components with intermediate-level interconnection loop conductors to grounded metal bodies of building at 60-foot intervals.
- 3.2 CORROSION PROTECTION
 - A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.
 - B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Notify Architect at least 48 hours in advance of inspection before concealing lightning protection components.
- B. UL Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
- C. LPI System Inspection: Meet requirements to obtain an LPI System Certificate.

SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS
 - Α. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current 1 accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - 2. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- 1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
 - Operation and maintenance data. Α.

1.3 WARRANTY

Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or Α. workmanship within specified warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F. Α. 1 Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- Β. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing Α. agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be Β. readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place. 1
 - Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type. a.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - CCT and CRI. C.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
- D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and Ε. division of hazard by FM Global.
- F. California Title 24 compliant.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges. 1.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

- B. Steel:
 - 1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
 - 2. ASTM A568/A568M for sheet steel.
- C. Stainless Steel:
 - 1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
 - 2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/240M.
- D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.
- E. Aluminum: ASTM B209.
- 2.4 METAL FINISHES
 - A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- 2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT
 - A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
 - B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
 - C. Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
 - D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
 - E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.
- 3.2 IDENTIFICATION
 - A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
 - A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

- 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

SECTION 265213 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Emergency lighting.
- 2. Exit signs.
- 3. Materials.
- 4. Luminaire support components.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 26 00 10 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
- 2. Section 26 00 11 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): The absolute temperature, measured in kelvins, of a blackbody whose chromaticity most nearly resembles that of the light source.
- B. Color Rendering Index (CRI): Measure of the degree of color shift that objects undergo when illuminated by the light source as compared with the color of those same objects when illuminated by a reference source.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Lumen (Im): The SI derived unit of luminous flux equal to the luminous flux emitted within a unit solid angle by a unit point source (1 Im = 1 cd-sr).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

- For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
 - a. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - b. Include physical description of unit and dimensions.
 - c. Battery and charger for light units.
 - d. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - e. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory, for each luminaire type.

B. Product Schedule:

- 1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- 2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every 20 emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
 - A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed emergency luminaires and exit signs, including batteries, perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components and assemblies that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
 - 1. Extended Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.
- B. Special Manufacturer Extended Warranty for Batteries for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Manufacturer warrants that batteries for emergency luminaires and exit signs perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to provide repair or replacement of batteries that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
 - 1. Extended Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

3.

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and UL 924, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 101.
- C. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- D. Comply with UL 924, and UL1008 for fixture level transfer switches.
- E. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with driver.
 - 1. Emergency Connection: Operate LED's continuously at an output specified upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire driver.
 - 2. Operation: UL 924 Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deepdischarge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
 - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 - 4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 - 5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
- F. External Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.
 - 1. Emergency Connection: Operate LED's continuously at an output specified upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire driver.
 - 2. Operation: UL 924 Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deepdischarge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - 3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 - 4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
 - 5. Housing: Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly must be located no less than half of distance recommended by driver and emergency power unit manufacturer, whichever is less.
 - 6. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - 7. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Characteristics: Self-contained units. Comply with UL 924.
- B. Emergency Lighting Unit:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120/277 V(ac).
 - b. Universal junction box adaptor.
 - c. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
 - d. Two LED lamp heads.
 - e. Internal emergency power unit.
- C. Remote Emergency Lighting Unit:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 12 V(dc) or 24 V(dc).
 - b. Universal junction box adaptor.
 - c. UV stable thermoplastic housing, rated for damp locations.
 - d. Two LED lamp heads.
 - e. External emergency power unit.

2.3 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Characteristics: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Sign:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Operating at nominal voltage of 120/277 V(ac).
 - b. Lamps for AC Operation:
 - 1) LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
 - c. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components must be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
 - 1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
 - 2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
 - 3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

2.5 METAL FINISHES

A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 0.106 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- C. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices must be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- D. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
 - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- E. Suspended Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inch, brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
- F. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Secure to outlet box, if provided.
 - 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Nonconforming Work:
 - 1. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
 - 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

3.5 SYSTEM STARTUP

A. Perform startup service:

1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Remove and replace luminaires and exit signs that are damaged or caused to be unfit for use by construction activities.

SECTION 270000 - DISTRICT COMMUNICATIONS SPECIFICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF SERVICES

- A. Copper Cabling: CMP 66-240-xB. Cat 6 Superior Essex Datagain 6+, Plenum rated blue part number: 66-240-2B where noted. Open areas noted on prints would be CMP 66-240-4B (white).
- B. Cabling: CMP 6H-272-xB. Cat 6A Superior Essex, Plenum rated blue part number: 6H-272-2B where noted. Open areas, if noted on prints, would be 6H-272-4B (white).
- C. Cable Management
 - 1. No electrical tape or zip ties for bundling cables or attaching to j-hooks.
 - 2. Black plenum rated Velcro strips only for bundling cable. White plenum rated Velcro strips for the locations with white cabling.
 - 3. On the 48-port patch panels, both cable management bars are to be installed and utilized.
 - 4. On all cable terminations, stuffer caps are required at the field and closet locations.
 - 5. When dressing cables on the back of the patch panels, half of the cables will run down the left side and the other half down the right side of the rack.
 - 6. New cables that are damaged during installation, such as a sliced or cut, even if they pass testing, must be replaced and tested and the old cabling removed.
 - 7. Damage to other cabling or systems not part of this project must be remedied by the vendor utilizing authorized vendors and/or cabling approved by the District at no cost to the District.
 - 8. During installation of new cabling, ceiling tiles along artery routes are to be left open until inspected by District Technology staff. Damaged tile and/or grid will need to be replaced by the vendor and will need to match existing tile and grid. Vendors will be responsible for closing all ceiling tiles after District inspections.
 - 9. Old Ethernet, fiber and enclosures, where applicable, not used will need to be removed and discarded by the vendor. This would also include any empty innerducts.
 - 10. The District can provide ceiling tiles for any data closets that would need to be recut by the vendor to accommodate cabling pathways.
 - 11. Any penetration that is not drywall material will need a sleeve and pull string (for future runs) installed per applicable codes.
 - 12. Service loops of approximately 10-15' should be installed above the ceiling at each endpoint location as well as at each MDF/IDF rack location.
 - 13. For any endpoint locations and/or conduit pathways that are vacated, add a pull string from wall location to above ceiling/starting point to ending point and cover with a correctly sized faceplate/metal cover.
 - 14. All data, voice, access control, etc. cables shall be within raceway, J-hooks or other designated cable delivery system. Successful bidder must provide all hardware to run and secure Ethernet, fiber, etc. as specified by applicable codes and ordinances.
 - 15. Cable trunks should be secured above HVAC duct where applicable unless otherwise approved by the District. All cable should be neatly run within the cable trunk until branching off to an endpoint.
- D. Clarity Rear-Load High Density Jack Panel Kits
 - 1. 48 Port Panel: 48-port, panel jack panel kit, flat, unloaded, 1 RU, Part: OR-PHDHJU48. All slots must be populated.
 - 2. Rear-load jacks part OR-HDJ6-00 Black (Cat 6) and part OR-HDJ6A-36 (Cat 6a). Blue.
 - 3. All rows in each panel must be filled with the same type of panel jack. No mixing of Cat 6 and 6a jacks in a row. In a 48-port panel there can be a row of 24 Cat 6 and a row of 24 Cat 6a panel jacks. All ports must be terminated from left to right with no skipping of ports on the panel.
- E. Above ceiling: TracJack Surface Mount Box. Part: OR- 404HDJ2 (Fog White) for locations with two or less cables. For locations with three or four cables, use OR-404HDJ4 (Fog White). For locations with five or six cables, use OR-404HDJ6 (Fog White). TracJacks OR-HDJ6 Fog White (Cat 6) and part OR-HDJ6A-36 Blue (Cat 6a).
- F. Wall installation where applicable:
 - 1. Wall mount box single: Part: OR-403HDJ16 Fog white
 - 2. Wall mount box dual: Part: OR-403HDJ212 Fog white
 - 3. Extra deep wall mount single: Part: Wiremold NM2044FW (for HDMI locations)
 - 4. Extra deep wall mount double: Part Wiremold NM2044-2FW (for HDMI locations)
 - 5. Wall mount box jack: Part: OR-HDJ6 Fog white

- 6. 6-port Faceplate: 403HDJ16 (Fog White) for single gang boxes. NOTE: All vacant slots must be filled with blanks
- 7. 4-port Faceplate: 419HDJ4-88 (Fog White) for dual gang boxes with half electrical where applicable.
- 8. 12-port Faceplate: 403HDJ212 (Fog White) for dual-gang boxes. NOTE: All vacant slots must be filled with blanks
- 9. Blank module, OR-HDJB (Fog White). All vacant slots must be filled with blanks
- 10. Wall mount box AV jack where applicable: OR-HDJ5E-68 (Dark Gray)
- 11. Wall/Ceiling mount blanks: Blank module, OR-HDJB20. All unpopulated jacks must have a blank installed.
- 12. Legrand-Wiremold PN10L10FW (Fog White-8 ft section)
- 13. Legrand-Wiremold PN10F86FW (Fog White-Ceiling Connector)
- 14. NOTE: All field Ethernet installations must be installed in the upper most top left location available and go from left to right and then down to the next available row, etc.
- G. Ladder rack to be verified/installed in all existing and/or new racks in all closets. All ladder rack should utilize whatever parts needed for securing to wall and rack.
 - 1. Straight Sections: 6' part # HLS0612B, 10' part # HLS1012B
 - 2. 90° Turns: Inside Radius 12" part # HLI1290B, Outside Radius 12" part # HLO1290B and Flat Turn Radius 12" part # HLF1290B.
 - 3. Splice Kits: Butt splice part #: HLBSK, Swivel part # HLSSK, T-junction part # HLTK.
 - 4. Wall Angle Supports: 6-12" part number HLX0612
 - 5. Vertical wall bracket (2 clips) part number HLVWBK
 - 6. Protective end caps, 2-pack, black part number HLECPK2
 - 7. Wall/Rack mounting kit:Includes (1) HLMPK19, (1) HLX0612,
 - 8. (1) 40"L x 12"W ladder section, part number HLWRK
 - 9. J-Bolt Kit 2-pack, galvanized, part number HLJB
 - 10. Foot kit: 2-pack with splices, black, part number HLRF
- H. Grounding: For data racks, provide necessary grounding and bonding within telecommunications room to comply with TIA-607 B standards. A grounding bar also needs to be installed near the floor close to the rack with Hubbell part number HBBB14210A (IDF 2 possibly at cabinet level). The grounding bar will be used at the main distribution point and not as an auxiliary point. Coordinate with the owner for location. Ladder rack, cable trays and free-standing rack(s), etc. must all be grounded as complete pieces. Connections must be clean and contain no spurs or sharp exposed wire. District will provide building ground to bus bar. None of the racks are currently grounded.
- I. Labeling: All locations (fiber, Ethernet, etc.) are to be labeled in typewritten format or owner approved equivalent. Plastic protective covers that come with cable boxes are required. Hand-written location labels will not be permitted. Verify closet designations with the owner.
 - 1. Field Termination: All location labels are to be installed behind the factory transparent plastic protector clearly indicating the closet, panel and port number. For example, in IDF L, jack locations are to be labeled by closet, panel and then port number. For example, L-2-01 would represent Closet L, Panel 2, Port 01. Multiple ports on a field termination endpoint would be labeled as "L-2-01 L-2-02". Label numbers should be above the termination box ports and endpoint terminations should always start at the top of the endpoint termination box. Numbers should be sequential in order where possible. For example, on a two-port box, labels would be at the top. In a three-port example two at the top and one at the bottom. In a four-port box two at the top left of the box.
 - 2. Closet Termination: The panels do not require port labels to match the field termination end points. Each panel will only need one identifying label in the upper left-hand corner. Examples include L-1, L-2, etc. Verify with owner for clarification.
- J. Ensure all cabling meets specifications utilizing a contractor provided certified tester following TIA-526-14-B guidelines. Provide OTLS test results for all Fiber Optic cabling delivered in written and magnetic media (USB drive or DVD). This includes testing and providing certification results for any cables that need to be pulled again after the initial testing results have been delivered to the District.
- K. Any item of equipment or material not specifically addressed on the drawings or in this document and required to provide a complete and functional installation shall be provided in a level of quality consistent with other specified items at no additional cost to the owner.
- L. Codes: Unless otherwise documented, the successful bidder must provide all hardware to run and secure all cabling and equipment racks as specified by applicable codes and ordinances. References include but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. BICSI: Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM), latest edition

- 2. TIA/EIA-568-C: Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard
- 3. EIA/TIA-569B: Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and spaces
- 4. TIA/EIA-606: Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
- 5. National Electrical Code Article 770 "Optical Fiber Cables" and Article 800 "Communications Circuits"
- 6. Local Electrical Code
- 7. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 70 National Electrical Code
- 8. OSHA 29 CFR 1926/1910 Safety and Health Standards
- 9. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL) Listings and Approvals
- 10. Country, state and local health, safety and building
- M. Penetrations of walls, floors and ceilings:
 - 1. The Contractor shall make no penetration of floors, walls or ceiling without the prior consent of the owner.
 - 2. Where penetrations through acoustical walls or other walls for cableways are needed the Contractor will seal such penetrations in compliance with applicable code requirements.
 - 3. Where penetrations through fire-rated walls for cableways are needed the Contractor will seal such penetrations as required by code.

N. General Installation

- 1. The contractor shall furnish all required installation tools to facilitate cable pulling without damage to fiber jacket.
- 2. All routing shall be kept clear of other trades work and supported using the method(s) mentioned in this section.
- 3. During pulling operation an adequate number of workers shall be present to allow fiber observation at all points of raceway entry and exit, as well as to feed fiber and operate pulling machinery.
- 4. Pull cables in accordance with cable manufacturer's recommendations and ANSI/IEEE C2 standards.
- 5. Pull all cabling by hand unless installation conditions require mechanical assistance.
- 6. Where mechanical assistance is used, ensure that maximum tensile load for fiber is not exceeded. This may be in the form of continuous monitoring of pulling tension, use of "break-away" or other approved method.
- 7. Any fiber shall be installed splice-free.
- 8. Avoid abrasion and other damage to cabling during installation.
- 9. If pulling lubricant is used it shall be non-injurious to cabling jacket and other materials used and not harden or become adhesive with age.
- 10. Minimum bend radii, as specified by the manufacturer, must be adhered to for pulling and final installation.
- 11. Any cabling bent or kinked to radius less than recommended dimension are not allowed and shall be replaced at no expense to owner.
- 12. Repair damage to interior spaces caused by installation of cable, raceway or other hardware.
- 13. Repairs must match preexisting color and finish of walls, floors and ceilings.
- O. Documentation: An Excel spreadsheet will be prepared by vendor and submitted to the District in electronic format with at least the following information. Obtain official spreadsheet from customer.
 - 1. Building name
 - 2. Data closet number/identifier
 - 3. Panel number
 - 4. Port number
 - 5. Terminated in wall, floor or ceiling
 - 6. Room/Location Description
- P. Door Controls Red Icon: Door control element wire, Windy City Wire part number 4461030 (or equivalent but must have a yellow jacket), to be ran from designated doors to the designated MDF/IDF. At each door location, there will be a 10-foot service loop starting at the top of the door frame. At the designated MDF/IDF, cable must be able to touch the ground plus four feet. All terminations will be completed by District staff or contractor.
- Q. Specialized Drops: If the map indicates something like HVAC, Door Controls, etc. next to the data drop symbol, the cable must be terminated inside of the enclosure. Note that the enclosure might not be installed at the time the cable is run. The cables will still be terminated in a biscuit and labeled accordingly. Coordinate with Network Administrator or Technology Director.
- R. Specialized Systems: Additional cable will need to be pulled for intercom and intrusion detection systems. Cabling for intercom locations will be 2-conductor 18-gauge unshielded plenum rated cable (yellow in color). Intrusion detection will be 18 gauge 4-conductor unshielded plenum rated cable (gray in color). All locations and routes will be identified on the maps and handed out at the walk through. Verify where cable needs to be landed and labeled for each specialized system. For example, intercom cabling is usually routed to the bottom of the equipment rack and labeled in the data closets.

S. AV Requirements:

- 1. Cabling to be installed in classrooms with projectors (not the stage projector)
 - a. HDMI cable Kramer CP-AOCH-50 High-Speed Fiber Optic HDMI Cable (50') and connectors to the projector and connected to the projector. Cable is to be routed through the mounting pole/conduit and connected to the projector. The end for the wall plate needs to be connected with appropriate vendor supplied HDMI coupler, fog white: HDJHDMI (with possible District provided angle adapter if needed).
 - b. At conference room locations, data will be installed at a specified location for District provided flat panel TV. There will be a single gang box down low and connected to the upper data box behind the TV. Vendor must connect an HDMI cable from upper location to lower location with HDJHDMI couplers. Blanks to be installed for any unused slots.

1.2 VENDOR QUALIFICATIONS

- A. The contractor must employ and utilize a BICSI RCDD in good standing at all times during the entire installation of this system.
- B. The contractor must have a minimum of five (5) years' experience on similar cabling systems.
- C. Vendor must agree to e-rate guidelines, have a valid SPIN number AND have a SPAC form on file that is not outdated.
- D. The Vendor must also have the necessary certifications to provide the nCompass Warranty offered between Legrand Ortronics and Superior Essex. The network cabling infrastructure must be installed by Supplier approved designers and Certified Contractors at the Certified Installer Plus-Enterprise Solutions Partner (CIP-ESP) tier or Certified Installer Plus (CIP) tier in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and specifications. Copies of certifications must be attached to the Vendor's response for evaluation by The Customer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

SECTION 270010 - SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Supplemental requirements generally applicable to the Work specified in Division 27.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Work specified in the following Division 26 sections are related to Work specified in Division 27:
 - a. Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for abbreviations and acronyms for electrical terms and units of measure, abbreviations and acronyms for electrical raceway types, abbreviations and acronyms for electrical cable types, definitions, and additional coordination drawing submittal requirements.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Communications:
 - 1. LAN: Local area network.
 - 2. PoE: Power over Ethernet.
 - 3. POTS: Plain old telephone service. See "public switched telephone network."
 - 4. TCP/IP: Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol.
 - 5. WAN: Wide area network.
- B. Definitions for Communications:
 - 1. Calling Party Control (CPC): A momentary break in phone line loop current, which is used to signal voicemail and other automated telephone company services that distant party has hung up.
 - 2. Private Branch Exchange (PBX): Analog telephone switch that routes calls internal to a business or organization so a direct external line for each phone is unnecessary.
 - Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN): Analog telephone technology that uses twisted-pair cables from a telephone-provider central office for the transmission medium. PSTN refers to the telephone network; POTS refers to the individual subscriber line.
 - 4. Remote Office Phone System (ROPS): VoIP system that allows phones for a business or organization located anywhere in the world with internet connectivity to behave similar to phones connected to a PBX.
 - 5. Ringer Equivalence Number (REN): The loading effect of a single traditional telephone ringing circuit. TIA-968 defines REN 1 as an impedance of 7000 Ω at 20 Hz (Type A ringer) or 8000 Ω from 15 Hz to 68 Hz (Type B ringer). The sum of the RENs for all devices on a subscriber line circuit may not exceed the maximum permitted REN for the subscriber line.
 - 6. Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP): Digital telephone packet technology that uses the internet for its transmission medium.

1.3 COORDINATION

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Communications Preconstruction Conference: Schedule conference with Architect and Owner not later than 10 days after notice to proceed. Agenda topics include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Installation schedule for communications systems.
 - 2. Value analysis proposals and requests for substitution of communications equipment.
 - 3. Utility services work coordination and monitoring service requests.
 - 4. Commissioning activities.
 - 5. Sustainability activities.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Submit multidiscipline coordination drawings depicting communications equipment, devices, cabling, conduit, and duct banks in accordance with requirements specified in Section 260010 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical."

SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. Installation schedule for communications systems.
 - B. Qualification statements.
- 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
 - A. Operation and maintenance data.
 - B. Software.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications: Prepare and submit qualification statements for the following entities performing Work on Project:
 - 1. Qualified Regional Manufacturer: Manufacturer, possessing qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," that maintains a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency on-site repairs to Project site with response time less than eight hours.
 - 2. Structural Professional Engineer: Professional engineer possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," with expertise in structural engineering.
 - 3. Communications Design Professional: Design professional possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" and the following:
 - a. Expertise in design of communications infrastructure and distribution equipment.
 - b. BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD) certification.
 - 4. Communications Cable Installer: Entity possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" and the following:
 - a. Training and manufacturer certification to install, splice, and terminate communications cabling.
 - b. Installation Supervisor: BICSI Technician (TECH) certification.
 - c. Copper Installers: 30 percent of employees possess BICSI Copper Installer 2 (INSTC) certification. Remaining employees possess BICSI Installer 1 (INST1) certification.
 - d. Fiber Installers: 30 percent of employees possess BICSI Optical Fiber Installer 2 (INSTF) certification. Remaining employees possess BICSI Installer 1 (INST1) certification.
 - 5. Communications Cable Testing Agency: Entity possessing active credentials from a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. On-site communications cable testing supervisor must have BICSI Technician (TECH) certification and documented training, and be experienced with testing communications equipment in accordance with BICSI testing standards.
 - 6. Structural Testing and Inspecting Agency: Entity possessing active qualifications specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" with documented training and experience with testing structural concrete, seismic controls, and wind-load controls.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

- A. Substitution requests for communications equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:
 - 1. Notification of Contractor's intent to request substitutions for convenience must be declared during the Communications Preconstruction Conference so potential risks to system performance and construction schedule may be identified for Contractor's response in submission of the substitution request. Submission of requests for substitutions for convenience must meet the conditions and deadline specified in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" to receive approval.
 - 2. For communications equipment and systems, substitutions for cause are considered major construction risks. If it is possible that Contractor may need to request substitutions for cause because of equipment unavailability, or inability to meet construction schedule because of lead time, Contractor must declare the possibility during the Communications Preconstruction Conference to permit establishing a mitigation plan for minimizing risks to system performance and construction schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Installation Schedule for Communications Systems: At preconstruction meeting, and periodically thereafter as dates change, provide schedule for installation of communications Work to Owner and Architect including, but not limited to, milestone dates for the following activities:
 - 1. Submission of specified coordination drawings.
 - 2. Submission of action submittals specified in Division 27.
 - 3. Orders placed for major equipment.
 - 4. Arrival of major equipment on-site.
 - 5. Preinstallation meetings specified in Division 27.
 - 6. Telephone and internet service outages.
 - 7. Telephone and internet service inspection and activation.
 - 8. Mockup reviews.
 - 9. Closing of walls and ceilings containing communications Work.
 - 10. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for communications equipment.
 - 11. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for Work specified in other divisions that depends on Work specified in Division 27.
 - 12. System startup, testing, and commissioning activities for automation systems (for example, SCADA, BMS, lighting, HVAC, fire alarm, fire pump).
 - 13. Requests for special inspections.
 - 14. Requests for inspections by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF COMMUNICATIONS WORK

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' instructions, comply with NFPA 70, NECA NEIS 1, and BICSI N1 for installation of Work specified in Division 27. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
 - A. Administrant for Communications Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Engage factory-authorized service representative to administer and perform tests and inspections on components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

3.4 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Prepare and submit the following:
 - 1. Include emergency operation, normal operation, and preventive maintenance manuals for each system and equipment.
 - 2. Include the following information:
 - a. Manufacturer's operating specifications.
 - b. User's guides for software and hardware.
 - c. Schedule of maintenance material items recommended to be stored at Project site.
 - d. Detailed instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
 - e. Manufacturer's instructions for setting field-adjustable components.
 - f. Manufacturer's instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor controls.

SECTION 270526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Selection and installation of communications busbars.
- 2. Selection and installation of communications bonding conductors.
- 3. Installation of grounding and bonding for towers and antennas.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 26 00 11 "Facility Performance Requirements for Electrical" for seismic-load, wind-load, acoustical, and other field conditions applicable to Work specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 27 00 10 "Supplemental Requirements for Communications" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. BBC: Backbone bonding conductor, for connecting multiple TBBs serving the same floor.
- B. PBB: Primary bonding busbar, located in main distribution frame room, ideally near electrical service entrance.
- C. RBB: Rack bonding busbar, located in equipment cabinets and racks.
- D. SBB: Secondary bonding busbar, located in intermediate distribution frame rooms.
- E. TBB: Telecommunications bonding backbone, for connecting SBBs to PBB.
- F. TBC: Telecommunications bonding conductor, for connecting PBB to intersystem bonding termination device or busbar at electrical service entrance.
- G. TEBC: Telecommunications equipment bonding conductor, for connecting RBBs to SBBs or PBB.
- H. UBC: Unit bonding conductor, for connecting individual communications equipment to RBBs or SBBs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine facility's grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of electrical system.
- B. Inspect test results of grounding system measured at point of TBC connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of TBC only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 SELECTION OF COMMUNICATIONS BUSBARS
 - A. Unless otherwise indicated in this Section or on Drawings, provide products specified in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - B. PBB: As indicated on drawings.

C. SBB: As indicated on drawings.

3.3 SELECTION OF COMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTORS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated in this Section or on Drawings, provide products specified in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Communications Busbar Connections:
 - 1. TBC: Not smaller than 3/0 AWG and no smaller than largest TBB.
 - 2. TBB: Not smaller than 2 kcmil per linear ft of conductor length, but not larger than 750 kcmil, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. BBC: Not smaller than largest TBB to which it is connected unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. TEBC: Not smaller than 2 AWG unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Provide bolted connectors.
 - 5. UBC: Not smaller than 6 AWG unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Provide bolted connectors.
 - 6. Bonding Conductors to Structural Steel: Not smaller than 6 AWG unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Provide bolted clamp connectors.
- C. Cable Tray Connections:
 - 1. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Conductor: 6 AWG.
 - 2. Cable Tray Bonding Jumper: If not supplied by cable manufacturer, provide bonding jumper not smaller than 6 AWG and not longer than 12 inch. If jumper is wire, it must be terminated with lug having two holes and long barrel for two crimps. If jumper is flexible braid, it must be terminated with one- or two-hole ferrule. Attach with bonding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Reference Standards:
 - 1. Bonding of Communications: Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with BICSI N3.
 - 2. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.
- C. Special Techniques:
 - 1. Busbars:
 - a. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 12 inch above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
 - 2. Conductors:

b.

- a. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
 - Assemble wire connector to conductor, complying with manufacturer's published instructions and as follows:
 - 1) Use crimping tool and die specific to connector.
 - 2) Pretwist conductor.
 - 3) Apply antioxidant compound to bolted and compression connections.
- c. Install in straightest and shortest route between origination and termination point, and no longer than required. Bend radius must not be smaller than 10 times diameter of conductor. No single bend may exceed 90 degrees.
- d. Install without splices.
- e. Support conductors at not more than 36 inch intervals.
- f. Outside telecommunications rooms, install conductors in metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4) PVC-40 conduit until conduit enters telecommunications room. Do not install bonding conductors in EMT-S unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 - If bonding conductor must be installed in EMT-S or other ferrous metallic raceway, bond conductor to raceway using grounding bushing that complies with Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of raceway to SBB.
- 3. Provide TBC and terminate ends to PBB and intersystem bonding busbar at electrical service entrance in accordance with Section 25 0. 94, "Bonding for Communication Systems," of NFPA 70.
- 4. Busbar Interconnections: Bond SBBs to PBB with TBBs. If more than one TBB is installed, bond TBBs together BBCs where required by TIA-607.
- 5. Structural Steel: Where structural steel of steel frame building is readily accessible within room or space, bond each SBB and PBB to vertical steel of building frame.
- 6. Communications Enclosures: Bond metallic enclosures of telecommunications equipment with UBCs to nearest SBB or PBB.
- 7. Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to RBB using UBCs. Provide vertically mounted RBB if not provided by enclosure or rack manufacturer. Bond RBB to SBB with TEBC. Power connection must comply with NFPA 70; equipment grounding conductor in power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment must be considered supplemental to bonding requirements in this Section.
- 8. Shielded Cable: Bond shield of shielded cable to SBB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA-568.1 and TIA-568.2 when grounding shielded balanced twisted-pair cables.
- 9. Primary Protector: Bond to PBB with insulated bonding conductor.
- 10. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where electrical panelboards for communications equipment are located in same room or space, bond each ground bar of panelboard to SBB.
- 11. Cable Trays: Provide continuous electrical path by installing bonding clips and jumpers. Bond each end to nearest SBB.
- 12. Ladder Racks: Provide continuous electrical path by installing bonding clips and jumpers. Bond each end to nearest SBB.
- 13. Access Floors: Bond metal parts of access floors to SBB.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR TOWERS AND ANTENNAS

- A. Special Techniques:
 - 1. Special Requirements for Roof-Mounted Towers:
 - a. Roof Ring: Meet requirements for ring electrode except conductors must comply with NFPA 780.
 - b. Bond tower base footings steel, SBB in equipment room, and antenna support guys to roof ring.
 - c. Connect roof ring to perimeter conductors of lightning protection system.
 - Special Requirements for Waveguides and Coaxial Cable:
 - a. Bond cable shields at point of entry into building to nearest SBB and to cable entrance plate, using 2 AWG bonding conductors.
 - b. Bond coaxial cable surge arrester to ring electrode or roof ring using bonding conductor size recommended by surge-arrester manufacturer.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

2.

- A. Comply with Section 27 05 53 "Identification for Communications Systems."
- B. Labels must be preprinted or computer-printed type.
 - 1. Label PBB(s) with "ts-PBB," where "ts" is telecommunications space identifier for location of PBB.
 - 2. Label SBB(s) with "ts-SBB," where "ts" is telecommunications space identifier for location of SBB.
 - 3. Label TBC, TBBs, and BBCs at attachment points with legend: "WARNING! COMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's published instructions.
 - Test bonding connections of system using AC earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing PBB or SBB, using process recommended by BICSI N1. Conduct tests with facility in operation.
 - a. Measure resistance between PBB and electrical service intersystem termination point. Maximum acceptable value is 100 mΩ.
 - If measured resistance from electrical service equipment to ground exceeds 5 Ω, notify Architect and include recommendations to reduce resistance to ground.
 - Measure resistance between SBBs and PBB. Maximum acceptable value is 100 m Ω .
 - 3. Test for ground loop currents using digital clamp-on ammeter, with full scale not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at accuracy of plus or minus 2.0 percent.
 - a. With grounding infrastructure completed and communications system electronics operating, measure current in bonding conductors connected to PBB and to SBBs. Maximum acceptable AC current level is 1 A.
- B. Nonconforming Work:

b.

- 1. Communications bonding will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- 2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

C. Collect, assemble, and submit test and inspection reports.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. After installation, protect busbars and conductors from construction activities. Remove and replace items that are contaminated, defaced, damaged, or otherwise caused to be unfit for use prior to acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 270526

SECTION 270536 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Ladder cable tray.
 - 2. Wire-mesh cable tray.
 - 3. Cable tray accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cable tray.
 - 1. Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic restraints.
 - 1. Seismic-Restraint Details: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, who is responsible for their preparation.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting seismic restraints.
 - 3. Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported cable trays.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for cable trays, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design cable tray supports and seismic bracing.
- B. Seismic Performance: Cable trays and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the cable trays will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE TRAYS

- A. Cable Trays and Accessories: Identified as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location, application, and grounding.
 - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain cable trays and components from single manufacturer.
- B. Sizes and Configurations: See Drawings for specific requirements for types, sizes, and configurations.
- C. Structural Performance: See articles for individual cable tray types for specific values for the following parameters:
 - 1. Uniform Load Distribution: Capable of supporting a uniformly distributed load on the indicated support span when supported as a simple span and tested according to NEMA VE 1.
 - 2. Concentrated Load: A load applied at midpoint of span and centerline of tray.
 - 3. Load and Safety Factors: Applicable to both side rails and rung capacities.

2.3 LADDER CABLE TRAY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. ABB, Electrification Business.
 - 2. Chalfant Manufacturing Company.
 - 3. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - 4. Cope; Atkore International.
 - 5. MP Husky USA Cable Tray & Cable Bus.
 - 6. MonoSystems, Inc.
 - 7. Niedax Inc.

B. Description:

- 1. Configuration: Two longitudinal side rails with transverse rungs swaged or welded to side rails, complying with NEMA VE 1.
- 2. Width: As indicated on Drawings.
- 3. Rung Spacing: 9 inches o.c.
- 4. Radius-Fitting Rung Spacing: 9 inches at center of tray's width.
- 5. Minimum Cable-Bearing Surface for Rungs: 7/8-inch width with radius edges.
- 6. No portion of the rungs shall protrude below the bottom plane of side rails.
- 7. Structural Performance of Each Rung: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200-lb concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
- 8. Fitting Minimum Radius: 12 inches.
- 9. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1.
- 10. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
- 11. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.
- C. Materials and Finishes:
 - 1. Steel:
 - a. Straight Section and Fitting Side Rails and Rungs: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A1008/A1008M, Grade 33, Type 2.
 - b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A1011/A1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
 - c. Fasteners: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A510/A510M, Grade 1008.
 - d. Finish: Powder-coat enamel paint. Black.
 - 1) Powder-Coat Enamel: Cable tray manufacturer's recommended primer and corrosion-inhibiting treatment, with factory-applied powder-coat paint.
 - 2) Hardware: Chromium-zinc plated, ASTM F1136.

2.4 WIRE-MESH CABLE TRAY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Cablofil; Legrand North America, LLC.
 - 2. Chalfant Manufacturing Company.
 - 3. Cooper B-line; brand of Eaton, Electrical Sector.
 - 4. Cope; Atkore International.
 - 5. Enduro Composites Inc.
 - 6. Hubbell Wiring Device-Kellems; brand of Hubbell Electrical Solutions; Hubbell Incorporated.
 - 7. MP Husky USA Cable Tray & Cable Bus.
 - 8. MonoSystems, Inc.
 - 9. Niedax Inc.
 - 10. Snaketray.
 - 11. Vutec Corporation.
 - 12. WBT LLC.
- B. Description:
 - 1. Configuration: Galvanized- steel wire mesh, complying with NEMA VE 1.
 - 2. Width: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Structural Performance: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200-lb concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.
 - 4. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1.

- 5. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
- 6. Splice-Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.
- C. Materials and Finishes:
 - 1. Steel:
 - a. Straight Sections and Fittings: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A1008/A1008M, Grade 33, Type 2.
 - b. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A1011/A1011M, HSLAS, Grade 50, Class 1.
 - c. Fasteners: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A510/A510M, Grade 1008.
 - d. Finish: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, complying with ASTM A123/A123M, Class B2.
 - 1) Hardware: Galvanized, ASTM B633.

2.5 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

- A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.
- B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as for cable tray.
- C. Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect cable trays according to NEMA VE 1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION
 - A. Install cable trays according to NEMA VE 2.
 - B. Install cable trays as a complete system, including fasteners, hold-down clips, support systems, barrier strips, adjustable horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, crosses, cable dropouts, adapters, covers, and bonding.
 - C. Install cable trays so that the tray is accessible for cable installation and all splices are accessible for inspection and adjustment.
 - D. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.
 - E. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure and install seismic restraints.
 - F. Design fasteners and supports to carry cable tray, the cables, and a concentrated load of 200 lb. Comply with requirements in Section 270529 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems." Comply with seismic-restraint details according to Section 270548.16 "Seismic Controls for Communications Systems."
 - G. Place supports so that spans do not exceed maximum spans on schedules and provide clearances shown on Drawings. Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of the tray rungs.
 - H. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.
 - I. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.
 - J. Install center-hung supports for single-rail trays designed for 60 versus 40 percent eccentric loading condition, with a safety factor of 3.
 - K. Locate and install supports according to NEMA VE 2. Do not install more than one cable tray splice between supports.

- L. Support wire-basket cable trays with trapeze hangers and wall brackets.
- M. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable trays and to equipment. Support cable trays independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable trays on equipment enclosure.
- N. Install expansion connectors where cable trays cross building expansion joints and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in NEMA VE 2. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.
- O. Make changes in direction and elevation using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- P. Make cable tray connections using manufacturer's recommended fittings.
- Q. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping." Must utilize rated fire/smoke sleeves with intumescent lining to achieve fire rating and flexible smoke control method.
- R. Install cable trays with enough workspace to permit access for installing cables.
- S. Separately bundle cables of different systems, such as Phone/Data, public address, fire alarm, intercom, building automation, etc.

3.2 CABLE TRAY GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable trays according to NFPA 70 unless additional grounding is specified. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."
- B. Cable trays shall be bonded together with splice plates listed for grounding purposes or with listed bonding jumpers.
- C. When using epoxy- or powder-coat painted cable trays as a grounding conductor, completely remove coating at all splice contact points or ground connector attachment. After completing splice-to-grounding bolt attachment, repair the coated surfaces with coating materials recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
- D. Bond cable trays to power source for cables contained within with bonding conductors sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors."

3.3 CABLE INSTALLATION

- A. Install cables only when each cable tray run has been completed and inspected.
- B. Fasten cables on vertical runs to cable trays every 18 inches.
- C. Support cables that pass from one cable tray to another or drop from cable trays to equipment enclosures.
 - 1. Provide cable radius drop fittings (aka waterfalls) where cables exit basket type cable tray at a change of elevation or when dropping into equipment enclosures.
 - 2. Install bushings and other necessary materials to prevent cable jackets from being abraded or putting undue tension on the cables when exiting or entering cable tray.
- D. Tie MI cables down every 36 inches where required to provide a 2-hour fire rating and every 72 inches elsewhere.
- 3.4 CONNECTIONS
 - A. Remove paint from all connection points before making connections. Repair paint after the connections are completed.
 - B. Connect pathways to cable trays according to requirements in NEMA VE 2.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements.

- 2. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable trays, vibrations, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.
- 3. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable trays do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communications or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers or are installed in separate cable trays.
- 4. Verify that there are no intruding items such as pipes, hangers, or other equipment in the cable tray.
- 5. Remove dust deposits, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.
- 6. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and retorque in suspect areas.
- 7. Check for improperly sized or installed bonding jumpers.
- 8. Check for missing, incorrect, or damaged bolts, bolt heads, or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
- 9. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable trays. Test entire cable tray system for continuity. Maximum allowable resistance is 1 ohm.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed cable trays and cables.
 - 1. Install temporary protection for cables in open trays to safeguard exposed cables against falling objects or debris during construction. Temporary protection for cables and cable tray can be constructed of wood or metal materials and shall remain in place until the risk of damage is over.
 - 2. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
 - 3. Repair damage to paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 270536

SECTION 280500 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
 - 2. Sleeve seals.
 - 3. Grout.
 - 4. Common electronic safety and security installation requirements.
- 1.2 SUBMITTALS
 - A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES
 - A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
 - B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2.3 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY INSTALLATION
 - A. Comply with NECA 1.
 - B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
 - C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electronic safety and security equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.
- 3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY PENETRATIONS
 - A. Electronic safety and security penetrations occur when raceways, pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
 - B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
 - C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
 - E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
 - F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
 - H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
 - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
 - I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
 - J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
 - K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
 - L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electronic safety and security installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 280500

SECTION 280513 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 2. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 3. Fire alarm wire and cable.
 - 4. Identification products.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
 - a. Nominal OD.
 - b. Minimum bending radius.
 - c. Maximum pulling tension.
- B. Shop Drawings: Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Maintenance data.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. Support of Open Cabling: NRTL labeled for support of cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
 - 1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
 - 2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
 - 3. Straps and other devices.
- B. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.

2.2 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

- A. Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
 - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.

CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY 4. PVC jacket.

Β.

- 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- Plenum-Type, Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.
- C. Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.
 - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.
- D. Plenum-Type, Paired Lock Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. 1 pair, twisted, No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. Plastic jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.
- 2.3 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS
 - A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway complying with UL 83.
 - B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, in raceway complying with UL 83.
 - C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF, complying with UL 83.

2.4 FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Comtran Corp.
 - 2. Draka USA.
 - 3. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - 4. Rockbestos-Suprenant Cable Corporation.
 - 5. West Penn Wire/CDT; a division of Cable Design Technologies.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, size as recommended by system manufacturer.
 - 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
 - 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum.
 - 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
 - 3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a 2-hour rating.
- 2.5 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS
 - A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Brady Corporation
 - 2. HellermannTyton.
 - 3. Kroy LLC.

- 4. Panduit Corp.
- B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS
 - A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A-7.
 - B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
 - C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." for installation of conduits and wireways.
 - D. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
 - E. Pathway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
 - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
 - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 - 3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
 - 4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
 - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
 - F. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gapfree corners and joints.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets or terminals.
 - 2. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, and terminals.
 - 3. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 - 4. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 - 5. Pulling Cable: Do not exceed manufacturer's instructions as to allowable pulling tension. Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. Open-Cable Installation:

- 1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
- 2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
- 3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- D. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
 - 1. Install plenum-rated cable only.
 - 2. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.

3.3 FIRE ALARM WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway according to Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
- C. Wiring Method:
 - 1. Cables and raceways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of 2-hour, fire-rated fire alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
 - 3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables may be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one colorcode for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.4 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
 - 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.
 - 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
 - 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.
- 3.5 FIRESTOPPING
 - A. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
 - A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding.
 - 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding, and bonding.
 - B. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
 - C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 280513

SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Scope of work: Replace the existing fire alarm system in the elementary school, Alexander Doniphan from a horn system to a voice system and incorporate new addition/devices as shown on the drawings and noted in the specifications. Field verify routing, installation locations and connection points before bidding project. New equipment must be provided in its entirety, not a new system interfaced with the existing control panel.

B. Section Includes:

- 1. Fire-alarm control unit.
- 2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
- 3. System smoke detectors.
- 4. Heat detectors.
- 5. Notification appliances.
- 6. Device guards.
- 7. Magnetic door holders.
- 8. Remote annunciator.
- 9. Addressable interface device.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for cables and conductors for fire-alarm systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.
- F. VESDA: Very Early Smoke-Detection Apparatus.
- G. Pathway: Any circuit, conductor, optic fiber, radio carrier, or other means connecting two or more locations.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.

- 4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
- 5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
- 6. Include battery-size calculations.
- 7. Include input/output matrix.
- 8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
- 9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
- 10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
- 11. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.
- C. General Submittal Requirements:
 - 1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
 - 2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level III minimum.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
 - 3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.
- E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

1.

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
 - d. Riser diagram.
 - e. Device addresses.
 - f. Record copy of site-specific software.
 - g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
 - h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 - i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
 - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 - 2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
 - 3. Device address list.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
 - 2. Smoke Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
 - 3. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamperproofed components.
 - 4. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level III technician.
- C. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Noncoded, UL-certified, non-propriatary addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and voice/strobe evacuation.
- B. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- C. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices:
 - 1. Manual stations.
 - 2. Heat detectors.
 - 3. Smoke detectors.
 - 4. Duct smoke detectors.
 - 5. Carbon monoxide detectors.
 - 6. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
 - 1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances, including voice evacuation notices.
 - 2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
 - 3. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
 - 4. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
 - 5. Activate voice/alarm communication system.
 - 6. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
 - 7. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
 - 8. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
 - 9. Activate elevator power shunt trip.
 - 10. Activate emergency lighting control.
 - 11. Record events in the system memory.

- 12. Record events by the system printer.
- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
 - 1. Valve supervisory switch.
 - 2. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
 - 3. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
 - 4. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
 - 5. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.
- D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
 - 1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
 - 2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
 - 3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
 - 4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
 - 5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
 - 6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
 - 7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
 - 8. Failure of battery charging.
 - 9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
 - 10. Voice signal amplifier failure.
- E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:
 - 1. Initiate notification appliances.
 - 2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
 - 3. Record the event on system printer.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

1.

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. NOTIFIER; a Honeywell company.
 - 2. Silent Knight; a Honeywell company.
 - 3. Edwards System Technology.
 - 4. Pre-approved equal.
- B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
 - Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
 - 2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
 - 3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
 - 4. LCD screen with readout of alarms.
- C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
 - 1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
 - 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
 - 1. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.

- 2. Serial Interfaces:
 - a. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
 - b. One USB or RS 232 port for PC configuration.
 - c. One RS 232 port for voice evacuation interface.
- E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
 - 1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
 - 3. Record events by the system printer.
 - 4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
 - 5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.
- F. Notification-Appliance Circuit:
 - 1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
 - 3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.
- G. Elevator Recall:
 - 1. Elevator recall shall be initiated only by one of the following alarm-initiating devices:
 - a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
 - b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
 - c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
 - 2. Elevator controller shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor if lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors are activated.
 - 3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.
 - a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.
- H. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke-barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.
- I. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.
- J. Voice/Alarm Signaling Service: Central emergency communication system with redundant microphones, preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators provided as a special module that is part of fire-alarm control unit.
 - 1. Indicate number of alarm channels for automatic, simultaneous transmission of different announcements to different zones or for manual transmission of announcements by use of the central-control microphone. Amplifiers shall comply with UL 1711.
 - a. Allow the application of, and evacuation signal to, indicated number of zones and, at the same time, allow voice paging to the other zones selectively or in any combination.
 - b. Programmable tone and message sequence selection.
 - c. Standard digitally recorded messages for "Evacuation" and "All Clear."
 - d. Generate tones to be sequenced with audio messages of type recommended by NFPA 72 and that are compatible with tone patterns of notification-appliance circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Status Annunciator: Indicate the status of various voice/alarm speaker zones.
 - 3. Preamplifiers, amplifiers, and tone generators shall automatically transfer to backup units, on primary equipment failure.
- K. Printout of Events: On receipt of signal, print alarm, supervisory, and trouble events. Identify zone, device, and function. Include type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) and date and time of occurrence. Differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications. Also print system reset event, including same information for device, location, date, and time. Commands initiate the printing of a list of existing alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions in the system and a historical log of events.

- Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals and supervisory communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
 Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
- M. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
 1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.
- N. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
 - 1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.

2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
 - 1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 - 2. Detectors shall be four-wire type.
 - 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 - 4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 - 5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
 - 6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
 - 7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rateof-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
 - c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
 - d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.
 - B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
 - 1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 - 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
 - C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
 - 1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 - 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.

- c. Present average value.
- d. Present sensitivity selected.
- e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- 3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
- 4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
- 5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
- 6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.6 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

- A. General: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
 - 2. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into the sensing cell.
 - 3. Detector shall provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
 - 4. Detector shall send trouble alarm when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems, or internal faults.
 - 5. Comply with UL 2075.
 - 6. Locate, mount, and wire according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
 - 8. Test button simulates an alarm condition.

2.7 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
 - 1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
- B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.8 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
 - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- C. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol. Provide weather proof rated horns where indicated.
- D. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch high letters on the lens.
 - 1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
 - 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
 - 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
 - 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.

- 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, red.
- E. Voice/Tone Notification Appliances:
 - Comply with UL 1480. 1.
 - Speakers for Voice Notification: Locate speakers for voice notification to provide the intelligibility requirements of the 2. "Notification Appliances" and "Emergency Communications Systems" chapters in NFPA 72.
 - 3. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
 - 4. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
 - 5. Mounting: Surface mounted and bidirectional.
 - 6. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

2.9 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- Α. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.
 - Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force. 1.
 - 2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
 - 4. Rating: 120-V ac.
- Β. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.10 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- Α. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing. 1
 - Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- Β. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.11 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
 - Include address-setting means on the module. 1.
 - Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type. 2.
 - Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers. 3.
- Β. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall and to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.
 - 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
 - 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:
 - Operate notification devices. 1
 - 2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.
- 2.12 SYSTEM PRINTER
 - Α. Printer shall be listed and labeled as an integral part of fire-alarm system.
- 2.13 **DEVICE GUARDS**
 - Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection. Α.
 - Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer. 1.
 - 2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
 - 1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
 - 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:
 - 1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
 - 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
 - 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
 - 1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
 - 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 - 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
 - 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
 - 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 - 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.
 - 1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- H. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valvetamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- I. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.

K. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Plenum rated cable shall be used for all pathways except where cabling is in conduit.
- B. Pathways above recessed accessible locations may be routed exposed.
- C. Pathways above inaccessible locations shall be installed in EMT.
- D. Pathways in exposed areas shall be routed in EMT and be painted red enamel.
- E. Pathways from main fire alarm control panel to each zone/building shall be routed underground to lower level mechanical or electrical room. Initial auxiliary panel(s) shall be located in these rooms. All cabling within the building zone shall be installed as specified above.

3.4 ZONES

A. Provide a fire alarm zone for each building that is identified on architectural code plans (CP Series). Fire alarm activation and notification by zone/building.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
 - 1. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
 - 2. Magnetically held-open doors.
 - 3. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
 - 4. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
 - 5. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
 - 6. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
 - 7. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
 - 8. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
 - 9. Alarm-initiating connection to kitchen hood fire extinguishing system.
 - 10. Fire alarm system to be interfaced with intercommunications system to shunt audio from the intercom system when the fire alarm system is in an alarm condition. Provide fire alarm system with relay output for interface connections as required.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to firealarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests shall be witnessed by authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
- D. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
 - 2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 - 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- E. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- F. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- I. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.10 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 283111